

EDUCATIONAL AND FOREIGN BOOKSTORE,

ESTABLISHED 1816.

Educational Books.

Particular attention having been given to this department, the large assortment of

School and College Text Books, and School Stationery

presents unsurpassed advantages to all engaged in education.

The latest books in every branch of Education received as soon as published, and every facility afforded those who wish to be informed in regard to them.

America

EXTENSIVE

IN

BELLES-LETTRES, FI

SCIENCE

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS.

Chap. PC 2109

Shelf E 7

1863

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

SCIENCE, MANUFACTURES, NATURAL HISTORY, &c.

BOOKS

TRAVELS,


Many of which are richly illustrated and in various styles of binding, suitable for Libraries or for Presents.

Foreign Books.

A General Assortment of Miscellaneous and Educational Books
IN THE MODERN LANGUAGES,

CONSISTING OF IMPORTATIONS FROM

PARIS, MADRID, BARCELONA, MILAN, FLORENCE, TURIN, &c.

 A Catalogue of Foreign Books, with prices, will be furnished free of expense on application. Books imported to order.

EDUCATIONAL BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

GEORGE R. LOCKWOOD,

LATE ROE LOCKWOOD & SON,

No. 411 BROADWAY, NEW YORK.

Any book on the following list, with the exception of the Paris Editions, will be sent by mail, free of expense, on the receipt of the advertised price.

FRENCH.

MANESCA'S Oral System of Teaching French. 8vo.....	\$3 00
ROBERTSON'S Whole French Course.....	1 50
——— Key to do. do.	75
——— Intermediate do. do. 12mo.....	1 20
——— Introductory do. do. 12mo.....	90
MEADOWS' French and English Pronouncing Dictionary.	1 25
ROEMER'S French Dictionary of English Idioms. 12mo.....	1 25
NOEL et CHAPSAL. Grammaire Francaise. AN EXACT REPRINT OF THE LAST PARIS EDITION. 12mo.....	1 25
——— Corrige. (Key.) do. 12mo.....	1 00
——— Abrege de la Grammaire Francaise. AN EXACT REPRINT OF THE LAST PARIS EDITION. 12mo.....	90
——— Litterature Francaise. (Selections of French Literature.) 12mo.....	1 25
MME. DE GENLIS. Le Siege de la Rochelle. 12mo.....	1 20
GOLDSMITH. Le Vicaire de Wakefield. 12mo.....	75
KOESTLER'S French Grammar. 12mo.....	75
RACINE'S Select Pieces. 18mo.....	60
MOLIERE'S Select Pieces. 18mo.....	60
ST. PIERRE. Paul et Virginie. 12mo.....	60
——— With a Vocabulary. 12mo.....	75
MME. COTTIN. Elisabeth; ou, Les Exiles de Siberie. 12mo.	60
——— With a Vocabulary. 12mo.....	75
LA FONTAINE'S Fables. 100 Illustrations. 18mo.....	75
JOUANNE'S Gender of French Nouns. 12mo.....	50
CHATEAUBRIAND. Atala, Rene. 12mo.....	60
MABIRE'S Conversational Phrases; or, French Synonyms.	45
CHOUQUET'S First Lessons in French. 16mo.....	45



INTERMEDIATE
FRENCH COURSE,
IN ACCORDANCE WITH
THE ROBERTSONIAN SYSTEM
OF
TEACHING MODERN LANGUAGES.

ARRANGED BY
✓
LOUIS ERNST.



NEW YORK:
GEORGE R. LOCKWOOD,
SUCCESSOR TO
ROE LOCKWOOD & SON.
LIBRAIRIE AMÉRICAINNE ET ÉTRANGÈRE,
BROADWAY, No. 411.
1863.

PC2109

E7

1863

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1860, by

ROE LOCKWOOD & SON,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the
Southern District of New York.

The Robertsonian Series comprises the following Works:

INTRODUCTORY FRENCH COURSE—(<i>in press</i>)	\$0.75
INTERMEDIATE do. do.	1.00
THE WHOLE FRENCH LANGUAGE.....	1.25
KEY to do. do.	75

RENNIE, SHEA & LINDSAY,
STEREOTYPERS AND ELECTROTYPERS,
81, 83, and 85 Centre-street,
NEW YORK.

P R E F A C E.

THE present work, based on Robertson's higher lessons, entitled "The Whole French Language," is designed for those who do not wish to enter upon so profound an analysis as is contained in that celebrated course; and with a view to this, the admirable Text, Conversational Exercises, and Sentences for Oral Practice, which are such striking characteristics of this popular system of teaching, have been retained entire and without change, while the difference of this book from the preceding one will be found to consist chiefly in the more simple arrangement of the grammatical explanations—the rules being presented with greater regard to a regular method of progression, and followed by a suitable number of exercises for home preparation. To those who are not already familiar with Professor Robertson's captivating mode of instruction, the following summary of its more prominent features will also prove interesting.

Among these the Text would seem to deserve particular notice, being not only an original and attractive narrative, but one so singularly imagined as to offer in turn, and in the course of a few pages only, all the

various grammatical and idiomatical peculiarities of the French language, together with a complete vocabulary of the words likely to occur in familiar discourse.

A portion of this text is taken up at each lesson, and read over carefully, until the pronunciation and meaning of the expressions contained in it have been fully mastered, when sundry questions, exclusively made up of the words already seen, and readily answered with small fragments of the text, will be found to establish from the first a short but Animated Dialogue between the master and student, and to remove, in a very ingenious manner, the difficulties usually met with in beginning French Conversation.

Not content with this, however, and feeling the importance of an early habit of Composition, a number of Sentences for Oral Translation, also devoid of expressions not explained before, have been added; and these, prepared with an especial view to display the many ways in which the words learned may be transposed so as to express new ideas, cannot fail to prove an excellent exercise to accustom the pupil to speak French, and to understand the language when spoken. They conclude the First Part of each Lesson, which is invariably kept so far exclusively practical, in its nature being especially intended for those who feel impatient to speak as speedily as possible.

The Second Part, on the contrary, is dedicated to the theory of the language, and explains, in a series of clear and easy rules, all the difficulties of French Grammar and Syntax. It contains also Numerous Progressive Exercises for home practice, and a Key by which many thousand new words may be acquired

with facility, and in a very short time. This is perhaps one of the happiest illustrations of Professor Robertson's Method; for while it encourages considerably the early efforts of a beginner, it at the same time tends materially to smooth his first steps by doing away entirely with the necessity of referring to the dictionary—a plan which will be fully appreciated by those who have experienced the many perplexing doubts usually attending such consultations.

As to the best plan to be pursued in studying this book, it has been sufficiently explained in the notes added for that purpose to the First and Second Lessons.

The General Index, at the end, has been prepared with great care, and can be fully appreciated only by frequent use.

L. E.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Preface.....	iii
First Forty Lessons for Learning to Read, Write, and Speak French	1
Synoptical Table of the Article.....	10
Principal Rule for the Gender of Nouns.....	5
Review of the Gender of Nouns.....	156
Of the Degrees of Comparison.....	29
Formation of the Feminine of Adjectives.....	51
Formation of the Plural of Nouns and Adjectives.....	95
Auxiliary Verb, <i>Avoir</i> , to have	34
“ “ <i>Etre</i> , to be.....	48
Model of the First Conjugation, <i>Parler</i> , to speak.....	55
“ “ Second “ <i>Finir</i> , to finish	62
“ “ Third “ <i>Vendre</i> , to sell.....	70
Why a particular Model of Conjugation for the Verbs in <i>Oir</i> has been omitted	54
Model of the Pronominal Form of Conjugation, <i>S'amuser</i> , to amuse one's self.....	97
Review of the Personal Pronouns.....	208
The principal Adverbs	300
“ “ Prepositions.....	308
“ “ Conjunctions.....	321
Recapitulation of the Numbers.....	327
The principal Interjections	329
Concluding Lessons for Translation and Idioms.....	335
General Index and Alphabetical Grammar, comprising all the Rules, Observations, and Exceptions contained in this work, and giving a complete list of the Radical Irregular Verbs.....	355

INTRODUCTORY LESSON.*

ALPHABET.

There are 25 letters in French, viz. :

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N,
O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

NAMES OF THE LETTERS.

The vowels are called as they are pronounced, for which see Table on next page, and the consonants usually take some vowel sound either before or after them, thus:

Ba, sa, da, eff, za† ash, zee,† kah, ell, emm, enn,
pa, ku,† err, ess, ta, va, eeks, egrec, zedd.

PRONUNCIATION.

French, in this respect, does not differ from English as much as is generally imagined ; and to show it in as clear a light as possible, the following Table, containing all the peculiarities of French pronunciation in alphabetical order, has been prepared. This table is, however, not intended to be learned at once by heart, but rather to be used as a sheet of reference. It will be well, nevertheless, to read it over a few times before attempting the difficulties indicated for immediate study in observation on page x.

* Much of this chapter has been extracted from a little book, by the Editor, called "*A Curious Inquiry into the French and English Lexicology*," a work which could not fail to prove a valuable assistant to the student of the Robertsonian System, containing as it does, among other things, a complete collection of all the words alike or nearly so in both languages.

† z should be here sounded as z in *azure*.

‡ u should be here sounded as w in *sweet*. See Table on next page.

ALPHABETICAL TABLE

OF ALL THE PECULIARITIES OF FRENCH PRONUNCIATION.

A*	is sounded as	in	Ex.	Ah!†
AI*	" "	<i>a</i> " <i>Date.</i>	"	<i>Aide.</i>
	Unless followed by final <i>d, r, s, or t</i> , when it....	" "	<i>a</i> " <i>Rare.</i>	"	<i>Air.</i>
AIL	.....	" "	<i>ah-ye.</i> ".....	"	<i>Détail.</i>
AIN†	.....	" "	<i>an</i> " <i>Sang. §</i>	"	<i>Vain.</i>
AM†	.....	" "	<i>en</i> " <i>Encore. §</i>	"	<i>Ample.</i>
AN†	.....	" "	<i>en</i> " <i>Encore. §</i>	"	<i>Angle.</i>
AU*	" "	<i>au</i> " <i>Beau.</i>	"	<i>Chapeau.</i>
B*	" "	"	<i>Bible.</i>
C*	hard before <i>a, o, u, l, r</i>, .....	" "	.....	"	{ <i>Cunat, code, cu-</i> <i>be, client, crima</i>
"	soft before <i>e, i, y</i>, .....	" "	.....	"	{ <i>Centre, citron,</i> <i>cycle.</i>
Ç	(with a cedilla (,)).....	" "	.....	"	<i>Fugade.</i>
CH*	" "	"	<i>Charlotte.</i>
	Unless followed by <i>l</i> or <i>r</i> , when it .....	" "	.....	"	<i>Chloride.</i>
D*	" "	"	<i>Double.</i>
E*	(unaccented) is always silent when final, except in the small words: <i>Ce, de, je, le, me, ne, que, se,</i> and <i>te</i> ; in which it has the indistinct sound explained below .....	" "	.....	"	<i>Pôle.</i>
	It is also silent between <i>g, a, or o</i>. .....	" "	.....	"	<i>Pigeon.</i>
	It is sounded as in <i>Bell</i> at the beginning of a word; or in the middle if followed by any two consonants, and before <i>c, f, l, r, t, x</i> , when these belong to the same syllable as the <i>e</i>. .....	" "	.....	"	{ <i>Estimable,</i> <i>belle, nectar.</i>
	In all other cases it has the indistinct sound of <i>e</i> in <i>Battery</i>. .....	" "	.....	"	<i>Batterie.</i>
É	with an acute accent (´)	" "	<i>a</i> " <i>Date.</i>	"	<i>Écho.</i>
È	with a grave accent (`)	" "	<i>a</i> " <i>Rare.</i>	"	<i>Nièce.</i>
Ê	with a circumflex accent (^)	" "	<i>a</i> " <i>Rare.</i>	"	<i>Rêverie.</i>
EIN†	.....	" "	<i>an</i> " <i>Sang. §</i>	"	<i>Tint.</i>
EINE	.....	" "	<i>ay-ne.</i>	"	<i>Seine.</i>
EM†	.....	" "	<i>en</i> " <i>Encore. §</i>	"	<i>Temple.</i>
EN†	.....	" "	<i>en</i> " <i>Encore. §</i>	"	<i>Ensemble.</i>
	Unless preceded by <i>i</i> , when it	" "	<i>an</i> " <i>Sang. §</i>	"	<i>Bien (well).</i>
ENT	is silent when the mark of the 3d pers. plur. in verbs. ....	" "	.....	"	{ <i>Ils parlent</i> <i>(they speak);</i> <i>read il parle.</i>
EE	at the end of a word..	" "	<i>a</i> " <i>Date.</i>	"	{ <i>Parler</i> <i>(to speak); read</i> <i>parlé.</i>

* The letters or combinations of letters marked with an asterisk, are pronounced the same in French as in English.

† The examples have been generally selected from among the expressions alike in both languages, not to embarrass the beginner with too many foreign words at the outset of his studies.

‡ The combinations of letters marked thus ‡ are called nasal sounds. It will be well to remember that all nasal sounds cease to be so when followed by a vowel, or if the *m* or *n* is doubled. Ex. *Dame, innocent.*

§ The model words marked thus § are mere approximations, and should be used only in the absence of a teacher.

EU	.....is sounded as	in	<i>Hauteur.</i>
	It has, however, a less broad sound when not followed by <i>r</i> or <i>il</i>	Ex.	<i>Feu</i> (fire).
EZ	when final.....	" " <i>a</i> " <i>Date.</i>	" { <i>Parlez</i> (speak); read <i>parlé</i> .
F*	" "	" <i>Fable.</i>
G*	hard before <i>a, o, u, l, r</i> ..	" "	" { <i>Gazette, gondo-</i> <i>lier, guttural,</i> <i>globe, grâce.</i>
"	soft before <i>e, i, y</i>	" " <i>z</i> " <i>Azure.</i>	" { <i>Général,</i> <i>Gibraltar,</i> <i>gymnasium.</i>
GN*	" "	" <i>Mignonnette.</i>
H*	is generally silent.....	" "	" <i>Thomas.</i>
I*	" "	" <i>Marine.</i>
IM†	.....	" " <i>an</i> " <i>Sang. §</i>	" <i>Simple.</i>
IN†	.....	" " <i>an</i> " <i>Sang §</i>	" <i>Satin.</i>
J*	" " <i>z</i> " <i>Azure.</i>	" <i>Jovial.</i>
K*	" "	" <i>Koran.</i>
L*	" "	" <i>Long.</i>
LL	is liquid when preceded by <i>i</i>	" "	" <i>Bouillon.</i>
	Unless at the beginning of a word, when it....	" "	" <i>Illégal.</i>
M*	" "	" <i>Muse.</i>
N*	" "	" <i>Noble.</i>
O*	" "	" <i>Oh ! Olive.</i>
OI	.....	" " <i>oh-ah.</i>	" <i>Reservoir.</i>
OM†	.....	" " <i>on</i> " <i>Song §</i>	" <i>Sombre.</i>
ON†	.....	" " <i>on</i> " <i>Song. §</i>	" <i>Concert.</i>
OU*	" "	" <i>Routine.</i>
P*	" "	" <i>Page.</i>
PH*	" "	" <i>Phénix.</i>
Q*	" "	" <i>Antique.</i>
R*	" "	" <i>Rose.</i>
S*	" "	" <i>Six.</i>
T*	" "	" <i>Table.</i>
TI	has two sounds in Eng- lish; sometimes that of <i>t</i> proper, and at others that of <i>sh</i> : in the for- mer case it does not dif- fer from the French, in the latter it should be pronounced like <i>ss</i>	" "	" <i>Institution.</i>
U	.....	" " <i>w</i> " <i>Sweet. §</i>	" <i>Suite.</i>
	But it is silent between <i>g</i> and <i>e</i> , or <i>i</i> , also after <i>q</i> . }	" "	" { <i>Guide, ques-</i> <i>tion.</i>
UM†	.....	" " <i>un</i> " <i>Sung. §</i>	" <i>Humble.</i>
UN†	.....	" " <i>un</i> " <i>Sung. §</i>	" <i>Un</i> (one).
V*	" "	" <i>Valve.</i>
X*	" "	" <i>Expression.</i>
Y*	is equivalent to <i>ii</i>	" "	" <i>Crayon.</i>
	In <i>Loyal</i> , therefore, the first <i>i</i> is united to <i>o</i> , which forms the diph- thong <i>oi</i> , pronounced like <i>wa</i> in <i>Water</i> , and the second to the <i>al</i> , thus: <i>loi-ial</i> . When the <i>y</i> is not preceded by a vowel, however, it is sounded as <i>i</i> in <i>Marine</i>	" "	" <i>Style.</i>
Z*	" "	" <i>Zone.</i>

* ‡ § See 1st, 3d, and 4th notes on previous page.

OBSERVATION.

We have seen, in the preceding Table, that most letters are alike or nearly so in both languages, and that the difficulties of French pronunciation are chiefly confined to the voices *u*, *eu*, and the nasals. It would, therefore, seem best to familiarize one's self at once with these sounds, rather than lose time in the review of such as, by their similitude to the English, present no particular field for practice. To effect this successfully, they should be rehearsed daily for some time, first singly, thus : *u*, *eu*, *an*, *in*, *on*, *un*, and then united to other letters, using for that purpose some of the examples given, as : *Suite*, *Hauteur*, *Feu*, *Ample*, *Simple*, *Sombre*, *Un*, etc. ; the word *Le* (the) could also be added to these as an appropriate study of the indistinct *e*.

Among the consonants there are only two requiring especial attention, soft *g* and *j*, which ought both to be pronounced as *z* in *Azure*. Many people, however, acquire the bad habit of prefixing a *d* to them, saying *dgénéral*, *djovial* ; this *d* should be strictly avoided.

 RULES FOR READING.

Our remarks till now have been in the main limited to isolate letters or combinations ; to read whole words or sentences, however, there are yet two very important things to be noticed.

1stly, That the French never sound any final consonant except *c*, *f*, *l*, *r*, nor the *e* when at the end of a word unless accented ; and, secondly, that an *s* when the mark of the plural or of certain persons in verbs does not cause the preceding letter to be pronounced.

<i>Part</i> should therefore be read as if spelled <i>Par</i> .				
<i>Belle</i>	"	"	"	<i>Bell</i> .
<i>Tables</i>	"	"	"	<i>Table</i> .
<i>Vends</i> (sell)	"	"	"	<i>Vend</i> .

As to the custom of slurring every final consonant to the next word if beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, the practice is not at all obligatory, and it will be best, in this respect, to consult one's own ear, or the opinion of some person of taste, as is done in English.

IRREGULAR WORDS.

The following list comprises such expressions as deviate from the above rules. Those marked with an asterisk (*) will be required in the early lessons of the Robertson :

	PRONOUNCED		PRONOUNCED
<i>Amer</i> , Bitter,	<i>Amère</i> .†	<i>Les</i> ,* The,	<i>Lè</i> .
<i>Atlas</i> , Atlas,	<i>Atlace</i> .	<i>Mars</i> , March,	<i>Marce</i> .
<i>Automne</i> , Autumn,	<i>Autonne</i> .	<i>Mer</i> , Sea,	<i>Mère</i> .
<i>Baptême</i> , Baptism,	<i>Batème</i> .	<i>Mes</i> ,* My,	<i>Mè</i> .
<i>Banc</i> , Bench,	<i>Ban</i> .	<i>Mille</i> , 1,000,	<i>Mile</i> .
<i>Blanc</i> , White,	<i>Blan</i> .	<i>Mœurs</i> , Habits,	<i>Meurce</i> .
<i>Ces</i> ,* These or Those,	<i>Cè</i> .	<i>Monsieur</i> , Sir, Mr.,	<i>Mocièu</i> .
<i>Chaos</i> , Chaos,	<i>Kao</i> .	<i>Œil</i> , Eye,	<i>Euil</i> .
<i>Cher</i> ,* Dear,	<i>Chère</i> .	<i>Oignon</i> , Onion,	<i>Onion</i> .
<i>Clef</i> , Key,	<i>Clé</i> .	<i>Orchestre</i> , Orchester,	<i>Orkestre</i> .
<i>Compte</i> , Account,	<i>Conte</i> .	<i>Ours</i> , Bear,	<i>Ource</i> .
<i>Cuiller</i> , Spoon,	<i>Cuillère</i> .	<i>Outil</i> , Tool,	<i>Outi</i> .
<i>Des</i> ,* Of the or from the,	<i>Dè</i> .	<i>Phénix</i> , Phenix,	<i>Phénixe</i> .
<i>Deuxième</i> ,* 2d,	<i>Deuzième</i> .•	<i>Quadrupède</i> , Quadruped,	<i>Kouadrupèda</i> .
<i>Dix</i> ,† 10,	<i>Diss</i> .	<i>Second</i> ,* 2d,	<i>Segond</i> .
<i>Dixième</i> , 10th,	<i>Dizième</i> .	<i>Sept</i> ,§ 7,	<i>Sett</i> .
<i>Doigt</i> , Finger,	<i>Doit</i> .	<i>Ses</i> ,* His, her, its,	<i>Sè</i> .
<i>Écho</i> , Echo,	<i>Éko</i> .	<i>Six</i> ,† 6,	<i>Siss</i> .
<i>Ennui</i> , Ennui,	<i>En-nui</i> .	<i>Sixième</i> ,* 6th,	<i>Sizième</i> .
<i>Es</i> ,* Art (thou),	<i>è</i> .	<i>Soixante</i> , 60,	<i>Soissante</i> .
<i>Est</i> ,* Is,	<i>è</i> .	<i>Tact</i> , Tact,	<i>Tacte</i> .
<i>Femme</i> ,* Woman,	<i>Famme</i> .	<i>Tabac</i> , Tobacco,	<i>Taba</i> .
<i>Fer</i> , Iron,	<i>Fère</i> .	<i>Temps</i> , Time, weather,	<i>Temp</i> .
<i>Fier</i> , Proud,	<i>Fière</i> .	<i>Tes</i> ,* Thy,	<i>Tè</i> .
<i>Fils</i> ,* Son,	<i>Fiss</i> .	<i>Tranquille</i> , Quiet,	<i>Tranquile</i> .
<i>Flanc</i> , Flank,	<i>Flan</i> .	<i>Très</i> , Very,	<i>Trè</i> .
<i>Franc</i> , Franc,	<i>Fran</i> .	<i>Tronc</i> , Trunk,	<i>Tron</i> .
<i>Fusil</i> , Gun,	<i>Fusi</i> ,	<i>Ville</i> , Town,	<i>Vile</i> .
<i>Gentil</i> , Pretty,	<i>Genti</i> .	<i>Vingt</i> , 20,	<i>Vin</i> .
<i>Huit</i> , 8,	<i>Uitt</i> .	<i>Vis</i> , Screw,	<i>Viss</i> .

† The pronunciation has been here given in French, because the student can by this time most likely understand it, and, if not, it will prove an excellent reading exercise.

‡ The *x* in *Dix* and *Six* is, however, sounded like *z*, when these numbers are followed by a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, and it is always silent before a consonant or an *h* aspirate.

§ *Sept* is pronounced *Sè* before a word beginning with a consonant or an *h* aspirate.

INTERMEDIATE FRENCH COURSE.

FIRST LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.*

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Première leçon.

First lesson.

Le jeune Alexis Delatour était un assez bon garçon, qui n'avait qu'un seul défaut, la paresse. Mais, combien de fois n'a-t-on pas dit que ce vice donne naissance à tous les autres ? C'est un proverbe, vous le savez. Or, nous pensons que les proverbes sont généralement vrais.

The young Alexis Delatour was an enough good boy who — had but one single fault the laziness. But how many of times —has—one not said that this vice gives birth to all the others ? It is a proyerb you it know. Now we think ** ** *

are generally true.

* Before making any attempt to read the text, the student should, if possible, hear it five or six times from the mouth of either a native or some person well versed in French pronuneiation ; and then familiarize himself thoroughly with the spelling and meaning of each word. To promote the latter in partieular, it will be well to transcribe once or twice from dietation, and from memory, the whole of the literal translation, in small fragments of a few expressions at a time ; such exereise being highly caleulated to form the eye and ear.

** When the translation of a word has been given, and that word occurs again, it ceases to be translated, unless it has another acception.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

Young Alexis Delatour was a good sort of fellow, who had but one fault, laziness. But how often has it not been said that this vice gives birth to all others? It is a proverb, you know. Now, we think that proverbs are generally true.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

What lesson is this?	C'est la première leçon.
Qui était un assez bon garçon? **	Le jeune Alexis Delatour
What sort of a lad was young Alexis Delatour?	O'était un assez bon garçon—or, Alexis était un assez bon garçon.
Combien de défauts avait Alexis?	Alexis n'avait qu'un seul défaut.
What was his only fault?	La paresse.
Qui n'avait qu'un seul défaut?	Le jeune Alexis Delatour.
What gives birth to all other vices?	Ce vice—or, La paresse.
To what does this vice give birth?	Ce vice donne naissance à tous les autres.
What has been said many times?	Que la paresse donne naissance à tous les autres vices.
What is laziness?	C'est un vice.
What do we think of proverbs?	Que les proverbes sont généralement vrais.
What are generally true?	Les proverbes.

* These are intended to accustom the scholar to speak French, and to understand the language when it is spoken to him. The questions have been so calculated as to be readily answered in French, either verbally or in writing, by any one who has studied diligently the preceding text; and the answers should therefore be covered during the recitation.

** We shall put our questions in French whenever we can compose them of expressions and interrogative forms that are known.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Alexis était jeune.
 Alexis était bon.
 Alexis avait un défaut.
 Alexis avait un vice.
 Alexis avait tous les vices.
 Ce garçon est jeune.
 Ce garçon est bon.
 Ce garçon est assez bon.
 Ce garçon a un défaut.
 Ce jeune garçon a un défaut.
 La paresse est un défaut.
 La paresse est un vice.
 La paresse donne naissance à tous les vices.
 Vous savez la première leçon.
 Savez-vous la première leçon?
 Combien de leçons savez-vous?
 Combien de proverbes savez-vous?
 Nous pensons que le proverbe est vrai.
 Nous pensons que les proverbes sont vrais.
 Nous pensons que la paresse est un vice.
 Nous pensons que vous savez la première leçon.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

Alexis was young.
 Alexis was good.
 Alexis had a fault.
 Alexis had a vice.
 Alexis had all the vices.
 That boy is young.
 That boy is good.
 That boy is pretty good.
 That boy has a fault.
 That young boy has a fault.
 Laziness is a fault.
 Laziness is a vice.
 Laziness gives birth to every vice.
 You know the first lesson.
 Do you know the first lesson?
 How many lessons do you know?
 How many proverbs do you know?
 We think that the proverb is true.
 We think that proverbs are true.
 We think that laziness is a vice.
 We think that you know the first lesson.

We here conclude that part of our lesson which is merely practical. Those persons who are impatient to understand and speak as speedily as possible will find it sufficient; and we would advise them to postpone the perusal of the second division of each lesson until they have gone through all the practical exercises contained in this volume. Our second division is especially dedicated to those who are desirous of obtaining an accurate knowledge of the principles of the language.

* No new word being introduced in any of these phrases, they can and should be answered without referring to the opposite column.

SECOND DIVISION—THEORETICAL PART.

Le *jeune Alexis*, the young Alexis. **La** *paresse*, the idleness.

Les *proverbes*, the proverbs.

1.* **THE** is translated by **Le** before a word masculine singular; by **La** before a word feminine singular; and by **Les** before a word plural of either gender.

2. There is no neuter gender in French; and the names of the inanimate objects are therefore like those of the animate, either masculine or feminine.

To determine which, recourse is generally had to the termination, the principal rule being the following :

3. Words ending with an *unaccented e* are feminine; those ending otherwise are masculine.—Ex. *Le défaut*, the fault; *la naissance*, the birth.

The exceptions to this rule comprise a number of very necessary words, all of which have been carefully introduced in the course of these lessons.

The words masculine by exception in the first lesson are : *Vice*, vice; *Proverbe*, proverb. Those feminine by exception are : *Leçon*, lesson; *Fois*, time.

<i>Qui n'avait qu'un seul défaut,</i>	<i>C'est,</i>
who had but one single fault.	it is.

4. To avoid the too frequent recurrence of two vowels following each other, small words, like *le*, *la*, *ne*, *que*, *ce*, etc., drop their final letter, and take an apostrophe before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.—Ex. *l'autre*, the other.

5. **Ne** is a particle placed before the verb in almost all negative sentences. Its use is, generally, simply to indicate the meaning of words of similar orthography.

In *qui n'avait qu'un seul défaut*, *ne* shows that *que* is to be translated by *but* or *only*, and not by *that*; as in *que ce vice*,

* Every observation of importance, and every rule, bears a number, by means of which we refer to it.

that this vice ; or *que les proverbes*, that the proverbs. In *n'a-t-on pas dit ?* *ne* shows that *pas* is to be translated by *not*, instead of *step*, which is its meaning otherwise.

6. The *t* in *a-t-on ?* does not mean any thing, and is introduced only for the sake of euphony.

Que ce vice,
that this vice.

C'est un proverbe,
it is a proverb.

7. **Ce** is sometimes a demonstrative adjective and sometimes a demonstrative pronoun. As an adjective, it always precedes a noun, and means *this*, or *that* ; as a pronoun, it generally corresponds to *it*, and is followed by the verb *être*, to be ; or a relative pronoun. Though the neuter gender is not acknowledged by French grammarians, and indeed does not exist in substantives, this pronoun presents the characteristics of neutrality. When we say, "*C'est un homme*, It is a man ; *C'est une femme*, It is a woman," **ce** is no more masculine in the first case and feminine in the second, than *it* is in English. **Ce** may also be rendered by *this*, *that*, *those*, *he*, *she*, and *they*, as will be seen later.

Un proverbe,
a proverb.

Les proverbes,
the proverbs.

8. In French, as in English, nouns generally take an **s** in the plural ; but those ending with an **s**, **x**, or **z**, in the singular, do not change.—Ex. *La fois*, the time ; *les fois*, the times.

The exceptions to this rule will be explained as they occur in the text.

9. **ONE**, **A**, or **AN**, is translated into French by **un** before a word masculine, and by **une** before a word feminine.—Ex. *Un proverbe*, a proverb ; *une fois*, one time, or once.

La paresse, idleness. *Combien de fois ?* how many times ?

Nous pensons que les proverbes, we think proverbs.

10. Some small words, like *le*, *la*, *les*, *de*, *que*, etc., are sometimes introduced and sometimes left out in French, contrary to English usage. The rules which govern them in this respect will be explained later.

Vous le savez, you know it.

11. **Le, la, les**, when placed before a verb, always answer to *him, her, it, or them*; in all other cases they mean *the*.

12. It would be perhaps well to remark here, that most of the peculiarities which distinguish the French arrangement of words from the English have a common origin in a desire to determine as much as possible the meaning of each word. *Le* is used, it is true, in turn for *the* and *it*, but only in strict accordance with the above rule, and therefore no doubt need ever be entertained as to the particular meaning intended.

GÉNÉRALEMENT, generally, comes from *général*, general.

13. The ending, **ment**, corresponds to the termination *ly* in English.

14. About 250 words ending with **al** are alike in both languages; as, *Animal, Brutal, Crystal, Métal, Verbal*, etc.

15. Most words ending with **al** form their plural by changing *al* into *aux*.—Ex. *Animal*, animal; *animaux*, animals.

The exceptions to this rule are but few, and will be explained as they occur in the text.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. The boy, 1, 2, 3.*

2. The birth, 1, 2, 3.

3. The boys, 1, 8.

4. A fault, 9, 2, 3.

5. A lesson, 9, 2, 3.

6. The vices, 1, 8.

7. The idleness, 1, 2, 3.

8. The other, 4.

9. Alexis was pretty good.—10. The boy had but a single fault.—11. That fault was laziness.—12. We do not think that Alexis was a good boy.—13. The boy is young enough.—14. Alexis, who was good, had but a single fault.—15. Laziness was not the fault of Alexis.—16. Do you know the lesson?—17. We think that the boy is good.—18. The crystals, 14, 15.—19. The metals, 14, 15.—20. The generals, 14, 15.

* The numbers at the *end* of a sentence refer to the rules and observations. See note on page 4.

SECOND LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Deuxième leçon.

Second

Le père d'Alexis, homme intelligent et
 father of man intelligent and
actif, exerçait la profession de menui-
 active, exercised profession joiner
sier. On le voyait presque toujours à
 him saw almost always at
son établi, l'oeil animé, les manches
 his bench the eye animated sleeves
retroussées jusqu'au coude, et la scie ou
 tucked up until to the elbow saw or
le rabot à la main.
 plane hand.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

The father of Alexis, an intelligent and active man, was a joiner. He was almost always to be seen at his bench, with his eye bright, his sleeves tucked up to his elbows, and with a saw or a plane in his hand.

* At the beginning of each new lesson, the student should rehearse the text and literal translation of all previous ones, so as to be sure of having fully mastered every word that has preceded. The best mode of effecting this would seem to be, for the teacher to read aloud, in small fragments, both the English and the French, making the pupil translate them.

** The directions given in note * on page 1, are so important that they would be here again earnestly recommended, as never to be omitted.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

What lesson is this?	C'est la deuxième leçon.
Qui était un homme intelligent et actif?	Le père d'Alexis.
What sort of a man was the father of Alexis?	Un homme intelligent et actif.
Qui exerçait la profession de menuisier?	Le père d'Alexis.
What was his trade?	La profession de menuisier.
What did the father of Alexis do?	Le père d'Alexis exerçait la profession de menuisier.
When was he to be seen at his bench?	Presque toujours.
Where was he to be seen?	A son établi.
How was his eye?	Animé.
How were his sleeves?	Retroussées jusqu'au coude.
What had he almost always in his hand?	La scie ou le rabot.
What was animated?	Son œil.
What were tucked up?	Ses manches.
Qui voyait-on presque toujours à son établi?	Le menuisier—or, Le père d'Alexis.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Le père était actif.
 Le garçon était intelligent.
 Le père était un menuisier.
 Le père était toujours à son établi.
 Le garçon n'était pas actif.
 Le père avait l'œil animé.
 Le menuisier avait les manches retroussées.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

The father was active.
 The boy was intelligent.
 The father was a joiner.
 The father was always at his bench.
 The boy was not active.
 The father had a bright eye.
 The joiner had his sleeves tucked up.

* See notes at the bottom of pp. 2 and 8. It will be well to refer to all the notes of the first lesson, until a familiarity with the system shall have rendered such aid unnecessary.

Le garçon avait une scie à la main.	The boy had a saw in his hand.
Le père avait un rabot à la main.	The father had a plane in his hand.
Le père voyait son garçon.	The father saw his boy.
Le garçon ne voyait pas son père.	The boy did not see his father.
Le menuisier est à son établi.	The joiner is at his bench.
Le menuisier n'est pas à son établi.	The joiner is not at his bench.
Le père donne une leçon à son garçon.	The father gives a lesson to his boy.
Le père donnait une leçon à son garçon.	The father gave a lesson to his boy.
Son œil est animé.	His eye is bright.
Combien de leçons savez-vous ?	How many lessons do you know ?
Nous savons la première leçon.	We know the first lesson.
Ne savez-vous que la première ?	Do you know but the first ?
Nous savons la deuxième leçon.	We know the second lesson.

Once more, we recommend the learner who is anxious to speak and understand as speedily as possible, to devote all his exertions to the study of this first division of each lesson, and to pass over the theoretical part of it.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

DEUXIÈME, second, comes from *deux*, two.

16. The ordinal numbers are generally formed from the cardinal by adding the termination *ième*.

<i>Le père d'Alexis,</i>	<i>à son établi,</i>
the father of Alexis.	at his bench.

17. OF or FROM is translated by **de** ; and TO or AT by **à**.

18. **De**, like *le, la, ne, que, ce*, already seen in First Lesson (4.), becomes **d'** before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

Jusqu'au coude, until to the elbow.

19. When *de* or *à* is joined to the article *le* or *les*, both small words are invariably merged into one, as follows: *de le* into **du**; *de les* into **des**; *à le* into **au**; *à les* into **aux**; but *de la*, *à la*, *de l'*, and *à l'*, are never so contracted. This concludes the study of the article :

	Before a word Masculine singular.	Before a word Feminine singular.	Before a word Plural of either gender.
THE is translated	by le	la	les
OF THE, OR FROM THE,	" du	de la	des
TO THE,	" au	à la	aux

THE, OF THE, OR FROM THE, and TO THE, are translated by **l'**, **de l'**, and **à l'**, before a word masculine or feminine singular beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

Le père d'Alexis, the father of Alexis, or Alexis's father.

20. There are two ways of expressing the possessive in English—The father of Alexis, or Alexis's father: in French there is but one—The father of Alexis; and 's has always to be replaced by *of*, according to this model.

Homme intelligent et actif, man intelligent and active.

La profession de menuisier, the profession of joiner.

English construction requires here the article *a* before man and joiner.

21. In French, *A* or *AN* is not expressed before a noun which is used adjectively; that is, which qualifies either the subject or the regimen of a verb.

We should therefore render "He is A joiner," by "*Il est menuisier*," because *menuisier* qualifies *il*; and we should translate "A joiner has A plane," by "**Un** menuisier a **un** rabot," because neither *menuisier* nor *rabot* qualifies any other word—the one being the subject, and the other the regimen of the verb *a*, has.

Intelligent, intelligent.

22. There are about 130 nouns and adjectives ending with **ent** which are the same in both languages; as, *absent*, absent; *prudent*, prudent; *moment*, moment, etc.

Actif, active.

23. The termination **if** is proper to adjectives, 229 of which end with *ive* in English without any other difference ; as, *pensif*, pensive ; *captif*, captive ; *attentif*, attentive, etc.

On *le voyait*, one saw him, *or*, he was seen.

24. The indefinite pronoun **on** is much more frequently used in French than the word *one* is in English. It often corresponds to the passive form.

L'*œil animé, les manches retroussées jusqu'***au** *coude, et la scie ou le rabot à* **la** *main.*

English construction requires here the introduction of the possessive pronoun *his* before almost all the nouns in this sentence : *His* eye bright ; *his* sleeves tucked up to *his* elbow ; and a saw or a plane in *his* hand.

25. In French, the article **le, la, les**, is used instead of *his, her, its*, before a regimen, when the sense clearly shows who the possessor is.

Coude, elbow, is masculine, and *main*, hand, feminine by exception.

Profession, profession.

26. More than 1000 nouns ending with **ion** are the same in both languages, and almost all are feminine ; as, *la collection*, the collection ; *la nation*, the nation ; *la population*, the population.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. The father. | 7. The sleeve. | 13. The bench, 4. |
| 2. Of the father, 19. | 8. Of the sleeve. | 14. Of the bench, 19. |
| 3. To the father, 19. | 9. To the sleeve. | 15. To the bench, 19. |
| 4. The fathers. | 10. The sleeves. | 16. The benches. |
| 5. Of the fathers, 19. | 11. Of the sleeves. | 17. Of the benches, 19. |
| 6. To the fathers, 19. | 12. To the sleeves. | 18. To the benches, 19. |

- | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 19. The boy. | 30. The saw. | 41. The man, 4. |
| 20. Of the boy, 19. | 31. Of the saw, 19. | 42. Of the man, 4, 19. |
| 21. From the boy. | 32. From the saw. | 43. From the man, 4. |
| 22. To the boy, 19. | 33. To the saw, 19. | 44. To the man, 4, 19. |
| 23. The boys. | 34. The saws. | 45. The men. |
| 24. Of the boys, 19. | 35. Of the saws, 19. | 46. Of the men, 4, 19. |
| 25. From the boys. | 36. From the saws. | 47. From the men, 4. |
| 26. To the boys, 19. | 37. To the saws, 19. | 48. To the men, 4, 19. |
| 27. A plane, 9. | 38. A lesson, 9. | 49. A proverb, 9. |
| 28. Of a plane, 4. | 39. Of a lesson, 4. | 50. Of a proverb, 4. |
| 29. To a plane. | 40. To a lesson. | 51. To a proverb. |

52. The joiner has two boys.—53. You know that Delatour is a good father.—54. The father is prudent and attentive.—55. His bench was good.—56. Do you know Delatour's profession? 20.—57. Alexis was a tolerably good boy.—58. Laziness was his only fault.—59. You know that Delatour is a joiner.—60. He was always seen with a saw or a plane in his hand.

THIRD LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Troisième leçon.

Third

Il se désolait, parce qu'il ne pouvait
 He himself grieved because could

obtenir de son fils qu'il suivît son exemple.
 to obtain son should follow (*subj.*) example.

“ Quel fainéant ! ” disait-il. “ Où va-t-il ? ”
 What drone said Where goes

Que fait-il ? A quoi cet idiot passe-t-il
 What does what that idiot passes

son temps ? Est-ce qu'il ne se corrigera
 time Is it that will correct

jamais ? Comment donc lui faire en-
 never How then him make to

tendre raison ? ”
 hear reason.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

He was grieved, because he could not get his son to follow his example. “What a drone!” said he. “Where does he go? What does he do? How does the idiot spend his time? Will he never mend? How shall I make him listen to reason?”

* See first note on page 7.

** See note on page 1.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

What lesson is this?

Qui se désolait?

What did the father do?

Qu'est-ce qu'il ne pouvait obtenir de son fils?

De qui ne pouvait-il l'obtenir?

Why did he grieve?

Que disait-il?

What was his first question?

What was his second question?

What did he call his son?

What question did he ask about the idiot's way of spending his time?

What doubt did he express about the reformation of his son?

Qu'est-ce que son fils n'entendait pas?

What did the father want to do?

C'est la troisième leçon.

Le menuisier—*or*, Le père d'Alexis.

Il se désolait.

Qu'il suivit son exemple.

De son fils.

Parce qu'il ne pouvait obtenir de son fils qu'il suivit son exemple.

Quel fainéant!

Où va-t-il?

Que fait-il?

Cet idiot.

A quoi cet idiot passe-t-il son temps?

Est-ce qu'il ne se corrigera jamais?

Il n'entendait pas raison.

Lui faire entendre raison.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.**

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Le fainéant désolait son père.

Comment savez-vous qu'il désolait son père.

Parce que son père le disait.

Son père pouvait-il lui faire entendre raison?

Nous ne le pensons pas.

Il ne se corrigera jamais, disait-il.

Nous pensons qu'il se corrigera.

Est-il intelligent?

Il n'est pas intelligent.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

The drone grieved his father.

How do you know that he grieved his father?

Because his father said so.

Could his father make him listen to reason?

We do not think he could.

He will never mend, said he.

We think that he will mend.

Is he intelligent?

He is not intelligent.

* See note on page 2.

** See note on page 8.

Il est idiot.	He is an idiot.
Où va le menuisier ?	Where is the joiner going ?
Il va à son établi.	He is going to his bench.
Que fait-il à son établi ?	What is he doing at his bench ?
Il retrousse ses manches.	He is tucking up his sleeves.
Il a une scie à la main.	He has a saw in his hand.
Il n'est pas fainéant.	He is not a drone.
Que donne-t-il à son fils ?	What does he give his son ?
Il lui donne l'exemple.	He gives him an example.
Que pensez-vous de cet exemple ?	What do you think of that example ?
Nous pensons qu'il est bon.	We think that it is good.
Combien de fils a cet homme ?	How many sons has that man ?
Il a trois garçons.	He has three boys.
Le premier est un fainéant.	The first is a drone.
Le deuxième est un idiot.	The second is an idiot.
Mais le troisième est intelligent.	But the third is intelligent.
Que savez-vous ?	What do you know ?
Nous savons la troisième leçon.	We know the third lesson.
Mais ce n'est pas assez.	But it is not enough.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

TROISIÈME, third, comes from *trois*, three.

Il se désolait, he was grieved.

27. The pronominal form is much more frequently used in French than in English ; and verbs which should be passive, according to the sense, often take the pronominal form in French.

Il ne pouvait obtenir, he could not obtain.

28. In negative sentences, the word *pas* may be suppressed after the verbs *cesser*, to cease ; *oser*, to dare ; *pouvoir*, to be able ; and *savoir*, to know, especially when these verbs govern an infinitive. *Il ne pouvait pas obtenir*, would, however, be equally correct.

Quel fainéant ! what a drone !

29. In exclamations, the words *A*, *AN*, must not be expressed after *WHAT*.

Quel *fainéant*! what a drone! **Que** *fait-il*? what does he do?
à **quoi**, at what.

30. WHAT, before a noun, is an adjective to be translated by **quel**; as an interrogative pronoun, it is generally translated by **que**; but **quoi** is used instead of *que* when *what* is preceded by a preposition.—Ex. *De quoi*, of, or from what; *à quoi*, to, or at what; *avec quoi*, with what, etc.

Où *va-t-il*? literally, where goes he? can be rendered in English by, *where does he go?* or, *where is he going to?*

31. The use of the present participle, to signify that the action is instantaneous, is very uncommon in French; nor is there any such word as *do* or *did*, to give greater strength to an affirmation; so that these three modes of expression, *He gives*, *He is giving*, and *He does give*, have but one translation in French, *Il donne*.

For the *-t-* in *où va-t-il*? see 6 and 37.

Où, *where*, is distinguished from **ou**, *or*, by the grave accent placed over the *u*. The accent has, however, no influence on the sound of the word.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB **Avoir**, TO HAVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Avoir, to have.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Ayant, having.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Eu, had.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>J'ai</i> ,	I have,	am having, or do have.
<i>Tu as</i> ,	thou hast,	art having, or dost have.
<i>Il a</i> ,	he has,	is having, or does have.
<i>Nous avons</i> ,	we have,	are having, or do have.
<i>Vous avez</i> ,	you have,	are having, or do have.
<i>Ils ont</i> ,	they have,	are having, or do have.

IMPERFECT.

<i>J'avais,</i>	I had,	or was having.
<i>Tu avais,</i>	thou hadst,	or wast having.
<i>Il avait,</i>	he had,	or was having.
<i>Nous avions,</i>	we had,	or were having.
<i>Vous aviez,</i>	you had,	or were having.
<i>Ils avaient,</i>	they had,	or were having.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>J'eus,</i>	I had,	or did have.
<i>Tu eus,</i>	thou hadst,	or didst have.
<i>Il eut,</i>	he had,	or did have.
<i>Nous eûmes,</i>	we had,	or did have.
<i>Vous eûtes,</i>	you had,	or did have.
<i>Ils eurent,</i>	they had,	or did have.

FUTURE.

<i>J'aurai,</i>	I shall have,	or will have.
<i>Tu auras,</i>	thou shalt have,	or wilt have.
<i>Il aura,</i>	he shall have,	or will have.
<i>Nous aurons,</i>	we shall have,	or will have.
<i>Vous aurez,</i>	you shall have,	or will have.
<i>Ils auront,</i>	they shall have,	or will have.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>J'aurais,</i>	I should have,	or would have.
<i>Tu aurais,</i>	thou shouldst have,	or wouldst have.
<i>Il aurait,</i>	he should have,	or would have.
<i>Nous aurions,</i>	we should have,	or would have.
<i>Vous auriez,</i>	you should have,	or would have.
<i>Ils auraient,</i>	they should have,	or would have.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Aie,</i>	have (thou).
<i>Ayons,</i>	let us have.
<i>Ayez,</i>	have (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que j'aie,</i>	that I may have.
<i>Que tu aies,</i>	that thou mayst have.
<i>Qu'il ait,</i>	that he may have.
<i>Que nous ayons,</i>	that we may have.
<i>Que vous ayez,</i>	that you may have.
<i>Qu'ils aient,</i>	that they may have.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que j'eusse,</i>	that I might have.
<i>Que tu eusses,</i>	that thou mightst have.
<i>Qu'il eût,</i>	that he might have.
<i>Que nous eussions,</i>	that we might have.
<i>Que vous eussiez,</i>	that you might have.
<i>Qu'ils eussent,</i>	that they might have.

32. The past participle **eu**, *had*, may be added to any part of the verb except the Imperative, and forms the Compound Tenses.—Ex. *J'ai eu*, I have had; *J'avais eu*, I had had; *J'aurai eu*, I shall, or will have had; *J'aurais eu*, I should, or would have had, etc.

Cet *idiot*, this, or that idiot.

33. **Cet** is used instead of *ce*, before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

Temps, time. *Combien de fois?* how many times?

34. TIME is translated sometimes by *temps*, and sometimes by *fois*. *Temps* invariably implies duration, but *fois* has a meaning akin to that of repetition.—Ex. *Combien de temps avez-vous été ici?* how long a time have you been here? *Combien de fois avez-vous été ici?* how many times have you been here?

Est-ce qu'il ne se corrigera jamais? will he never mend?

35. The most familiar form of interrogation in French is **est-ce que?** is it that?—Ex. *Est-ce que j'ai?* have I? *Est-ce que j'ai eu?* have I had? *Est-ce que j'aurai?* shall, or will I have?

36. When the subject is a noun, the sentence has to be translated according to the following model:—Ex. Has the boy? *Est-ce que le garçon a?* (literally), Is it that the boy has?

37. **Ai-je?** have I? **Avez-vous?** have you? etc., is another interrogative form much more similar to the English, but not applicable in all cases. It requires, moreover, the introduction of a **t** between two hyphens, when the verb ends with a vowel.—Ex. *Le garçon a-t-il?* has the boy?

Jamais is generally negative, and consequently generally preceded or followed by *ne*; as, *Il ne se corrigera jamais*; or, *Jamais il ne se corrigera*. But sometimes, when used without *ne*, it becomes affirmative, and corresponds to *ever*; as, *Oublier pour jamais*, to forget forever.

Exemple, example, is masculine, and *raison*, reason, is feminine by exception.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Have I? 35. | 6. Have I had? 32. | 11. Shall I have? |
| 2. Has he? | 7. Has he had? | 12. Will he have? |
| 3. Have we? | 8. Have we had? | 13. Shall we have? |
| 4. Have you? | 9. Have you had? | 14. Will you have? |
| 5. Have they? | 10. Have they had? | 15. Shall they have? |

16. Have you the plane?—17. I have the plane.—18. Who has the saw?—19. The boy has the saw.—20. You had a bench.—21. We had a bench, a saw, and a plane.—22. What an example that man gives to his boy! 29.—23. He grieved because his son was not active.—24. The boy had a good father.—25. You know where he is.—26. He is making a bench, 31.—27. Do you know the lesson?—28. You do not know the lesson. 29. Have you a plane?—30. I have a plane.—31. Have you a saw?—32. I have a saw and a plane.—33. Has your father? 36.—34. Has the joiner? 36.

FOURTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Quatrième leçon.

Fourth

Le brave homme, guidé par de fausses
 worthy guided by some false
idées de grandeur, avait eu le tort, par-
 ideas grandeur had wrong par-
donnable sans doute, de vouloir que son
 donable without doubt to will
enfant fût plus que lui, et qu'il eût une
 child were more than he should have
éducation supérieure à celle qu'il avait
 education superior that
reçue lui-même de son père et de sa
 received himself his
mère.
 mother.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

The honest man, guided by false notions of grandeur, had committed the fault, a pardonable one undoubtedly, to determine that his child should be greater than he, and that he should have an education superior to that which he himself had received of his father and mother.

* See notes on page 7.

** See first note on page 1.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

What lesson is this?	C'est la quatrième.
Qui avait eu un tort?	Le brave homme.
Quel brave homme?	Le père d'Alexis—or, Le menuisier.
Par quoi était-il guidé?	Par de fausses idées de grandeur.
Quel tort avait-il eu?	Il avait eu le tort de vouloir que son enfant fût plus que lui.
Ce tort est-il pardonnable?	Sans doute.
Qui était son enfant?	Alexis—or, Le jeune Alexis.
De qui le brave homme avait-il reçu son éducation?	De son père et de sa mère.
Qu'avait-il reçu de son père et de sa mère?	Son éducation.
Quelle éducation voulait-il donner à son enfant?	Une éducation supérieure à celle qu'il avait reçue lui-même.
How came he to commit this fault?	Parce qu'il était guidé par de fausses idées de grandeur.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.**

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
La mère avait raison.	The mother was right.
Le père avait tort.	The father was wrong.
Le brave homme est guidé par son enfant.	The worthy man is guided by his child.
Alexis est guidé par son père.	Alexis is guided by his father.
Son père lui donne une éducation supérieure à celle qu'il a reçue.	His father gives him an education superior to that which he received.
Il a tort, mais il est pardonnable.	He is wrong, but he is pardonable.
Que pensez-vous de cet homme?	What do you think of this man?
Nous pensons qu'il n'a pas reçu une éducation supérieure.	We think that he has not received a superior education.
Par quoi est-il guidé?	By what is he guided?
Il est guidé par de fausses idées.	He is guided by false notions.
Il est jeune; il se corrigera.	He is young; he will mend.

* See notes on page 2.

** See note on page 3.

Il ne se corrigera jamais.
 Son père est un brave homme.
 Sa mère est intelligente.
 Qu'est-ce que son père pense de
 lui ?
 Il pense que c'est un fainéant.
 A-t-il raison ?
 Nous pensons qu'il n'a pas tort.

He will never mend.
 His father is a worthy man.
 His mother is intelligent.
 What does his father think of
 him ?
 He thinks that he is a drone.
 Is he right ?
 We think that he is not wrong.

SECOND DIVISION—THEORETICAL PART.

QUATRIÈME, fourth, comes from *quatre*, four.

De fausses idées, some false ideas.

38. SOME, or ANY, is translated like *of the*, or *from the*, by **du, de la, de l', des** ; unless joined to an adjective which has to be placed before the noun in French when **de** only is used.—
 Ex. *De fausses idées*, or *des idées fausses*, some false ideas.

39. The place of the adjective in French can hardly be subjected to rules. It sometimes precedes and sometimes follows the noun, without any precise reason ; and often according to the taste or caprice of the speaker. Practice and observation are the best guides in this case.

For the convenience of learners, however, it may be said here, that all adjectives can be placed after the noun, except the following, which, when used in a literal sense, are generally put before :

<i>Beau</i> , fine, handsome.	<i>Bon</i> , good.	<i>Jeune</i> , young.
<i>Grand</i> , large, tall.	<i>Joli</i> , pretty.	<i>Meilleur</i> , better.
<i>Vieux</i> , old.	<i>Petit</i> , small.	<i>Vilain</i> , ugly.
<i>Mauvais</i> , bad.	<i>Gros</i> , big.	<i>Vrai</i> , true.

Fausse idée, false idea.

Fausse is the feminine plural of *faux*, false.

40. In French, the adjective always agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it relates.—Ex. *Le père prudent*,

the prudent father; *la mère prudente*, the prudent mother. *Les pères prudents*, the prudent fathers; *les mères prudentes*, the prudent mothers.

41. Adjectives generally form their feminine by the addition of an **e** mute; but those ending with an *e* mute in the masculine do not change.—Ex. *Le père prudent*, the prudent father; *la mère prudente*, the prudent mother. *Le jeune père*, the young father; *la jeune mère*, the young mother.

The exceptions to this rule will be explained as they occur in the text. Those already seen are: *Bon, bonne*, good; *faux, fausse*, false; and *actif, active*, active.

42. All adjectives ending with **f**, in the masculine, change *f* into **ve** in the feminine.—Ex. *Pensif, pensive*, pensive; *captif, captive*, captive; *attentif, attentive*, attentive, etc. (23).

43. The plural of adjectives is regularly formed, like that of nouns (8).—Ex. *Le père intelligent*, the intelligent father; *les pères intelligents*, the intelligent fathers. *La mère intelligente*, the intelligent mother; *les mères intelligentes*, the intelligent mothers.

Pardonnable, pardonable.

44. The termination **able** denotes aptness, fitness. It is joined to verbs of which it makes adjectives. It signifies the liability to undergo the action expressed by the verb, as in *pardonnable*, that is, liable, apt, or fit to be pardoned. About 200 adjectives in *able* are the same in both languages; as, *admirable*, *blâmable*, *comparable*, *désirable*, *passable*, *payable*, *variable*, etc. From these adjectives, the corresponding verbs may generally be obtained by changing the termination *able* into that of the infinitive, which, in the great majority of French verbs, is *er*, thus: *admirable*, *admirer*, to admire; *blâmable*, *blâmer*, to blame; *comparable*, *comparer*, to compare.

Que son enfant fût plus que lui, et qu'il eût, that his child should be more than he, and that he should have.

45. We have already seen that *he* is translated by *il*, and *him* by *le* put before the verb. When used isolately, however, that is to say, chiefly after **c'est**, *it is*, and **que**, meaning *as, than*.

only, or any preposition except *to*, and even then, if *to* is preceded by *c'est* or *que*, both *he* and *him* have to be translated by *lui*.—Ex. *C'est lui*, it is he; *plus que lui*, more than he; *avec lui*, with him.

A celle, to that, or the one.

46. When **THIS**, or **THAT**, can be replaced by *the one* without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence, it is a demonstrative pronoun, and has to be translated by **celui** for the masculine, and by **celle** for the feminine.—Ex. His saw, or that of the boy, *sa scie, ou celle du garçon*. His plane, or that of the joiner, *son rabot, ou celui du menuisier*.

47. There are two ways of expressing such ideas in English—His plane, or that of the joiner; or, His plane, or the joiner's. In French there is but one—His plane, or that of the joiner; and all sentences of this kind have to be translated according to this model.

Doute, doubt, is masculine by exception, and *grandeur*, feminine.

48. Almost all nouns ending with **eur** are, like those ending with **ion**, of the feminine gender, unless they denote males; such as, *acteur*, actor; *directeur*, director; *précepteur*, preceptor, etc.

49. The termination **eur** is found in a great number of words, about 160 of which end with *or* in English; as, *faveur*, favor; *valeur*, valor; *splendeur*, splendor, etc.

Enfant is of both genders. We say, *un enfant*, a male child; *une enfant*, a female child.

De son père et de sa mère,
from HIS father and from HIS mother.

In French, the Possessive adjective agrees in gender and number with the noun that follows it; that is to say, with the object possessed, and not with the possessor.

50. **HIS**, **HER**, **ITS**, are translated by **son** before a word masculine singular, by **sa** before a word feminine singular, and by **ses** before a word plural of either gender.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. The intelligent boy, 39. | 11. From the active boys, 43. |
| 2. The intelligent mother, 41. | 12. From the active mothers.* |
| 3. The intelligent boys, 43. | 13. To the worthy boy. |
| 4. The intelligent mothers.* | 14. To the worthy mother. |
| 5. Of the young boy, 39. | 15. To the worthy boys, 43. |
| 6. Of the young mother, 41. | 16. To the worthy mothers, 43. |
| 7. Of the young boys, 43. | 17. A true proverb, 39. |
| 8. Of the young mothers.* | 18. A true reason, 41. |
| 9. From the active boy, 39. | 19. Some true proverbs, 38. |
| 10. From the active mother, 42. | 20. Some true reasons, 38.* |

21. His father was a worthy man.—22. He had some good boys, 38.—23. That general was a great man.—24. The proverb is false.—25. What an example we have had! 30.—26. Do you know any proverbs? 38.—27. Proverbs are generally true, 43.—28. The principal animals, 43, 15.—29. The principal ideas, 41, 43.*—30. Has the joiner a good plane? 36.—31. He has a good plane, and a good saw.—32. Has he a bench?—33. He has a bench.—34. Her father, or the boy's, 50, 46, 47.—35. His mother, or that of the joiner, 50, 46, 47.—36. The favor, 49.—37. The valor, 49.—38. The splendor.

* In sentences containing a noun Feminine plural, the adjective should be made to agree in gender first, and the mark of the plural be added afterwards (41, 43).

FIFTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

*LITERAL TRANSLATION.***Cinquième leçon.**

Fifth

C'est pourquoi il l'avait mis d'abord
 It is why (therefore) him put at first
dans une des meilleures institutions de
 in of the best institutions
Paris, désirant qu'il réunît toutes sortes
 desiring should collect all sorts
de connaissances. Il voulait surtout qu'il
 knowledge willed above all
sût le grec et le latin, sans exa-
 should know Greek Latin to exa-
miner s'il ne serait pas plus utile qu'il
 mine if it would not be useful
possédât bien la langue française, cette
 should possess well tongue French that
langue étant la sienne.
 being his.

* Every new lesson should still be preceded as indicated in note *, on page 7, by a full rehearsal of the text and translation of all previous ones. In consequence of the accumulation of matter, however, and to prevent this exercise from engrossing too much time, the following modification in the mode of reviewing would be here suggested: Translate the first only from the French into English; the second, only from the English into French, and so on.

** See note * on page 1.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

He had therefore placed him at first in one of the best academies in Paris, wishing him to be versed in every branch of knowledge. He desired above all that he should know Greek and Latin, without considering whether it would not be more useful for him to be master of the French language, which was his own.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la cinquième.
Pourquoi avait-il mis son fils dans une des meilleures institutions de Paris?	Parce qu'il voulait qu'il eût une éducation supérieure à celle qu'il avait reçue.
When had he placed his son in an institution?	D'abord.
Où avait-il mis son fils d'abord?	Dans une des meilleures institutions de Paris.
Que désirait-il qu'il réunit?	Toutes sortes de connaissances.
Que voulait-il surtout qu'il sût?	Le grec et le latin.
Qu'est-ce que le père voulait surtout?	Que son fils sût le grec et le latin.
Qu'est-ce que le grec?	C'est une langue.
Qu'est-ce que le latin?	C'est une autre langue.
Quelle était la langue d'Alexis?	La langue française.
Quelle langue était-il utile qu'il possédât?	La langue française — <i>or</i> , La sienne.
Qu'est-ce que le père n'examinait pas?	S'il ne serait pas plus utile que son fils possédât bien la langue française.
Pourquoi était-il utile qu'il possédât bien la langue française?	Parce que cette langue était la sienne.
Comment était l'institution où Delatour avait mis son fils?	C'était une des meilleures de Paris.
Où était l'institution où il avait mis son fils?	Dans Paris— <i>or</i> , A Paris.

* See notes on page 2.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Savez-vous le grec?
 Savez-vous le latin?
 Nous ne savons pas le grec.

 Nous ne savons pas le latin.

 Que savez-vous?
 Nous savons le français.
 C'est plus utile.
 Le savez-vous bien?
 Nous ne le savons pas bien.
 Mais nous désirons posséder cette
 langue.
 Cette langue nous serait utile.

 Nous désirons nous exercer dans
 cette langue.
 Voulez-vous nous donner des
 leçons?
 Nous ne le pouvons pas.
 Mais cet homme vous donnera
 des leçons.
 Il a toutes sortes de connais-
 sances.
 Il a reçu la meilleure éducation.

 Est-il Français?
 Il est Français.
 Où est-il?
 Il est à Paris.
 Il est dans une institution.
 Que fait-il?
 Il donne des leçons.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

Do you know Greek?
 Do you know the Latin language?
 We do not know the Greek lan-
 guage.
 We do not know the Latin lan-
 guage.
 What do you know?
 We know the French language.
 It is more useful.
 Do you know it well?
 We do not know it well.
 But we wish to be versed in that
 language.
 That language would be useful
 to us.
 We wish to exercise ourselves in
 that language.
 Will you give us some lessons?

 We cannot.
 But that man will give you some
 lessons.
 He is versed in every branch of
 knowledge.
 He has received the best educa-
 tion.
 Is he a Frenchman?
 He is a Frenchman.
 Where is he?
 He is in Paris.
 He is in an institution.
 What does he do?
 He gives lessons.

* See note on page 3.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

CINQUIÈME, fifth, comes from *cinq*, five. A *u* is introduced, because *q* is generally followed by that letter in French.

Une des meilleures institutions,
one of the best institutions.

Meilleures is the feminine plural of *meilleur*, the comparative and superlative of *bon*, good, already seen. *Plus bon* would not be correct.

51. There are two ways of forming the degrees of comparison in English; as, *brisker*, or *more brisk*. In French there is but one; by placing before the adjective one of the following adverbs: **aussi**, as; **plus**, more, most; **moins**, less, least; **très**, **fort**, **bien**, very; etc.

Ex. *Le plus jeune des deux*, the younger of the two.

Le plus jeune des trois, the youngest of the three.

Très-jeune, fort jeune, or bien jeune, very young.

Meilleur, better, best, is the only important exception to this rule.

52. If the adjective is one which requires to be placed after the noun, according to Obs. 39, the adverb *plus*, *moins*, *aussi*, *très*, *fort*, or *bien*, goes over with it, and the article THE has to be repeated.—Ex. The most intelligent boy, *Le garçon le plus intelligent*.

53. When in English the conjunction THAN follows, it is rendered by **que**.—Ex. *Moins jeune que lui*, less young than he.

54. In the comparative of equality, the word AS is expressed by **aussi** before the adjective, and by **que** after it.—Ex. *Aussi jeune que lui*, as young as he.

Toutes *sortes de connaissances*, all sorts of knowledge.

55. **Toutes** is the feminine plural of **tous**, all. The feminine singular is **toute**, and the masculine plural **tous**, already seen.

Connaissances, knowledge.

56. In English, certain words are used only in the singular, as *knowledge*, *progress*; and others only in the plural, as *ashes*, *scissors*, etc. In French, *connaissance* has a singular and a plural.

Sans examiner, without examining; literally, without to examine.

57. The French prepositions govern the infinitive mood. **En**, *in*, is the only one that governs the present participle.

S'il ne serait pas, if it would not be.

58. **S'IL** stands for *si il*. **Si** is a conjunction corresponding to *if* and *whether*. The elision of the vowel *i* in this word takes place only before *il*, he, and its plural *ils*, they. **Si** is also used as an adverb, signifying *so*, *so very*.—Ex. *Si jeune*, so young, so very young.

Cette langue, this, or that language.

59. **Cette** is the feminine of **ce**, this, or that, already seen

La sienne, his, or his own, means also, hers, and its own.

60. The possessive pronoun, *la sienne*, should not be confounded with the possessive adjective *son*, his, her, its, already seen. *La sienne* being a pronoun, can never be followed by a noun, while the adjective *son* must invariably be joined to the name of a person or thing. Both, however, agree in gender and number with the thing possessed, and not with the possessor.—Ex. *Son père*, his, or her father. *Sa mère*, his, or her mother.

The changes of *his*, *hers*, *its*, in French, are—

Le sien, for the masculine singular; **la sienne**, for the feminine singular; **les siens**, for the masculine plural; and **les siennes**, for the feminine plural.

Son becomes **sa** before a word feminine singular, and **ses**, before a word plural of either gender.

Ex. *Avez-vous son rabot?* have you his, or her plane?

J'ai le sien, I have his, or hers.

Avez-vous sa scie? have you his, or her saw?

J'ai la sienne, I have his, or hers.

Avez-vous ses défauts? have you his, or her faults?

J'ai les siens, I have his, or hers.

Avez-vous ses manches? have you his, or her sleeves?

J'ai les siennes, I have his, or hers.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. A very useful man, 52, 39. | 11. The least pardonable fault. |
| 2. The most useful man, 52. | 12. Better than the others, 53. |
| 3. The least useful man, 52. | 13. Have we her bench? 60. |
| 4. As useful as the joiner, 54. | 14. We have his, 60. |
| 5. A very active son, 52. | 15. Have you his sleeve? 60. |
| 6. The most active son, 52. | 16. We have hers, 60. |
| 7. The least active son, 52. | 17. Have they his planes? 60. |
| 8. As active as he, 54, 45. | 18. They have hers, 60. |
| 9. A very false idea, 52. | 19. Have I her saws? 60. |
| 10. The best idea, 51. | 20. You have his, 60. |

21. Alexis was the youngest of his sons, 52, 60.—22. His mother is younger than his father, 52, 60.—23. Do you know the French language? 39.—24. Where is that crystal? 15.—25. That boy is intelligent.—26. This institution is better than the other, 59.—27. He passes without hearing the joiner, 57.—28. That plane is not his own, 60.—29. This saw is not good enough.—30. Her son is more active than intelligent, 53.—31. His mother wished, above all, to have a good boy.—32. He wished him to be versed in every branch of knowledge.

SIXTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

*LITERAL TRANSLATION.***Sixième leçon.**

Sixth

Le succès ne répondit pas aux ambitieuses espérances du pauvre ouvrier.
 success answered to the ambitious hopes of the poor workman.

Au bout de quelques mois des revers de fortune assaillirent Monsieur Delatour.
 At the end some months some reverses fortune assailed Mr.

Deux maisons de commerce, où il avait placé ses épargnes, suspendirent leurs paiements ; peu après, elles firent banqueroute, et donnèrent cinq pour cent à leurs nombreux créanciers.
 Two houses commerce placed savings suspended their payments little after they made bankruptcy gave five for hundred numerous creditors.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

The ambitious hopes of the poor workman were not crowned with success. After a few months, misfortunes befell Mr. Delatour. Two commercial houses, in which he had placed his savings, stopped payment; a short time afterwards they failed, and paid five per cent to their numerous creditors.

* See notes on pages 7 and 26. ** See first note on page 1.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION *

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la sixième.
Qui avait des espérances ?	Le pauvre ouvrier.
Quelles espérances avait-il ?	D'ambitieuses espérances.
Qu'est-ce qui ne répondit pas à ses ambitieuses espérances ?	Le succès.
A quoi le succès ne répondit-il pas ?	Aux ambitieuses espérances du pauvre ouvrier.
When did misfortunes befall Mr. Delatour ?	Au bout de quelques mois.
Qui des revers de fortune assaillirent-ils ?	Monsieur Delatour.
Où avait-il placé ses épargnes ?	Dans deux maisons de commerce.
Qu'avait-il placé dans deux maisons de commerce ?	Ses épargnes.
Qu'est-ce que les deux maisons de commerce suspendirent ?	Leurs paiements.
Que firent les deux maisons de commerce ?	Elles firent banqueroute.
When did they fail ?	Peu après.
Combien donnèrent-elles à leurs créanciers ?	Cinq pour cent.
A qui donnèrent-elles cinq pour cent ?	A leurs nombreux créanciers.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.**

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Le père de ce jeune homme est un brave ouvrier.	The father of that young man is an honest workman.
Il a placé ses épargnes dans une maison de commerce.	He has placed his savings in a commercial house.
A-t-il de la fortune ?	Has he any fortune ?
Il a des espérances.	He has some expectations.
Il est actif et laborieux.	He is active and laborious.
A-t-il des enfants ?	Has he any children ?
Il a trois garçons.	He has three boys.

* See notes on page 2.

** See note on page 3.

Le premier désole son père et sa mère.	The first distresses his father and mother.
Le deuxième est assez intelligent.	The second is intelligent enough.
Mais il n'est pas actif.	But he is not active.
Le plus jeune est le plus ambitieux.	The youngest is the most ambitious.
Il fait plus à lui seul que les deux autres.	He does more by himself than the other two.
Son père le placera dans une maison de commerce.	His father will place him in a commercial house.
Pourquoi le premier désole-t-il son père et sa mère?	Why does the first distress his father and mother?
Parce que c'est un fainéant.	Because he is a drone.
Pourquoi son père ne le corrige-t-il pas?	Why does not his father correct him?
Parce qu'il est bon et indulgent.	Because he is good and indulgent.
Mais nous pensons qu'il a tort.	But we think that he is wrong.
Ne le pensez-vous pas?	Don't you think so?
Sans doute.	Without doubt.
Et le deuxième, que fait-il?	And what does the second do?
Il est ouvrier comme son père.	He is a workman, like his father.
Quelle profession exerce-t-il?	What trade does he follow?
La profession de menuisier.	The trade of a joiner.

SECOND DIVISION—THEORETICAL PART.

SIXIÈME, sixth, comes from *six*, six.

Ne répondit pas, did not answer.

61. We have already seen that the negative form of conjugation takes **pas** after the verb, and **ne** before it.

THE AUXILIARY VERB **Avoir**, TO HAVE, CONJUGATED
NEGATIVELY.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

N'avoir pas, not to have.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

N'ayant pas, not having.

INDICATIVE MOOD:

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je n'ai pas,</i>	I have not,	or do not have.
<i>Tu n'as pas,</i>	thou hast not,	or dost not have.
<i>Il n'a pas,</i>	he has not,	or does not have.
<i>Nous n'avons pas,</i>	we have not,	or do not have.
<i>Vous n'avez pas,</i>	you have not,	or do not have.
<i>Ils n'ont pas,</i>	they have not,	or do not have.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je n'avais pas,</i>	I had not,	or was not having.
<i>Tu n'avais pas,</i>	thou hadst not,	or wast not having.
<i>Il n'avait pas,</i>	he had not,	or was not having.
<i>Nous n'avions pas,</i>	we had not,	or were not having.
<i>Vous n'aviez pas,</i>	you had not,	or were not having.
<i>Ils n'avaient pas,</i>	they had not,	or were not having.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je n'eus pas,</i>	I had not,	or did not have.
<i>Tu n'eus pas,</i>	thou hadst not,	or didst not have.
<i>Il n'eut pas,</i>	he had not,	or did not have.
<i>Nous n'eûmes pas,</i>	we had not,	or did not have.
<i>Vous n'eûtes pas,</i>	you had not,	or did not have.
<i>Ils n'eurent pas,</i>	they had not,	or did not have.

FUTURE.

<i>Je n'aurai pas,</i>	I shall not have,	or will not have.
<i>Tu n'auras pas,</i>	thou shalt not have,	or wilt not have.
<i>Il n'aura pas,</i>	he shall not have,	or will not have.
<i>Nous n'aurons pas,</i>	we shall not have,	or will not have.
<i>Vous n'aurez pas,</i>	you shall not have,	or will not have.
<i>Ils n'auront pas,</i>	they shall not have,	or will not have.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je n'aurais pas,</i>	I should not have,	or would not have.
<i>Tu n'aurais pas,</i>	thou shouldst not have,	or wouldst not have.
<i>Il n'aurait pas,</i>	he should not have,	or would not have.
<i>Nous n'aurions pas,</i>	we should not have,	or would not have.
<i>Vous n'auriez pas,</i>	you should not have,	or would not have.
<i>Ils n'auraient pas,</i>	they should not have,	or would not have.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>N'aie pas,</i>	have (thou) not.
<i>N'ayons pas,</i>	let us not have.
<i>N'ayez pas,</i>	have (you) not.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je n'aie pas,</i>	that I may not have.
<i>Que tu n'aies pas,</i>	that thou mayst not have.
<i>Qu'il n'ait pas,</i>	that he may not have.
<i>Que nous n'ayons pas,</i>	that we may not have.
<i>Que vous n'ayez pas,</i>	that you may not have.
<i>Qu'ils n'aient pas,</i>	that they may not have.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je n'eusse pas,</i>	that I might not have.
<i>Que tu n'eusses pas,</i>	that thou mightst not have.
<i>Qu'il n'eût pas,</i>	that he might not have.
<i>Que nous n'eussions pas,</i>	that we might not have.
<i>Que vous n'eussiez pas,</i>	that you might not have.
<i>Qu'ils n'eussent pas,</i>	that they might not have.

62. In the compound tenses, the **pas** comes between the verb and the past participle.

Ex. <i>Je n'ai pas eu,</i>	I have not had.
<i>Je n'avais pas eu,</i>	I had not had.
<i>Je n'aurai pas eu,</i>	I shall, or will not have had.
<i>Je n'aurais pas eu,</i>	I should, or would not have had, etc.

Ambitieuses espérances, ambitious hopes.

Ambitieuses is the feminine plural of *ambitieux*, ambitious.

63. The termination **eux** is found in a great number of adjectives, about 200 of which end in *ous* in English, without any or with scarcely any other difference; as, *Ambitieux*, ambitious; *envieux*, envious; *glorieux*, glorious; *précieux*, precious; *avantageux*, advantageous; *vertueux*, virtuous.

64. Adjectives ending in **x** form their feminine by changing **x** into **se**.—Ex. *Ambitieux*, *ambitieuse*, ambitious; *nombreux*, *nombreuse*, numerous.

Monsieur *Delatour*, Mr. Delatour.

65. **Monsieur** is formed of the possessive adjective *mon*, my, and the substantive *sieur*, sir. It corresponds to *Mr.*, before a proper name; as, *Monsieur Delatour*, Mr. Delatour; to *Sir*, in addressing a man; as, *Bonjour, monsieur*, Good morning, sir; and to *gentleman*, in speaking of a man; as, *Ce monsieur*, This, or that gentleman. Its plural is *Messieurs*.

66. My is translated by **mon** before a word masculine singular; by **ma**, before a word feminine singular; and by **mes**, before a word plural of either gender.—Ex. *Mon père*, my father; *ma mère*, my mother; *mes enfants*, my children.

Leurs *paiements*, their payments.

67. THEIR is translated by **leur** before a word singular, and by **leurs** before a word plural, of either gender.—Ex. *Leur père*, their father; *leur mère*, their mother; *leurs enfants*, their children.

Elles, they.

68. **Elles** is the feminine of **ils**, and should be used when speaking of persons or things of the feminine gender in French. Its singular is **elle**, she, or it.

Mois, month, is masculine, and *maison*, house, feminine by exception.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Have you my sleeves? 66. | 7. She has my savings, 66. |
| 2. I have his sleeves, 60. | 8. He had her house, 60, 68. |
| 3. Has he their plane? 67. | 9. She shall have my fortune. |
| 4. He has not my plane, 66. | 10. She would have the time. |
| 5. Have I their saw? 67. | 11. Have I not my lesson? |
| 6. You have their saw, 67. | 12. You have not the lesson, 61. |

13. Alexis is going to Paris, 31.—14. His father is ambitious, 63.—15. His mother is serious, 63, 64.—16. She is attentive to the lessons, 68.—17. She has some fortune, 68.—18. The knowledge of the French language is useful, 56.—19. Where is Mr. Delatour?—20. He is at his bench.—21. What does he do? 31.—22. He is making a plane, 31.—23. Do you know where the boy is?—24. He is in a commercial house.—25. An ambitious man, 63, 39.—26. A virtuous boy, 63, 39.—27. A laborious profession, 64, 39.—28. The pious mother, 64, 39.—29. The father's eye, 20.—30. The boy's elbow, 20.—31. The joiner's sleeve, 20.—32. The man's bench, 20.—33. My father or his, 66, 60.—34. My mother or his, 66, 60.—35. My parents or theirs, 66, 67.—36. Their plane, 67.—37. Their saw, 67.—38. Their benches, 67.—39. His savings and her fortune, 60.

SEVENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

*LITERAL TRANSLATION.***Septième leçon.**

Seventh

Ces tristes circonstances eurent pour
 These sad circumstances had
résultat de forcer M. Delatour à retirer
 result to force Mr. take back
notre petit paresseux de sa pension, dans
 our little lazy (fellow) from boarding-school,
laquelle il avait appris fort peu de chose,
 which learned very thing
et d'où il ne rapportait qu'un penchant
 brought back propensity
un peu plus prononcé pour l'indolence,
 pronounced (decided) indolence.
avec une aversion complète pour le
 with aversion complete
métier de son père, qu'il regardait
 trade looked upon
comme une chose basse et indigne de lui.
 as base unworthy

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

The consequence of these untoward occurrences was, that Mr. Delatour was compelled to remove our little lazy fellow from school, where he had learned very little, and whence he returned with a still stronger propensity to indolence, and a decided aversion to his father's business, which he looked upon as low and unworthy of him.

* See notes on pages 7 and 26.

** See first note on page 1.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la septième.
Quelles circonstances forcèrent M. Delatour à retirer notre petit paresseux de sa pension?	De tristes circonstances— <i>or</i> , Des revers de fortune.
Qui est-ce que ces circonstances forcèrent à retirer Alexis de sa pension?	M. Delatour.
Qui forcèrent-elles M. Delatour à retirer de sa pension?	Alexis— <i>or</i> , Notre petit paresseux.
D'où le forcèrent-elles à retirer notre petit paresseux?	De sa pension.
Quel résultat eurent ces tristes circonstances?	De forcer M. Delatour à retirer notre petit paresseux de sa pension.
Qu'avait-il appris dans sa pension?	Fort peu de chose.
Où avait-il appris fort peu de chose?	Dans sa pension.
Pourquoi avait-il appris fort peu de chose?	Sans doute parce qu'il était paresseux.
Pourquoi était-il paresseux?	Nous ne le savons pas.
D'où rapportait-il un penchant prononcé pour l'indolence?	De sa pension.
Que rapportait-il de sa pension?	Un penchant un peu plus prononcé pour l'indolence.
Pour quel métier avait-il une aversion complète?	Pour le métier de son père.
Quel était le métier de son père?	Le métier de menuisier.
Quel sentiment avait-il pour ce métier?	Une aversion complète.
Comment regardait-il ce métier?	Comme une chose basse et indigne de lui.
Pourquoi avait-il une aversion complète pour ce métier?	Parce qu'il le regardait comme une chose basse et indigne de lui.

* See notes on page 2.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Qu'avez-vous appris?

Nous avons appris fort peu de chose.

Nous savons fort peu de chose.

Pourquoi avez-vous appris fort peu de chose?

Vous ne répondez pas.

Pourquoi ne répondez-vous pas?

Nous ne le pouvons pas.

Vous le pouvez si vous le voulez.

Nous n'avons pas eu le temps.

Mais vous prononcez fort bien.

Vous avez appris quelque chose.

Où avez-vous appris ce que vous savez?

A notre pension.

Mais nous avons eu fort peu de leçons.

Où est Alexis?

Il est avec son père.

Est-il actif comme son père?

Il est un peu paresseux.

C'est pourquoi son père l'a retiré de pension.

Mais il est fort jeune.

Le temps corrigera son penchant pour l'indolence.

C'est possible.

Surtout avec l'exemple d'un homme comme son père.

Qu'est-ce que son père pense faire de lui?

Il le placera dans une maison de commerce.

Il a raison.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

What have you learned?

We have learned very little.

We know very little.

Why have you learned very little?

You do not answer.

Why don't you answer?

We cannot.

You can if you will.

We have had no time.

But you pronounce very well.

You have learned something.

Where did you learn what you know?

At our school.

But we had very few lessons.

Where is Alexis?

He is with his father.

Is he active like his father?

He is rather lazy.

That is why his father took him back from school.

But he is very young.

Time will correct his propensity to indolence.

It is possible.

Above all with the example of such a man as his father.

What does his father intend to make of him?

He will place him in a commercial house.

He is right.

* See note on page 3.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

SEPTIÈME, seventh, comes from *sept*, seven.

Ces *tristes circonstances*, these sad circumstances.

Ces is the plural of **ce**, **cet**, **cette**, already seen. We have now completed the study of the demonstrative adjectives.

69. THIS, or THAT, is translated by **ce** before a word masculine singular, and by **cette** before a word feminine singular. THESE, or THOSE, is translated by **ces**. **Cet** is used instead of **ce**, before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

70. Each of these is susceptible of being made to indicate, more particularly, the proximity or distance of the person or thing spoken of, by the addition of **ci** or **là**, placed after the substantive.—Ex. *Ce garçon-ci*, this boy; *ce garçon-là*, that boy.

Notre *petit paresseux*, our little, lazy fellow.

71. Like *their*, OUR and YOUR have no particular form for the feminine in French. They are translated by **notre** and **votre**, before a word singular, and by **nos** and **vos**, before a word plural. We have now seen all the possessive adjectives except **thy**, which will be found explained in the following synoptic table :

		Before a word Masc. singular.	Before a word Fem. singular.	Before a word Plural of either gender.
MY is translated by		mon	ma	mes
THY,	"	ton	ta	tes
HIS, HER, OR ITS,	"	son	sa	ses
OUR,	"	notre	notre	nos
YOUR,	"	votre	votre	vos
THEIR,	"	leur	leur	leurs

72. The only thing to be added here is, that **mon**, **ton**, **son**, are used instead of **ma**, **ta**, **sa**, before words beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

Paresseux, lazy fellow.

73. French adjectives are often used as substantives, in the singular as well as in the plural. Thus, we may render: *The*

ambitious man, by *l'ambitieux* ;—a *Frenchwoman*, by *une Française*,—without being obliged to add the words, *homme*, man, or *femme*, woman, required in the English.

Dans laquelle,
in which.

Qu'il regardait,
which he looked upon.

74. WHICH, added to a noun, is an adjective to be translated like *what* by **quel**, for the masculine singular; by **quelle**, for the feminine singular; by **quels**, for the masculine plural; and by **quelles**, for the feminine plural.

75. But when WHICH is not added to a noun, it is either an interrogative pronoun, to be translated by **lequel**, **laquelle**, **lesquels**, **lesquelles**; or a relative pronoun, to be rendered by **qui**, for the nominative case, and by **que**, for the objective case.*

WHICH, as an interrogative pronoun, is always at the beginning of the sentence, and can generally be replaced by *which one*; as a relative, it is always in the middle.

76. After a preposition, however, WHICH must invariably be translated by **lequel**, **laquelle**, **lesquels**, or **lesquelles**; taking care that the article *le*, *la*, *les*, which enters into the composition of this word, continues subject to contraction whenever preceded by *de* or *à*, as in the following models:

OF WHICH, **duquel**, **de laquelle**, **desquels**, **desquelles**.

TO WHICH, **auquel**, **à laquelle**, **auxquels**, **auxquelles**.

Fort peu de chose, very little.

77. **Chose** is a feminine substantive, which signifies *thing*. But *peu de chose*, little, and *quelque chose*, something, any thing, are adverbial forms which are masculine.

* The following method would be offered as an easy way to distinguish the nominative from the objective case. We have already seen that, owing to the absence of the neuter gender in French, inanimate objects are always spoken of either in the masculine or in the feminine. The same observation will apply to WHICH as a relative pronoun, which may generally be replaced by *who*, for the nominative case, and by *whom*, for the objective.—Ex. The dog WHICH has, *Le chien qui a*—literally, the dog who has. The dog WHICH you have, *Le chien que vous avez*—literally, the dog whom you have.

Indolence, indolence.

78. The termination **ence** belongs to substantives which are the same in both languages; as, *Indolence*, *prudence*: or nearly the same; as, *Agence*, agency; *clémence*, clemency.

Indigne de lui, unworthy of him.

79. HIM, generally translated by **le**, put before the verb, has to be rendered by **lui**, when used isolately; that is to say, chiefly after **que**, meaning *as*, *than*, *only*, or any other preposition than *to*; and even then, if *to* is preceded by **c'est**, *it is*, or **que**.—Ex. *C'est à lui que je parle*, it is to him I speak. It is also translated by **lui** placed after the verb in Imperative affirmative sentences.—Ex. *Donnez-lui*, give him.

Basse is the feminine form of *bas*, low, one of the few adjectives which form their feminine irregularly.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. This hand, 69. | 12. Your doubt, 71. |
| 2. That vice, 69. | 13. Your payments, 71. |
| 3. These hands, 69. | 14. Their example, 67. |
| 4. My father. | 15. Their creditors, 67. |
| 5. My mother. | 16. Which general? 74. |
| 6. My elbows. | 17. What nation? 74. |
| 7. His house. | 18. What moment? 74. |
| 8. Her son. | 19. This metal, 69. |
| 9. His boys. | 20. Which one? 75. |
| 10. Our profession, 71. | 21. Those minerals, 69. |
| 11. Our proverbs, 71. | 22. Which ones? 75. |

23. What do we think of these things? 69.—24. Your profession is useful, 71.—25. Our idleness is unworthy of us, 71.—26. The lesson is complete.—27. This shop is beautiful, 69.—28. Where was Alexis?—29. He was generally in the streets.—30. Had he a trade?—31. He was a drone.—32. Where was his mother?—33. She was in the house.

EIGHTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Huitième leçon.

Eighth

Alexis, quand il fut chez son père,
 when was in the house of
cessa totalement d'étudier, et s'affran-
 ceased totally to study himself freed
chit de toute contrainte. Il eut bientôt
 constraint had soon
oublié le peu qu'il savait. Tous les jours
 forgotten knew days
il flânait dans les rues, ou sur les boule-
 loitered streets on boule-
vards, qui étaient ses promenades
 vards were walks
favorites. Il s'arrêtait souvent en con-
 favorite stopped often con-
templation muette devant les plus belles
 temption dumb before beautiful
boutiques.
 shops.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

When Alexis was at home again at his father's, he gave up studying altogether, and freed himself from all restraint. He soon forgot the little he knew. Every day he used to loiter about the streets, or on the boulevards, which was his favorite walk. He often stopped in mute contemplation before the finest shops.

* See notes on pages 7 and 26.

** See first note on page 1.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la huitième.
Qui est-ce qui cessa totalement d'étudier ?	Alexis.
Quand cessa-t-il d'étudier ?	Quand il fut chez son père.
Comment cessa-t-il d'étudier ?	Totalement.
Qu'est-ce qu'Alexis cessa de faire ?	Il cessa d'étudier.
De quoi s'affranchit-il ?	Il s'affranchit de toute contrainte.
Qu'est-ce qu'il eut bientôt oublié ?	Le peu qu'il savait.
Quand oublia-t-il le peu qu'il savait ?	Bientôt.
Quand flânait-il dans les rues, ou sur les boulevards ?	Tous les jours.
Où flânait-il tous les jours ?	Dans les rues, ou sur les boulevards.
Quelles étaient ses promenades favorites ?	Les boulevards.
Où s'arrêtait-il souvent, en contemplation muette ?	Devant les plus belles boutiques.
Quand s'arrêtait-il devant les plus belles boutiques ?	Souvent.
Comment regardait-il les plus belles boutiques ?	En contemplation muette.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.**

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Quel est ce jeune homme ?	Who is that young man ?
C'est le fils d'un brave ouvrier.	He is the son of an honest workman.
Que fait-il ?	What does he do ?
Il flâne dans les rues.	He loiters about the streets.
Est-ce qu'il n'étudie jamais ?	Does he never study ?
Il n'étudie pas souvent.	He does not often study.
Pourquoi donc ?	Why not ?
Parce qu'il n'est pas bien guidé.	Because he is not properly guided.

* See notes on page 2.

** See note on page 3.

Il n'a que sa mère.	He has but his mother.
Et elle est muette.	And she is dumb.
Mais il est fort jeune.	But he is very young.
Il a le temps d'apprendre.	He has time to learn.
Désirez-vous faire une promenade?	Do you wish to take a walk?
Nous vous suivons.	We follow you.
C'est à vous à nous guider.	You must be our guide.
Quelle belle rue!	What a fine street!
Ce n'est pas une rue.	It is not a street.
Qu'est-ce donc?	What is it then?
C'est un boulevard.	It is a boulevard.
C'est notre promenade favorite.	It is our favorite walk.
Nous flânons souvent sur les boulevards.	We often lounge on the boulevards.
Cette boutique est fort belle.	That shop is very fine.
Mais, où est notre petit garçon?	But, where is our little boy?
Il était devant nous.	He was before us.
Nous ne le voyons plus.	We have lost sight of him.
Par où a-t-il passé?	Which way has he gone?
Il est dans cette boutique de menuisier.	He is in that joiner's shop.
Le petit curieux!	What an inquisitive little fellow he is!
Il nous avait oubliés.	He had forgotten us.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

HUITIÈME, eighth, comes from *huit*, eight.

Quand il fut, when he was.

Both *fut* and *était* correspond to the English word *was*; but *fut* is the third person singular of the past tense definite of the irregular verb *être*. The same person of the past tense of the subjunctive mood (seen in the fourth lesson) differs from it by having a circumflex accent placed over the *u*.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB Être, TO BE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Être, to be.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Étant, being.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Été, been.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je suis,</i>	I am.
<i>Tu es,</i>	thou art.
<i>Il est,</i>	he is.
<i>Nous sommes,</i>	we are.
<i>Vous êtes,</i>	you are.
<i>Ils sont,</i>	they are.

IMPERFECT.

<i>J'étais,</i>	I was,	or used to be.
<i>Tu étais,</i>	thou wast,	or usedst to be.
<i>Il était,</i>	he was,	or used to be.
<i>Nous étions,</i>	we were,	or used to be.
<i>Vous étiez,</i>	you were,	or used to be.
<i>Ils étaient,</i>	they were,	or used to be.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je fus,</i>	I was.
<i>Tu fus,</i>	thou wast.
<i>Il fut,</i>	he was.
<i>Nous fûmes,</i>	we were.
<i>Vous fûtes,</i>	you were.
<i>Ils furent,</i>	they were.

FUTURE.

<i>Je serai,</i>	I shall be,	or will be.
<i>Tu seras,</i>	thou shalt be,	or wilt be.
<i>Il sera,</i>	he shall be,	or will be.
<i>Nous serons,</i>	we shall be,	or will be.
<i>Vous serez,</i>	you shall be,	or will be.
<i>Ils seront,</i>	they shall be,	or will be.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je serais,</i>	I should be,	or would be.
<i>Tu serais,</i>	thou shouldst be,	or wouldst be.
<i>Il serait,</i>	he should be,	or would be.
<i>Nous serions,</i>	we should be,	or would be.
<i>Vous seriez,</i>	you should be,	or would be.
<i>Ils seraient,</i>	they should be,	or would be.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sois,</i>	be (thou).
<i>Soyons,</i>	let us be.
<i>Soyez,</i>	be (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je sois,</i>	that I may be.
<i>Que tu sois,</i>	that thou mayst be.
<i>Qu'il soit,</i>	that he may be.
<i>Que nous soyons,</i>	that we may be.
<i>Que vous soyez,</i>	that you may be.
<i>Qu'ils soient,</i>	that they may be.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je fusse,</i>	that I might be.
<i>Que tu fusses,</i>	that thou mightst be.
<i>Qu'il fût,</i>	that he might be.
<i>Que nous fussions,</i>	that we might be.
<i>Que vous fussiez,</i>	that you might be.
<i>Qu'ils fussent,</i>	that they might be.

Chez *son père*, at his father's.

80. **Chez** is a preposition much used in French. It signifies *at* or *in the house of*. It also corresponds to *home*; as, *Il va CHEZ lui*, he is going home; *Il va CHEZ vous*, he is going to your house; *Il est CHEZ lui*, he is at home; *Il est CHEZ sa mère*, he is at his mother's (house). This preposition is also used in the sense of *among, with, or in*; as, *CHEZ les Grecs*, among, or

with the Greeks. In cases of doubt, however, it will be better to use the expression, **à la maison**, at home, which offers less difficulty in its application.

Le peu, the little.

The adverb *peu* is here used as a noun.

81. Those parts of speech which, without being substantives, are accidentally used as such, are masculine; as, *Un être*, a being; *le sublime*, the sublime; *l'utile*, the useful.

Sur les boulevards qui étaient,
upon the boulevards which were.

82. This would seem to be an additional meaning to **qui**, *who*, seen in the first lesson; but it is not so. There being no neuter gender in French, inanimate objects are always spoken of either in the masculine or in the feminine; and *qui étaient* means here literally, *who were*. For the same reason, It is good, would have to be translated by **Il est bon**, HE is good, when speaking of a plane; and by **Elle est bonne**, SHE is good, when speaking of a saw: I see IT, by *Je le vois*, I see HIM, when speaking of the plane; and by *Je la vois*, I see HER, when speaking of the saw.

Favorites is the feminine plural of *favori*, favorite, favorite; and *belles* that of *beau*, *belle*, fine, beautiful, two of the fewjectives which form their feminine irregularly.

Il s'arrêtait souvent, he often stopped.

83. In French, the adverb may generally be placed after the verb, and before every other kind of words.

En *contemplation muette*,
in mute contemplation.

Dans *les rues*,
in the streets.

84. Both **dans** and **en** mean IN; but **dans** is generally followed by a noun, while **en** is most often joined to a verb in the present participle.—Ex. *En parlant*, in speaking; *dans la boutique*, in the store.

MUETTE is the feminine of the adjective *muét*, dumb, or mute.

85. Adjectives ending in **el**, **eil**, **et**, **ien**, and **on**, form their feminine by doubling the final consonant, and adding *e* mute.

The exceptions to this rule are: *Complet*, complete; *discret*, discreet; *inquiet*, uneasy; *secret*, secret. In the feminine: *Complète*, *discrète*, *inquiète*, and *secrète*.

This concludes the study of the formation of the feminine of adjectives:

1. Most adjectives take an **e** mute in the feminine.

2. Those ending with an **e** mute in the masculine do not change in the feminine.

3. Those ending with **el**, **eil**, **et**, **ien**, **on**, double their final consonant, and take an **e** mute.

4. Those ending with **f** change **f** into **ve**.

5. Those ending with **x** change **x** into **se**.

The exceptions to these rules are but few, and will be explained as they occur in the text. Those already seen are: *Bas*, *basse*, low; *bon*, *bonne*, good; *complet*, *complète*, complete; *faux*, *fausse*, false; *favori*, *favorite*, favorite.

EXERCISES

UPON OBSERVATIONS 73 AND 78.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. At my father's, 80. | 10. She was sad. |
| 2. At his mother's, 80. | 11. Is your mother at the joiner's? |
| 3. At her son's, 80. | 12. She is not at the joiner's, 80. |
| 4. At your joiner's, 80. | 13. Where is she? |
| 5. Is the boy good? 36, 37. | 14. She is at home, 80. |
| 6. He is good. | 15. Is your father at home? 80. |
| 7. He is not good. | 16. He is not at home, 80. |
| 8. Is she dumb? 85. | 17. Where is he? |
| 9. She is not dumb, 85. | 18. He is at his son's, 80. |

19. Our father has a favorite proverb, 85.—20. His boy is dumb.—21. Their mother is good, 85.—22. What a boy! 29.—23. This child is beautiful.—24. He could study, but he was lazy.—25. A small house.—26. A sad thing.—27. An attentive mother.—28. A curious shop.—29. A single street.—30. A good gentleman, 65.—31. What a fine day! 74, 29.—32. What a father! 74, 29.—33. What a mother! 74, 29.

NINTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Neuvième leçon.

Ninth

Il s'étendait quelquefois sur un banc,
 extended (stretched) sometimes bench
dans le jardin des Tuileries, ou dans celui
 garden that
du Luxembourg, et il s'y assoupissait.
 there drowsed
Il fréquentait aussi les quais et les ponts,
 frequented also quays bridges,
et demeurait de longues heures, appuyé
 dwelled long hours leaned
sur un parapet, à regarder l'eau couler.
 parapet look water flow
Il appelait cela une douce et molle rê-
 called that sweet soft rev-
verie, une nonchalance poétique.
 ery carelessness poetical.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

He would sometimes stretch himself on a bench, in the garden of the Tuileries, or the Luxembourg, and there slumber. He used also to frequent the quays and bridges, and would remain for hours together, leaning on a parapet, looking at the course of the water. He called that a gentle and soft reverie, a poetical listlessness.

* See notes on pages 7 and 26.

** See note on page 1.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la neuvième.
Quand s'étendait-il sur un banc ?	Quelquefois.
Sur quoi s'étendait-il quelquefois ?	Sur un banc.
Où était le banc sur lequel il s'étendait ?	Dans le jardin des Tuileries, ou dans celui du Luxembourg.
What would he sometimes do ?	Il s'étendait sur un banc.
Comment y passait-il son temps ?	Il s'y assoupissait.
Que fréquentait-il aussi ?	Les quais et les ponts.
Combien de temps demeurerait-il appuyé sur un parapet ?	Il y demeurerait de longues heures.
Où demeurerait-il appuyé ?	Sur un parapet.
Que regardait-il ?	Il regardait l'eau couler.
Comment appelait-il cela ?	Une douce et molle rêverie, une nonchalance poétique.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.**

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Où demeurez-vous ?
 Nous demeurons sur le quai.
 Nous y avons une maison.
 Avez-vous un jardin ?
 Nous avons un jardin, mais il est fort petit.
 La maison est-elle à vous ?
 Elle est à notre père.
 Voulez-vous la voir ?
 Nous ne pouvons pas.
 Nous n'avons pas le temps.
 Quelle heure est-il ?
 Il est huit heures.
 Comment appelez-vous ce jardin ?
 C'est le jardin des Tuileries.
 C'est une bien belle promenade.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

Where do you live ?
 We live on the quay.
 We have a house there.
 Have you a garden ?
 We have a garden, but it is a very small one.
 Is the house yours ?
 It is our father's.
 Do you wish to see it ?
 We cannot.
 We have not time.
 What o'clock is it ?
 It is eight o'clock.
 How do you call this garden ?
 It is the garden of the Tuileries.
 It is a beautiful place for a walk.

* See notes on page 2.

** See note on page 8.

Quel est ce beau pont que nous voyons ?	What fine bridge is that we see ?
C'est le Pont-Royal.	It is the Pont-Royal.
Désirez-vous vous arrêter un peu ?	Do you wish to stop a little ?
Si vous le voulez bien.	If you please.
Voyez-vous ce monsieur appuyé sur le parapet ?	Do you see that gentleman leaning on the parapet ?
Comment s'appelle-t-il ?	What is his name ?
Il s'appelle Alexis.	His name is Alexis.
Que fait-il ?	What is he doing ?
Il regarde l'eau couler.	He is looking at the course of the water.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

NEUVIÈME, ninth, comes from *neuf*, nine—the *f* becomes a *v*.

Il s'étendait, he stretched himself; *il s'y assoupissait*, he slumbered there; *il fréquentait*, he frequented.

The infinitive of *ÉTENDAIT* is *étendre*, to stretch; of *ASSOUPISSAIT*, *assoupir*, to slumber; and of *FRÉQUENTAIT*, *fréquenter*, to frequent.

86. All French verbs end in the infinitive either with **er**, **ir**, or **re**. Those ending with **er** are said to be of the first conjugation; those ending with **ir** are of the second; and those ending with **re**, of the third.

87. Many grammarians make a particular class of the verbs in **oir**; but their model of conjugation being applicable to seven verbs only, it has been omitted throughout this work. The verbs in *oir* will be found explained among the irregular verbs.

MODEL OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Parler, to speak.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Parlant, speaking.*Parlé*, spoken.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je parle</i> ,	I speak,	am speaking, or do speak.
<i>Tu parles</i> ,	thou speakest,	art speaking, or dost speak.
<i>Il parle</i> ,	he speaks,	is speaking, or does speak.
<i>Nous parlons</i> ,	we speak,	are speaking, or do speak.
<i>Vous parlez</i> ,	you speak,	are speaking, or do speak.
<i>Ils parlent</i> ,	they speak,	are speaking, or do speak.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je parlais</i> ,	I spoke,	or was speaking.
<i>Tu parlais</i> ,	thou spokest,	or wast speaking.
<i>Il parlait</i> ,	he spoke,	or was speaking.
<i>Nous parlions</i> ,	we spoke,	or were speaking.
<i>Vous parliez</i> ,	you spoke,	or were speaking.
<i>Ils parlaient</i> ,	they spoke,	or were speaking.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je parlai</i> ,	I spoke,	or did speak.
<i>Tu parlâs</i> ,	thou spokest,	or didst speak.
<i>Il parla</i> ,	he spoke,	or did speak.
<i>Nous parlâmes</i> ,	we spoke,	or did speak.
<i>Vous parlâtes</i> ,	you spoke,	or did speak.
<i>Ils parlèrent</i> ,	they spoke,	or did speak.

FUTURE.

<i>Je parlerai</i> ,	I shall speak,	or will speak.
<i>Tu parleras</i> ,	thou shalt speak,	or wilt speak.
<i>Il parlera</i> ,	he shall speak,	or will speak.
<i>Nous parlerons</i> ,	we shall speak,	or will speak.
<i>Vous parlerez</i> ,	you shall speak,	or will speak.
<i>Ils parleront</i> ,	they shall speak,	or will speak.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je parlerais,</i>	I should speak,	or would speak.
<i>Tu parlerais,</i>	thou shouldst speak,	or wouldst speak.
<i>Il parlerait,</i>	he should speak,	or would speak.
<i>Nous parlerions,</i>	we should speak,	or would speak.
<i>Vous parleriez,</i>	you should speak,	or would speak.
<i>Ils parleraient,</i>	they should speak,	or would speak.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Parle,</i>	speak (thou).
<i>Parlons,</i>	let us speak.
<i>Parlez,</i>	speak (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je parle,</i>	that I may speak.
<i>Que tu parles,</i>	that thou mayst speak.
<i>Qu'il parle,</i>	that he may speak.
<i>Que nous parlions,</i>	that we may speak.
<i>Que vous parliez,</i>	that you may speak.
<i>Qu'ils parlent,</i>	that they may speak.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je parlasse,</i>	that I might speak.
<i>Que tu parlasses,</i>	that thou mightst speak.
<i>Qu'il parlât,</i>	that he might speak.
<i>Que nous parlussions,</i>	that we might speak.
<i>Que vous parlassiez,</i>	that you might speak.
<i>Qu'ils parlassent,</i>	that they might speak.

88. The verbs ending with **er** in the infinitive are the most numerous, and are all conjugated like *parler*, to speak.

89. The only exception to this rule is *aller*, to go, whose irregularities will be explained later.

The verbs of the first conjugation which have already been seen in the text, are :

<i>Animer</i> , to animate.	<i>Flâner</i> , to loiter.
<i>Appeler</i> , to call.	<i>Fréquenter</i> , to frequent.
<i>Appuyer</i> , to lean.	<i>Forcer</i> , to force.
<i>Arrêter</i> , to stop.	<i>Guider</i> , to guide.
<i>Cesser</i> , to cease.	<i>Oublier</i> , to forget.
<i>Corriger</i> , to correct.	<i>Passer</i> , to pass.
<i>Couler</i> , to flow.	<i>Penser</i> , to think.
<i>Demeurer</i> , to live, to dwell.	<i>Placer</i> , to place.
<i>Désirer</i> , to desire.	<i>Posséder</i> , to possess.
<i>Désoler</i> , to grieve.	<i>Prononcer</i> , to pronounce.
<i>Donner</i> , to give.	<i>Rapporter</i> , to bring back.
<i>Etudier</i> , to study.	<i>Regarder</i> , to look upon.
<i>Examiner</i> , to examine.	<i>Retirer</i> , to withdraw.
<i>Exercer</i> , to exercise.	<i>Retrousser</i> , to tuck up.

90. **Celui**, THIS, THAT, OR THE ONE, is the masculine of **celle**, seen in the fourth lesson. (46, 47.)

DEMEURAIT comes from *demeurer*, to live, to dwell; and APPELAIT from *appeler*, to call,—two verbs of the first conjugation.

Rêverie, revery.

91. The termination **ie** is common to substantives, about four hundred of which end in English in *y*, without any or scarcely any other difference of spelling; as, *Maladie*, malady; *anarchie*, anarchy; *astrologie*, astrology; *batterie*, battery; *broderie*, broidery, embroidery; *cavalerie*, cavalry; *coquetterie*, coquetry; *flatte*rie, flattery, etc.

Poétique, poetical.

92. The termination **ique** is found in a great number of words, some of which are substantives, but the greater part adjectives. Most of these words are nearly the same in both languages, and differ only by the termination, which in English is *ic* for the substantives, and *ic* or *ical* for the adjectives; as, *Musique*, music; *logique*, logic; *comique*, comic or comical; *tragique*, tragic or tragical; *historique*, historic or historical, etc.

Eau, water, is feminine by exception.

Longues, *douce*, and *molle*, are three adjectives which form their feminine irregularly. The masculine singular is *long*, long; *doux*, sweet; and *mou*, soft. *Longues* is the feminine plural, *molle* and *douce* the feminine singular.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. I give, 88. | 16. I should give. |
| 2. He gives. | 17. He should give. |
| 3. We give. | 18. We should give. |
| 4. You give. | 19. You should give. |
| 5. They give. | 20. They should give. |
| 6. I gave, 88. | 21. I have given, 32. |
| 7. He gave. | 22. He has given. |
| 8. We gave. | 23. We have given. |
| 9. You gave. | 24. You have given. |
| 10. They gave. | 25. They have given. |
| 11. I shall give. | 26. I had given. |
| 12. He shall give. | 27. Give. |
| 13. We shall give. | 28. Let us give. |
| 14. You shall give. | 29. Giving. |
| 15. They shall give. | 30. To give. |

31. On which bench is his father?—32. On that which is in the garden, 90.—33. This bridge is very long.—34. Is that water good? 36, 37.—35. The second division of our lesson is analytical, 92.—36. The Boulevards are his favorite walk, 39.—37. He has forgotten the day and the hour.—38. He was studying in the shop, 31, 84.—39. Examine this thing.—40. Stop that workman.—41. This flattery, 91.—42. This drapery, 91.—43. This music, 92.—44. That domestic, 92.—45. That republic, 92.

TENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Dixième leçon.

Tenth

La plupart des paresseux prétendent
 most part pretend

être poètes ou artistes ; beaucoup d'entre
 to be poets or artists many between

eux finissent même par se persuader
 them finish even to themselves to persuade

qu'ils le sont. Nous ne voulons pas dire
 they will to say

que tous les poètes soient des paresseux.
 be

Non vraiment, nous n'avons pas une
 No indeed

pareille pensée ! La justice veut que
 like thought justice wills

nous rendions hommage au génie réel.
 render homage genius real

* As it is desirable to limit the time to be spent in the review indicated in note * on page 7 to a quarter of an hour at the utmost, it would be perhaps well now, in addition to the modification already suggested in note * on page 26, to cease, by degrees, to rehearse the first lessons, the text of which, by this time, may be supposed to have been thoroughly mastered. This observation, however, is not intended to recommend a total neglect of them, but rather a systematical omission of a portion, in the following order, leaving out to begin with the first three, then the 2d, 3d, 4th, and so on.

** The exercises pointed out in note * on page 1 continue as important as ever, and should be faithfully attended to. The writing portion of them, though, could now be entirely prepared at home.

Aussi admirons-nous ce qu'il y a de
 admire there is
sublime et de touchant dans les pro-
 sublime touching pro-
ductions de l'art et de la poésie.
 ductions art poetry.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

Most idlers pretend that they are either poets or artists; and many of them persuade themselves in the end that they are so. We do not mean to say that all poets are idlers. No, indeed; we do not entertain such a thought. It is but just to pay homage to real genius; and we admire all that is sublime and affecting in the productions of art and poetry.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION *

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la dixième.
Quels sont les hommes qui prétendent être poètes ou artistes?	La plupart des paresseux.
Que prétendent la plupart des paresseux?	Ils prétendent être poètes ou artistes.
Sont-ils persuadés qu'ils sont poètes ou artistes?	Beaucoup d'entre eux finissent par se persuader qu'ils le sont.
Qu'est-ce que nous ne voulons pas dire?	Que tous les poètes soient des paresseux.
Pensez-vous que tous les poètes soient des paresseux?	Non vraiment, nous n'avons pas une pareille pensée!
A quoi rendons-nous hommage?	Au génie réel.
Pourquoi lui rendons-nous hommage?	Parce que la justice le veut.
Que rendons-nous au génie réel?	Nous lui rendons hommage.
Dans quelles productions y a-t-il quelque chose de sublime et de touchant?	Dans les productions de l'art et de la poésie.

* See notes on page 2. For the sake of making the questions in French, without using any other words than those known to the student, the preceptor is identified with the author; and the sentiments of the latter are regarded as received axioms.

Qu'y a-t-il dans les productions
de l'art et de la poésie?
Qu'est-ce que nous admirons?

Il y a quelque chose de sublime
et de touchant.
Ce qu'il y a de sublime et de
touchant dans les productions
de l'art et de la poésie.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Que regardez-vous?
Nous regardons ce monument.

N'est-ce pas qu'il est admirable?
Sans doute. Mais il a des défauts.
L'avez-vous bien examiné?
Pourquoi cette question?
Parce que les premiers artistes
prétendent qu'il est sans défaut.
Ce n'est pas notre opinion.
Vous ne rendez pas justice au
génie.
Nous ne possédons pas beaucoup
de monuments pareils.
Nous ne savons que répondre.
Vous nous avez persuadés.
Vous répondez ironiquement.
Non Vraiment!
Où sont les enfants?
Ils sont dans le jardin.
Pourquoi ne les appelez-vous pas?
Parce qu'ils sont fort bien dans
le jardin.
C'est vrai.
Vous avez raison.
Voulez-vous entendre de la poésie?
Si vous le voulez bien.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

What are you looking at?
We are looking at that monument.

Is it not admirable?
Undoubtedly. But there are
some imperfections in it.
Have you examined it well?
Wherefore this question?
Because the first artists maintain
it is perfect.

It is not our opinion.
You do not do justice to genius.

We do not possess many monuments
like this.
We know not what to answer.
You have persuaded us.
You answer ironically.
No indeed!
Where are the children?
They are in the garden.
Why don't you call them?
Because they are very well in the
garden.
It is true.
You are right.
Do you wish to hear some poetry?

If you please.

* See note on page 8.

Quelle touchante description !
 Quelles belles pensées !
 Ce poète est sublime.
 C'est un homme de génie.

What an affecting description !
 What beautiful thoughts !
 This poet is sublime.
 He is a man of genius.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

DIXIÈME, tenth, comes from *dix*, ten.

Entre eux, between or among them.

93. We have already seen *ils*, *elles*, for *they*, and *les* for *them*. Speaking of persons, both THEY and THEM have to be translated by **eux** for the masculine, and by **elles** for the feminine, when used isolately ; i. e., chiefly after **c'est**, *it is*, and **que**, *as, than, only*, or any preposition except *to*, and even then if *to* is preceded by *c'est* or *que*.—Ex. *Aussi ambitieux qu'eux*, as ambitious as they ; *c'est à eux que je les donne*, it is to them I give them ; *sans eux*, without them.

FINISSENT is the third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of the verb *finir*, to finish.

MODEL OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Finir, to finish.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Finissant, finishing.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Finì, finished.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je finis</i> ,	I finish,	am finishing, or do finish.
<i>Tu finis</i> ,	thou finishest,	art finishing, or dost finish.
<i>Il finis</i> ,	he finishes,	is finishing, or does finish.
<i>Nous finissons</i> ,	we finish,	are finishing, or do finish.
<i>Vous finissez</i> ,	you finish,	are finishing, or do finish.
<i>Ils finissent</i> ,	they finish,	are finishing, or do finish.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je finissais,</i>	I finished,	or was finishing.
<i>Tu finissais,</i>	thou finishedst,	or wast finishing.
<i>Il finissait,</i>	he finished,	or was finishing.
<i>Nous finissions,</i>	we finished,	or were finishing.
<i>Vous finissiez,</i>	you finished,	or were finishing.
<i>Ils finissaient,</i>	they finished,	or were finishing.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je finis,</i>	I finished,	or did finish.
<i>Tu finis,</i>	thou finishedst,	or didst finish.
<i>Il finit,</i>	he finished,	or did finish.
<i>Nous finîmes,</i>	we finished,	or did finish.
<i>Vous finîtes,</i>	you finished,	or did finish.
<i>Ils finirent,</i>	they finished,	or did finish.

FUTURE.

<i>Je finirai,</i>	I shall finish,	or will finish.
<i>Tu finiras,</i>	thou shalt finish,	or wilt finish.
<i>Il finira,</i>	he shall finish,	or will finish.
<i>Nous finirons,</i>	we shall finish,	or will finish.
<i>Vous finirez,</i>	you shall finish,	or will finish.
<i>Ils finiront,</i>	they shall finish,	or will finish.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je finirais,</i>	I should finish,	or would finish.
<i>Tu finirais,</i>	thou shouldst finish,	or wouldst finish.
<i>Il finirait,</i>	he should finish,	or would finish.
<i>Nous finirions,</i>	we should finish,	or would finish.
<i>Vous finiriez,</i>	you should finish,	or would finish.
<i>Ils finiraient,</i>	they should finish,	or would finish.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Finis, finish (thou).
Finissons, let us finish.
Finissez, finish (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je finisse,</i>	that I may finish.
<i>Que tu finisses,</i>	that thou mayst finish.
<i>Qu'il finisse,</i>	that he may finish.
<i>Que nous finissions,</i>	that we may finish.
<i>Que vous finissiez,</i>	that you may finish.
<i>Qu'ils finissent,</i>	that they may finish.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je finisse,</i>	that I might finish.
<i>Que tu finisses,</i>	that thou mightst finish.
<i>Qu'il finît,</i>	that he might finish.
<i>Que nous finissions,</i>	that we might finish.
<i>Que vous finissiez,</i>	that you might finish.
<i>Qu'ils finissent,</i>	that they might finish.

94. The syllable **iss**, incorporated into the terminations of several tenses and persons, characterizes the conjugation of the verbs in **ir**, most of which are conjugated like *finir*, to finish.

The regular verbs of the second conjugation which have occurred in the text, are : *Affranchir*, to free ; *assoupir*, to drowse ; *finir*, to finish ; and *réunir*, to collect. The irregular ones are : *Assaillir*, to assail ; *avoir*, to have ; *obtenir*, to obtain ; *pouvoir*, to be able ; *recevoir*, to receive ; *savoir*, to know ; *voir*, to see ; and *vouloir*, to wish. *Avoir* has already been seen ; the others will be explained later.

MÊME, seen in the fourth lesson as an adjective, is an adverb in this, and signifies *even*.

Ils finissent par se persuader qu'ils le sont (i. e., *qu'ils sont poètes ou artistes*).

95. The pronoun **le** may represent either *a substantive*, or *an adjective*, or *a verb*, or *a preposition*. In the first case only it is variable, and takes the gender and number of the substantive which it represents : it then becomes **la** in the feminine and **les** in the plural of both genders. In the other cases, and

particularly when it represents an adjective, or even a substantive used adjectively, as *poètes* and *artistes* in the above example, it is invariable.

Nous ne voulons pas dire qu'ils soient,

we do not wish to say that they are—literally, we do not wish to say that they may be.

96. Certain tenses are sometimes used in French contrary to English usage, as, when a verb is subjoined to a negative or an interrogative proposition, the subjunctive mood is generally required, unless this subjoined verb expresses a positive, incontestable fact. Thus: "*Nous ne voulons pas dire qu'ils soient paresseux,*" signifies, *We do not mean to say that they are idle* (they may be so or not); and "*Nous ne voulons pas dire qu'ils sont paresseux,*" implies that *We know they ARE idle*, but *we will not say that they are so*.

PAREILLE is the feminine form of *pareil*, similar, like.

Réel, real.

97. There are about ninety adjectives ending in **el** in French and in **al** in English, with scarcely any other difference than the change of *a* into *e*; as, *Réel*, real; *accidentel*, accidental; *annuel*, annual; *continuel*, continual; *éternel*, eternal; *ponctuel*, punctual; *additionnel*, additional; *conditionnel*, conditional, etc.

Aussi admirons-nous, also we admire—literally, do we admire?

98. The interrogative form may be used instead of the affirmative after the words *aussi*, also; *peut-être*, perhaps; *encore*, yet, still; *toujours*, always; *en vain*, in vain; *du moins* or *au moins*, at least; and *à peine*, scarcely, or hardly.

Ce qu'il y a, what there is.

99. **Ce qui** and **ce que** generally mean **WHAT**, in the sense of *that which*, or *the thing which*. **Ce qui** is for the nominative case, and **ce que** for the objective.

100. **Il y a** is the present tense of the indicative mood of the impersonal verb **y avoir**, there to be. *Il y a* signifies there is, or there are; *il y avait*, there was, or there were.

Throughout the whole conjugation, the verb *avoir* is used instead of the verb *être*, and is preceded by *il y*. In interrogations, *y* remains before the verb, and *il* is placed after it; as, *Y a-t-il?* is there, or are there? *y avait-il?* was there, or were there?

Hommage, homage, and *génie*, genius, are masculine, and *plupart*, greater part, is feminine by exception.

Admirer, to admire; *persuader*, to persuade; *toucher*, to touch, are regular verbs of the first conjugation.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. I collect, 94. | 16. I should collect, 94. |
| 2. He collects. | 17. He should collect. |
| 3. We collect. | 18. We should collect. |
| 4. You collect. | 19. You should collect. |
| 5. They collect. | 20. They should collect. |
| 6. I collected. | 21. I have collected. |
| 7. He collected. | 22. He has collected. |
| 8. We collected. | 23. We have collected. |
| 9. You collected. | 24. You have collected. |
| 10. They collected. | 25. They have collected. |
| 11. I shall collect. | 26. I had collected. |
| 12. He shall collect. | 27. Collect. |
| 13. We shall collect. | 28. Let us collect. |
| 14. You shall collect. | 29. Collecting. |
| 15. They shall collect. | 30. To collect. |

31. We do not study much.—32. Is there a bridge at the end of the street? 100.—33. Are there any workmen in the garden? 100.—34. There are some poets without genius, 100.—35. There was some water in the shop, 100.—36. There is a plane on the joiner's bench, 100.—37. He has but one son, 5.—38. We do not think that these shops are large enough.—39. Have you heard what he has said? 99.—40. I have heard it, 95.—41. Where are my sleeves?—42. You have them.—43. You have them not.—44. They are on the bench.

ELEVENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Onzième leçon.

Eleventh

Seulement	nous	avons	remarqué	que
Only		have	remarked	
bien des	gens	s'imaginent	avoir	le feu
many	people	imagine	to have	fire
sacré, et	sentir	“du	ciel	l'influence
sacred	to feel		heaven	influence
secrète,”	pour peu qu’	ils aient	barbouillé	
secret	if ever so little	have	daubed	
quelques	feuilles	de	papier	et qu’ils
	sheets		paper	
aiment à se promener	les bras	croisés		
love	walk about	arms	crossed (folded)	
et le nez	tourné	vers	les cieux.	Ces
nose	turned	towards	heavens (skies)	
insignifiants	personnages,	| bien qu’ |	ils	
insignificant	personages	though		
croupissent	dans l’inaction	et qu’ils ne		
wallow	inaction			
rendent	aucun service	à la société,		
render	no (not any) service	society		
regardent	les travailleurs	comme infini-		
look upon	laborers	infinite-		
ment |	au-dessous d’ |	eux.		
ly	below			

* See 1st note on page 59.

** See 2d note on page 59.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

But we have observed that many people imagine they possess the sacred fire, and fancy they feel the secret influence of heaven, because they have scribbled over a few sheets of paper, and are fond of walking about with their arms folded and with their noses turned up towards the skies. These insignificant people, though they give way to idleness and do no service to society, look upon pains-taking men as far below them.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION *

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la onzième.
Qui est-ce qui s'imagine avoir le feu sacré?	Bien des gens.
Qu'est-ce que bien des gens s'imaginent avoir?	Le feu sacré.
Qu'est-ce que bien des gens s'imaginent sentir?	Du ciel l'influence secrète.
Qu'est-ce que ces gens barbouillent?	Quelques feuilles de papier.
En quelle occasion ces gens s'imaginent-ils avoir le feu sacré?	Pour peu qu'ils aient barbouillé quelques feuilles de papier.
Que tournent-ils vers les cieux?	Le nez.
Vers quoi tournent-ils le nez?	Vers les cieux.
Qu'aiment-ils à faire, les bras croisés et le nez tourné vers les cieux?	Ils aiment à se promener.
Comment aiment-ils à se promener?	Les bras croisés et le nez tourné vers les cieux.
Ces personnages sont-ils utiles?	Ils sont insignifiants.
Dans quoi croupissent-ils?	Dans l'inaction.
Quels sont les hommes qui croupissent dans l'inaction?	Ces insignifiants personnages.
A qui ne rendent-ils aucun service?	A la société.
Qui regardent-ils comme infiniment au-dessous d'eux?	Les travailleurs.
Comment regardent-ils les travailleurs?	Comme infiniment au-dessous d'eux.

* See notes on page 2.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Il y a une citation dans cette leçon.

Sentir du ciel l'influence secrète est une inversion poétique.

C'est une expression de Boileau.

Boileau est un poète français.

C'est un bon poète.

C'est un des meilleurs poètes français.

Son *Art poétique* est excellent.

Mais ce poète n'est pas un génie sublime.

Il n'est pas même touchant.

Qu'est-il donc ?

Il est surtout satirique.

Il y a de basses flatteries dans quelques-unes de ses compositions.

C'est indigne d'un homme de génie.

Aimez-vous la poésie ?

Beaucoup.

Nous avons étudié les meilleurs poètes.

Nous avons même barbouillé quelques feuilles de papier.

Aimez-vous à vous promener les bras croisés ?

Quelquefois.

Où vous promenez-vous ?

Dans notre jardin.

Nous y passons trois ou quatre heures tous les jours.

Voulez-vous suivre notre exemple ?

Pas pour cette fois.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

There is a citation (quotation) in this lesson.

To feel of heaven the secret influence is a poetical inversion.

It is an expression of Boileau's.

Boileau is a French poet.

He is a good poet.

He is one of the best French poets.

His "Art of Poetry" is excellent.

But this poet is not a sublime genius.

He is not even affecting.

What is he then ?

He is principally satirical.

There is base flattery in some of his compositions.

It is unworthy of a man of genius.

Are you fond of poetry ?

Very.

We have studied the best poets.

We have even scribbled over some sheets of paper.

Are you fond of walking about with your arms folded ?

Sometimes.

Where do you walk ?

In our garden.

We pass three or four hours there every day.

Will you follow our example ?

Not for this time.

* See note on page 3.

Un autre jour, si vous le voulez bien.	Another day, if you please.
Nous ne pouvons pas demeurer plus longtemps.	We cannot remain longer.
Quelle heure est-il donc?	What o'clock is it then?
Il est onze heures.	It is eleven o'clock.
Adieu.	Farewell.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ONZIÈME, eleventh, comes from *onze*, eleven.

Bien *des gens*, many people.

101. BIEN, seen in the fifth lesson in the sense of *well*, becomes a synonym of *beaucoup*, when it is combined with the compound article *du*, *de la*, *des*, and corresponds to *much* and *many*; as, *Bien du temps*, much time; *bien de l'influence*, much influence; *bien des artistes*, many artists; *bien des gens*, many people.

GENS, which signifies *people*, *folks*, or *persons*, is masculine, and is used only in the plural.

POUR PEU QUE is a gallicism which corresponds to the English expressions, *ever so little*, or, *at all*; as, "*Pour peu qu'ils regardent*, If they look ever so little;" or, "If they look at all." This conjunctive form is always followed by the subjunctive mood.

CIEUX is the plural of *ciel*, heaven, one of the few words which form their plural irregularly in French.

BIEN QUE is a conjunction corresponding to *though* or *although*. It is followed by the subjunctive mood.

RENDENT is the third person plural of the indicative mood, present tense, of the verb *rendre*, to render, or give back.

MODEL OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Rendre, to give back.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Rendant, giving back.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Rendu, given back.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je rends,</i>	I give back,	am giving back, or do give back.
<i>Tu rends,</i>	thou givest back,	art giving back, or dost give back.
<i>Il rend,</i>	he gives back,	is giving back, or does give back.
<i>Nous rendons,</i>	we give back,	are giving back, or do give back.
<i>Vous rendez,</i>	you give back,	are giving back, or do give back.
<i>Ils rendent,</i>	they give back,	are giving back, or do give back.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je rendais,</i>	I gave back,	or was giving back.
<i>Tu rendais,</i>	thou gavest back,	or wast giving back.
<i>Il rendait,</i>	he gave back,	or was giving back.
<i>Nous rendions,</i>	we gave back,	or were giving back.
<i>Vous rendiez,</i>	you gave back,	or were giving back.
<i>Ils rendaient,</i>	they gave back,	or were giving back.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je rendis,</i>	I gave back,	or did give back.
<i>Tu rendis,</i>	thou gavest back,	or didst give back.
<i>Il rendit,</i>	he gave back,	or did give back.
<i>Nous rendîmes,</i>	we gave back,	or did give back.
<i>Vous rendîtes,</i>	you gave back,	or did give back.
<i>Ils rendirent,</i>	they gave back,	or did give back.

FUTURE.

<i>Je rendrai,</i>	I shall give back,	or will give back.
<i>Tu rendras,</i>	thou shalt give back,	or wilt give back.
<i>Il rendra,</i>	he shall give back,	or will give back.
<i>Nous rendrons,</i>	we shall give back,	or will give back.
<i>Vous rendrez,</i>	you shall give back,	or will give back.
<i>Ils rendront,</i>	they shall give back,	or will give back.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je rendrais,</i>	I should give back,	or would give back.
<i>Tu rendrais,</i>	thou shouldst give back,	or wouldst give back.
<i>Il rendrait,</i>	he should give back,	or would give back.
<i>Nous rendrions,</i>	we should give back,	or would give back.
<i>Vous rendriez,</i>	you should give back,	or would give back.
<i>Ils rendraient,</i>	they should give back,	or would give back.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Rends,</i>	give (thou) back.
<i>Rendons,</i>	let us give back.
<i>Rendez,</i>	give (you) back.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je rende,</i>	that I may give back.
<i>Que tu rendes,</i>	that thou mayst give back.
<i>Qu'il rende,</i>	that he may give back.
<i>Que nous rendions,</i>	that we may give back.
<i>Que vous rendiez,</i>	that you may give back.
<i>Qu'ils rendent,</i>	that they may give back.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je rendisse,</i>	that I might give back.
<i>Que tu rendisses,</i>	that thou mightst give back.
<i>Qu'il rendît,</i>	that he might give back.
<i>Que nous rendissions,</i>	that we might give back.
<i>Que vous rendissiez,</i>	that you might give back.
<i>Qu'ils rendissent,</i>	that they might give back.

102. The verbs in **re** have some of their tenses formed like those in *er*, and some like those in *ir*. Most of them are conjugated like *rendre*, to give back.

The regular verbs of the third conjugation which have occurred in the text are: *Entendre*, to hear; *étendre*, to stretch; *prétendre*, to pretend; *rendre*, to give back; *répondre*, to re-

spond or answer; and *suspendre*, to suspend. The irregular ones are: *Dire*, to say; *être*, to be; *faire*, to do or to make; and *suivre*, to follow. *Etre*, to be, has already been seen; the others will be explained later.

103. We have now completed the study of the regular verbs. Those ending with **er** are conjugated like *parler*, those ending with **ir** like *finir*, and those ending with **re** like *rendre*.

104. The irregular verbs, though numerous, are for the most part only derivatives or compounds of about forty radical ones. One of these will be taken up at each successive lesson until all of them shall have been introduced, and then any irregular word will readily be properly conjugated, if we remember that *découdre*, to unsew, *recoudre*, to sew again, resemble *coudre*, to sew; *entreprendre*, to undertake, *reprandre*, to retake, resemble *prendre*, to take; etc.

105. **AUCUN**, any one, means *no*, *none*, or *not one*, when *ne* is put before the verb. It is seldom used in the plural: its feminine is *aucune*.

SOCIÉTÉ, society, is of the feminine gender.

106. Substantives ending in **té** are very numerous in French; most of them have their correspondents in English in *ty*; as, *Société*, society; *liberté*, liberty; *nécessité*, necessity. They are feminine. The exceptions are: *Aparté*, words spoken aside; *arrêté*, resolution; *comité*, committee; *comté*, county; *côté*, side; *député*, deputy; *été*, summer; *pâté*, pie; *précipité*, precipitate; and *traité*, treaty,—which are masculine.

Personnage, personage, and *service*, service, are masculine by exception.

Secrète is the feminine of *secret*, secret, one of the few adjectives which form their feminine irregularly.

Aimer, to love or to like; *barbouiller*, to daub; *croiser*, to cross; *imaginer*, to imagine; *promener*, to promenade; *remarquer*, to remark; and *tourner*, to turn, are regular verbs of the first conjugation. *Croupir*, to wallow, and *sentir*, to smell or to feel, are of the second; but *sentir* is irregular, and will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. I hear, 102. | 16. I should hear. |
| 2. He hears. | 17. He should hear. |
| 3. We hear. | 18. We should hear |
| 4. You hear. | 19. You should hear. |
| 5. They hear. | 20. They should hear |
| 6. I heard. | 21. I have heard. |
| 7. He heard. | 22. He has heard. |
| 8. We heard. | 23. We have heard. |
| 9. You heard. | 24. You have heard. |
| 10. They heard. | 25. They have heard. |
| 11. I shall hear. | 26. I had heard. |
| 12. He shall hear. | 27. Hear. |
| 13. We shall hear. | 28. Let us hear. |
| 14. You shall hear. | 29. Hearing. |
| 15. They shall hear. | 30. To hear. |

31. Do you know all the lessons from the first to the eleventh?—32. I have studied them.—33. Those children love their father and their mother.—34. His sons study their lessons.—35. Where is the difficulty?—36. The joiner's shop is at the end of the street.—37. They do not answer, though they hear the question.—38. They are not lazy, though they free themselves from all restraint.—39. Have you the joiner's plane? 40. I have given it back.—41. Where is your paper?—42. You know where it is.—43. No man,* 105.—44. No liberty, 105, 106.—45. No necessity, 105, 106.

* NE is suppressed when there is no verb in the sentence. This observation applies to all the words which require this negative.

Ex. No man, *aucun homme*; no bread, *pas de pain*.

TWELFTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION

Douzième leçon.

Twelfth

Plusieurs des compagnons d'Alexis,
 Several companions

ayant le même caractère que lui, contri-
 having same character as contrib-
buient à l'entretenir dans ces dispo-
 uted keep dispo-

sitions oisives. “Nous serions bien fous,”
 sitions idle should be very foolish

disaient-ils, “de bâiller sur des gram-
 said to yawn gram-

maires et des dictionnaires, comme nous
 mars dictionaries

le faisons à l'école, où nous périssions
 did school were perishing

d'ennui, noircissant nos cahiers de mots
 ennui blackening our copy-books words

que nous n'entendions guère, et attendant
 understood but little waiting

impatiemment l'heure de la récréation.”
 impatiently recreation.

* See 1st note on page 59.

** See 2d note on page 59.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

Several of the companions of Alexis, having the same character as himself, contributed to maintain him in this idle disposition. "We should be very foolish," said they, "to be yawning over grammars and dictionaries, as we used to do at school, where we were ready to die with ennui; blotting our copy-books with words that we scarcely understood, and waiting impatiently for the hour of play."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la douzième.
Qui est-ce qui avait le même caractère qu'Alexis?	Plusieurs de ses compagnons.
Quel caractère avaient plusieurs de ses compagnons?	Le même caractère que lui.
A quoi contribuaient-ils?	A l'entretenir dans ces dispositions oisives.
Qui est-ce qui disait: "Nous serions bien fous de bâiller sur des grammaires et des dictionnaires?"	Les compagnons d'Alexis;—or, Plusieurs compagnons d'Alexis.
Sur quoi seraient-ils fous de bâiller?	Sur des grammaires et des dictionnaires.
Où bâillaient-ils sur des grammaires et des dictionnaires?	A l'école.
De quoi périssaient-ils à l'école?	Ils périssaient d'ennui.
Qu'est-ce qu'ils noircissaient?	Leurs cahiers.
De quoi noircissaient-ils leurs cahiers?	De mots qu'ils n'entendaient guère.
Qu'est-ce qu'ils attendaient impatiemment?	L'heure de la récréation.
Comment attendaient-ils l'heure de la récréation?	Impatiemment.

* See notes on page 2.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Où sont nos compagnons?
 Ils sont à l'école.
 Comment passent-ils leur temps?
 Ils étudient le grec et le latin.
 Ils noircissent leurs cahiers de
 mots qu'ils n'entendent guère.

Aiment-ils cette occupation?
 Ils périssent d'ennui.
 Ils sont toujours à bâiller.
 Pauvres jeunes gens!
 Ils sont bien tristes.
 Ils n'aiment pas la grammaire,
 bien qu'ils ne soient pas pares-
 seux.

Quand ils étaient chez eux, ils
 n'étaient jamais oisifs.
 On les voyait toujours faire quel-
 que chose.

Vous savez qu'ils sont fort intel-
 ligents.

Pourquoi donc ne sont-ils plus de
 même?

Il y a pour cela plusieurs raisons.
 La première, c'est qu'ils n'étaient
 pas forcés de travailler.

Ils étaient seulement guidés par
 leur père, qui était bien bon
 pour eux.

Ils étudiaient des choses moins
 sérieuses que la grammaire.

Vous avez bien de l'aversion pour
 la grammaire.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

Where are our companions?
 They are at school.
 How do they spend their time?
 They study Greek and Latin.
 They blacken their copy-books
 with words that they under-
 stand but little.
 Do they like this occupation?
 They are dying with ennui.
 They are always yawning.
 Poor young people!
 They are very sad.
 They do not like grammar, though
 they are not lazy.

When they were at home, they
 were never idle.
 They were always seen doing
 something.

You know they are very intelli-
 gent.

Why then are they no longer the
 same?

There are several reasons for it.
 The first is, they were not com-
 pelled to work.

They were only guided by their
 father, who was very kind to
 them.

They studied things less serious
 than grammar.

You have a strong aversion to
 grammar.

* See note on page 3.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

DOUZIÈME, twelfth, comes from *douze*, twelve.

Plusieurs *des compagnons*, several of the companions.

107. **Plusieurs** is an adjective, invariable, plural, and of both genders. It corresponds to *several*, *some*, *many*, and is sometimes used as an indefinite pronoun, thus: "*Plusieurs pensent*, some think, several (persons) think."

COMPAGNON is always of the masculine gender, the French of a female companion being *compagne*.

Comme nous le faisons à l'école, as we did at school.

108. It has been seen (95) that the pronoun **LE** may represent either a *substantive*, an *adjective*, a *verb*, or a *preposition*. This pronoun must be used, whether it has an equivalent in the English construction or not. A few phrases, containing the pronoun with its antecedent, will elucidate the rule:

C'est un proverbe, vous LE savez.	It is a proverb, you know (THAT IT IS A PROVERB).
Il est plus ambitieux que vous ne LE pensez.	He is more ambitious than you think (HE IS).
Est-il ambitieux?—Il L' est.	Is he ambitious?—He is (AMBITIOUS).
Est-il ouvrier?—Il L' est.	Is he a workman?—He is (A WORKMAN).
Pouvons-nous le voir?—Nous LE pouvons.	Can we see him?—We can (SEE HIM).
Voulez-vous étudier?—Nous LE voulons.	Will you study?—We will (STUDY).

FAISONS is the first person plural of the imperfect tense of *faire*, to do, to make, one of the most important irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Faire**, TO MAKE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Faire, to do, or to make.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Faisant, making.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Fait, made.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je fais,</i>	I make,	am making, or do make.
<i>Tu fais,</i>	thou makest,	art making, or dost make.
<i>Il fait,</i>	he makes,	is making, or does make.
<i>Nous faisons,</i>	we make,	are making, or do make.
<i>Vous faites,</i>	you make,	are making, or do make.
<i>Ils font,</i>	they make,	are making, or do make.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je faisais,</i>	I made,	or was making.
<i>Tu faisais,</i>	thou madest,	or wast making.
<i>Il faisait,</i>	he made,	or was making.
<i>Nous faisions,</i>	we made,	or were making.
<i>Vous faisiez,</i>	you made,	or were making.
<i>Ils faisaient,</i>	they made,	or were making.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je fis,</i>	I made,	or did make.
<i>Tu fis,</i>	thou madest,	or didst make.
<i>Il fit,</i>	he made,	or did make.
<i>Nous fîmes,</i>	we made,	or did make.
<i>Vous fîtes,</i>	you made,	or did make.
<i>Ils firent,</i>	they made,	or did make.

FUTURE.

<i>Je ferai,</i>	I shall make,	or will make.
<i>Tu feras,</i>	thou shalt make,	or wilt make.
<i>Il fera,</i>	he shall make,	or will make.
<i>Nous ferons,</i>	we shall make,	or will make.
<i>Vous ferez,</i>	you shall make,	or will make.
<i>Ils feront,</i>	they shall make,	or will make.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je ferais,</i>	I should make,	or would make.
<i>Tu ferais,</i>	thou shouldst make,	or wouldst make.
<i>Il ferait,</i>	he should make,	or would make.
<i>Nous ferions,</i>	we should make,	or would make.
<i>Vous feriez,</i>	you should make,	or would make.
<i>Ils feraient,</i>	they should make,	or would make.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Fais,</i>	make (thou).
<i>Faisons,</i>	let us make.
<i>Faites,</i>	make (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je fasse,</i>	that I may make.
<i>Que tu fasses,</i>	that thou mayst make.
<i>Qu'il fasse,</i>	that he may make.
<i>Que nous fassions,</i>	that we may make.
<i>Que vous fassiez,</i>	that you may make.
<i>Qu'ils fassent,</i>	that they may make.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je fisse,</i>	that I might make.
<i>Que tu fisses,</i>	that thou mightst make.
<i>Qu'il fit,</i>	that he might make.
<i>Que nous fissions,</i>	that we might make.
<i>Que vous fissiez,</i>	that you might make.
<i>Qu'ils fissent,</i>	that they might make.

109. Thus are conjugated *contrefaire*, to counterfeit; *défaire*, to undo; *refaire*, to make again; *satisfaire*, to satisfy; *surfaire*, to overcharge, etc.

Nous périssions d'ennui.—*Noircissant nos cahiers de mots.*

In these examples *de* corresponds to the English preposition **WITH.**

In the first of them, *ennui* is the cause of that state expressed by the verb *nous périssions*.

In the second, *mots* designates the things used to blacken the copy-books with.

110. Between a verb and a substantive denoting the *cause* of the state or action which this verb expresses, or *the thing made use of* to attain to it, the preposition WITH is very often rendered in French by **de**. The article is not employed between *de* and the substantive that follows, unless the sense of the substantive be modified by some restrictive clause.

IMPATIENTMENT is derived from *impatient*, impatient.

111. It has been seen (13) that adverbs of quality are derived from adjectives, by adding the termination **ment**. This termination is added to the feminine form, unless the adjective ends with a vowel, as *vrai*, true, in which case *ment* is added to the masculine, as *vraiment*, truly. When the adjective ends in **ent**, the adverb is formed by changing this termination into **emment**; and when the adjective ends in **ant**, the adverb is formed by changing this termination into **amment**. In *emment*, the first *e* has the sound of *a*; so that both these terminations, *emment* and *amment*, are pronounced exactly alike.

The exceptions to the foregoing rule are: *Lentement*, slowly, from *lent*, *lente*, slow; *présentement*, at present, now, from *présent*, *présente*, present; and *véhétement*, vehemently, from *véhément*, *véhémente*, vehement.

This completes the study of the formation of adverbs of quality in French.

RÉCRÉATION is derived from the verb *créer*, to create.

112. Verbs may be formed from almost all the substantives ending in **ation**, by changing this termination into **er**; as, *Création*, *créer*, to create; *accusation*, *accuser*, to accuse; *agitation*, *agiter*, to agitate; *augmentation*, *augmenter*, to augment; *circulation*, *circuler*, to circulate; *compensation*, *compenser*, to compensate; *consolation*, *consoler*, to console; *continuation*, *continuer*, to continue; *décoration*, *décorer*, to decorate; *préparation*, *préparer*, to prepare, etc.

Caractère, character, and *dictionnaire*, dictionary, are masculine by exception.

Fous is the plural masculine of *fou*, *folle*, foolish, one of the few adjectives which form their feminine irregularly.

Bâiller, to yawn, and *contribuer*, to contribute, are regular verbs of the first conjugation. *Entretenir*, to entertain; *noircir*, to blacken; and *périr*, to perish, are of the second; but *entretenir* is irregular, and will be explained later. *Attendre*, to wait, is of the third conjugation.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. I undo, 109. | 16. I yawn, 88. |
| 2. He undoes. | 17. He yawns. |
| 3. We undo. | 18. We yawn. |
| 4. You undo. | 19. You yawn. |
| 5. They undo. | 20. They yawn. |
| 6. I have undone. | 21. I perish, 94. |
| 7. He has undone. | 22. He perishes. |
| 8. We have undone. | 23. We perish. |
| 9. You have undone. | 24. You perish. |
| 10. They have undone. | 25. They perish. |
| 11. I shall undo. | 26. I wait, 102. |
| 12. He shall undo. | 27. He waits. |
| 13. We shall undo. | 28. We wait. |
| 14. You shall undo. | 29. You wait. |
| 15. They shall undo. | 30. They wait. |

31. That boy has studied several lessons, 107.—32. Several of these grammars are good, 107.—33. Our father's conversation is instructive, 20.—34. She was sad and pensive.—35. We were finishing our lesson, 31.—36. Where are our copy-books? —37. They are with our grammars.—38. He does not loiter as he did, 108.—39. The workmen's sleeves were smeared with black, 110.—40. His teacher is satisfied, 109.—41. To prepare, 112.—42. To accuse, 112.—43. To continue, 112.—44. Actively, 111.—45. Usefully, 111.—46. Ambitiously, 111.

THIRTEENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

· LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Treizième leçon.

Thirteenth

“ Nos maîtres voulaient que nous
 masters willed
 eussions du goût pour l'étude; ils vou-
 had (*subj.*) study
 laient que nous en sentissions les
 of it felt (*subj.*)
 avantages et que nous y trouvassions du
 advantages to it found (*subj.*)
 plaisir; mais ils ne savaient pas la rendre
 pleasure knew to render
 attrayante. Ils s'étonnaient que nous
 attractive wondered
 répondissions mal à de sèches questions
 answered (*subj.*) badly dry questions
 auxquelles nous ne comprenions rien
 to which understood nothing
 | du tout. | Ils exigeaient que nous
 at all demanded
 fussions attentifs, et ils ne nous parlaient
 were (*subj.*) attentive to us spoke
 que de choses ennuyeuses.”
 but tedious

* See 1st note on page 59.

** See 2d note on page 59.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"Our masters wished us to have a taste for study ; they wanted us to feel its advantages and to find pleasure in it ; but they did not know how to render it attractive. They wondered at our making wrong answers to dry questions that we did not understand at all. They insisted on our being attentive, though they spoke to us only on tedious subjects."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la treizième.
Pour quoi les compagnons d'Alexis n'avaient-ils pas de goût ?	Pour l'étude.
Qui est-ce qui n'avait pas de goût pour l'étude ?	Les compagnons d'Alexis.
Qui est-ce qui voulait forcer ces jeunes gens à avoir du goût pour l'étude ?	Leurs maîtres.
Que voulaient-ils faire sentir à ces jeunes gens ?	Les avantages de l'étude.
A quoi ces jeunes gens ne trouvaient-ils pas de plaisir ?	A l'étude.
Que trouve-t-on dans l'étude, quand elle est attrayante ?	Du plaisir.
Qu'est-ce que les maîtres de ces jeunes gens ne savaient pas faire ?	Ils ne savaient pas rendre l'étude attrayante.
Comment les compagnons d'Alexis répondait-ils aux questions de leurs maîtres ?	Mal.
Comment étaient ces questions ?	Sèches.
Les comprenaient-ils ?	Ils n'y comprenaient rien du tout.
A quoi répondaient-ils mal ?	A de sèches questions auxquelles ils ne comprenaient rien du tout.
De quelles choses leurs maîtres parlaient-ils ?	De choses ennuyeuses.
Pourquoi ces jeunes gens n'étaient-ils pas attentifs ?	Parce que leurs maîtres ne parlaient que de choses ennuyeuses.

* See notes on page 2.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Quelle heure est-il?
 Il est quatre heures.
 Il est temps de suspendre notre étude.
 Voulez-vous faire une promenade?
 Avec plaisir.
 Aimez-vous la promenade?
 Beaucoup.
 Vous voyez bien cette maison?
 C'est celle de notre maître d'école.
 Nous y avons passé bien des heures ennuyeuses.
 C'était un bien brave homme que notre maître.
 Mais il ne savait pas rendre l'étude attrayante.
 Il voulait que nous eussions toujours la grammaire à la main.
 Rien n'est ennuyeux comme la grammaire.
 C'est que vous n'avez pas le goût de l'étude.
 Ne croyez pas cela.
 Nous aimons tous l'étude, quand elle est attrayante.
 Mais nous ne pouvons pas l'aimer, quand elle est sèche et ennuyeuse.
 Trouvez-vous du plaisir à étudier la langue française?
 Quelquefois, quand la leçon n'est pas longue.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

What o'clock is it?
 It is four o'clock.
 It is time to suspend our study.
 Will you take a walk?
 With pleasure.
 Are you fond of walking?
 Very.
 You see that house? It is our schoolmaster's.
 We have spent many tedious hours there.
 Our master was a very worthy man.
 But he did not know how to make study attractive.
 He wanted us always to have our grammar in our hands.
 Nothing is so tedious as grammar.
 It is because you have no taste for study.
 Do not believe that.
 We all like study, when it is attractive.
 But we cannot like it, when it is dry and tedious.
 Do you find any pleasure in studying the French language?
 Sometimes, when the lesson is not long.

* See note on page 3.

Comprenez-vous toutes les questions qu'on vous fait en français ?

Presque toutes, quand on parle doucement.

Do you understand all the questions which are put to you in French ?

Almost all of them, when they are pronounced slowly.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

TREIZIÈME, thirteenth, comes from *treize*, thirteen.

VOULAIENT is the third person plural of the imperfect of *vouloir*, to wish or to will, one of the most necessary irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Vouloir**, TO WISH.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Vouloir, to wish, or to will.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Voulant, wishing.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Voulu, wished.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je veux,</i>	I wish,	am wishing, or do wish.
<i>Tu veux,</i>	thou wishest,	art wishing, or dost wish.
<i>Il veut,</i>	he wishes,	is wishing, or does wish.
<i>Nous voulons,</i>	we wish,	are wishing, or do wish.
<i>Vous voulez,</i>	you wish,	are wishing, or do wish.
<i>Ils veulent,</i>	they wish,	are wishing, or do wish.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je voulais,</i>	I wished,	or was wishing.
<i>Tu voulais,</i>	thou wishedst,	or wast wishing.
<i>Il voulait,</i>	he wished,	or was wishing.
<i>Nous voulions,</i>	we wished,	or were wishing.
<i>Vous vouliez,</i>	you wished,	or were wishing.
<i>Ils voulaient,</i>	they wished,	or were wishing.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je voulus,</i>	I wished,	or did wish.
<i>Tu voulus,</i>	thou wishedst,	or didst wish.
<i>Il voulut,</i>	he wished,	or did wish.
<i>Nous voulûmes,</i>	we wished,	or did wish.
<i>Vous voulûtes,</i>	you wished,	or did wish.
<i>Ils voulurent,</i>	they wished,	or did wish.

FUTURE.

<i>Je voudrai,</i>	I shall wish,	or will wish.
<i>Tu voudras,</i>	thou shalt wish,	or wilt wish.
<i>Il voudra,</i>	he shall wish,	or will wish.
<i>Nous voudrons,</i>	we shall wish,	or will wish.
<i>Vous voudrez,</i>	you shall wish,	or will wish.
<i>Ils voudront,</i>	they shall wish,	or will wish.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je voudrais,</i>	I should wish,	or would wish.
<i>Tu voudrais,</i>	thou shouldst wish,	or wouldst wish.
<i>Il voudrait,</i>	he should wish,	or would wish.
<i>Nous voudrions,</i>	we should wish,	or would wish.
<i>Vous voudriez,</i>	you should wish,	or would wish.
<i>Ils voudraient,</i>	they should wish,	or would wish.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

This verb is not used in this tense, except in sentences like the following : *Veillez faire cela*, Be so kind, or be so good, as to do that.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je veuille,</i>	that I may wish.
<i>Que tu veilles,</i>	that thou mayst wish.
<i>Qu'il veuille,</i>	that he may wish.
<i>Que nous voulions,</i>	that we may wish.
<i>Que vous vouliez,</i>	that you may wish.
<i>Qu'ils veuillent,</i>	that they may wish.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je voulusse,</i>	that I might wish.
<i>Que tu voulusses,</i>	that thou mightst wish.
<i>Qu'il voulût,</i>	that he might wish.
<i>Que nous voulussions,</i>	that we might wish.
<i>Que vous voulussiez,</i>	that you might wish.
<i>Qu'ils voulussent,</i>	that they might wish.

Que nous en sentissions les avantages,
that we should feel the advantages of it.

113. Few words are used as frequently as **en** in French. An invariable pronoun of both genders and numbers, and applied in turn to persons and things, it means sometimes *of him* or *of her*, but most often, *of it*, *of them*, *with it*, *with them*, *some* or *any*, and even occasionally, *thence*.

114. The most striking feature of **en** is, that it has to be introduced in French whenever the object spoken of is not mentioned and not represented by another pronoun. In the answer to "Have you any fire?" therefore, both I HAVE and I HAVE SOME will be rendered by **J'en ai**, because the word *fire* is not expressed.

115. **En** is, moreover, always followed immediately by the verb, except in Imperative affirmative sentences, as, *Donnez-en*, give some, and takes the precedence over all words which have to be placed before, as, *ne, le, la, les, lui, leur*, etc.—Ex. *Je n'en ai pas*, I have not any; *Je ne lui en donne pas*, I do not give him any.

Et que nous y trouvassions, and that we might find in it.

116. **Y** is, like *en*, an invariable pronoun of both genders and numbers, but it is more especially used in speaking of things, and very seldom refers to persons. Its most usual meanings are: *to it*, or *to them*; *in it*, or *in them*; and *there*.

117. **Y** is also one of the small words which require to be placed before the verb (except in Imperative affirmative sentences; as, *attachez-y*, attach to it); and in this respect it takes the precedence over all except *en*.

La *rendre*, to render it.

It is here translated by **la**, literally *her*, because it refers to *étude*, study, which is feminine in French. (82.)

118. There are many French words ending in **re** which have become English, sometimes with the same orthography; as, *sabre*, *fibre*, *massacre*, *théâtre*, *spectre*, *mitre*: and sometimes by transposing the final letters; as, *ambre*, amber; *chambre*, chamber; *membre*, member; *cidre*, cider; *ordre*, order; *offre*, offer; *tigre*, tiger; *ministre*, minister; *lettre*, letter, etc.

Rien *du tout*, nothing at all.

119. **RIEN**, when used without the negative *ne* put before the verb, usually corresponds to *thing*, or *any thing*; as, "*Y a-t-il RIEN de plus beau?* Is there ANY THING more beautiful?" But it is much more frequently used with *ne*, and signifies *nothing*, or *not any thing*.

Du tout is an adverbial form, joined to *pas*, *point*, not, and *rien*, to render the negative more emphatic. It corresponds to *at all*.

EXIGEAIENT is the third person plural of the imperfect tense of *exiger*, to exact. In this verb, the vowel *e*, which is mute, is interposed between the radical part *exig* and the termination *aient*—*exigeaient* instead of *exigaient*—in order to preserve the soft sound of *g*, this letter being hard before the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, in French as in English.

120. In the conjugation of verbs ending in **ger**, the **g** is always followed by **e** mute before the vowels **a**, **o**.

<i>Que nous fussions,</i>	<i>Et ils ne nous parlaient,</i>
that we should be.	and they spoke to us.

121. **Nous** means *we*, *us*, and *to us*; but in the sense of *us*, or *to us*, it has to be placed before the verb, except in Imperative affirmative sentences; as, *Donnez-nous*, give us. The same observation will apply to **vous**, you, or to you.

122. We have now seen almost all the small words which require to be put before the verb. **En** is always nearest, **ne** gives way to all others, and the rest are generally placed after **ne**, or before **en**, unless used by themselves.

Avantage, advantage, is masculine by exception.

Sêches is the feminine plural of *sec*, *sêche*, dry, one of the few adjectives which form their feminine irregularly.

Etonner, to astonish, *parler*, to speak, and *trouver*, to find, are regular verbs of the first conjugation; *répondre*, to answer, is of the third.

Comprendre, to understand; *savoir*, to know; and *sentir*, to feel or to smell, are irregular verbs, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Do I wish? 35, 37. | 16. I have spoken, 88. |
| 2. Does he wish? | 17. He has spoken. |
| 3. Do we wish? | 18. We have spoken. |
| 4. Do you wish? | 19. You have spoken. |
| 5. Do they wish? | 20. They have spoken. |
| 6. Have I wished? | 21. I have blackened, 94. |
| 7. Has he wished? | 22. He has blackened. |
| 8. Have we wished? | 23. We have blackened. |
| 9. Have you wished? | 24. You have blackened. |
| 10. Have they wished? | 25. They have blackened. |
| 11. Shall I wish? | 26. I have answered, 102. |
| 12. Shall he wish? | 27. He has answered. |
| 13. Shall we wish? | 28. We have answered. |
| 14. Shall you wish? | 29. You have answered. |
| 15. Shall they wish? | 30. They have answered. |

31. What are you doing? 30, 31.—32. Why does he not answer us? 31, 121.—33. He is studying his lesson, 31.—34. A gentleman wishes to speak to you, 65, 121.—35. Does he wish to see the house? 31.—36. He studies the French language, but he does not like its difficulties, 60.—37. Do you know the Latin language?—38. Not much, sir, 65.—39. Have you any paper?—40. I have some, 114.—41. Have they some copy-books?—42. They have not any, 115.—43. Has he any water?—44. He has some, 114.

FOURTEENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Quatorzième leçon.

Fourteenth

“ Nous voilà libres ! Oui, nous le sommes
 Us behold free Yes we so are
enfin ! Pourquoi ne jouirions-nous pas de
 at length should enjoy
nos beaux jours ? Pourquoi perdriions-
 fine should lose
nous des moments précieux ? Nous aurions
 moments precious should have
grand tort. Faut-il être grave et raisonna-
 great Must it grave reasona-
ble à tout âge ? Non, non ! Divertissons-
 ble age No Let us divert
nous. Nos parents ont eu leur temps ;
 ourselves parents have their
aujourd'hui c'est | le nôtre. | N'attendons
 to-day ours Let us not wait
pas que nous soyons trop vieux pour
 till be too old
gouter une franche gaieté. N'ayons nulle
 taste frank mirth Let us have no
autre pensée que celle de nous amuser.”
 than to amuse

* See 1st note on page 59.

** See 2d note on page 59.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"Now we are free! Yes, we are so at last! Why should we not enjoy our happy days? Why should we waste our precious moments? We should be very wrong to do so. Is it necessary to be grave and steady at every age? No, no! Let us divert ourselves. Our parents have had their day; it is ours now. Let us not wait till we are too old to indulge in unfeigned mirth. Let us have no other thought than that of enjoying ourselves."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la quatorzième.
Les compagnons d'Alexis étaient-ils libres?	Oui, ils l'étaient enfin.
Comment étaient les compagnons d'Alexis?	Ils étaient libres.
De quoi voulaient-ils jouir?	De leurs beaux jours.
Qu'est-ce qu'ils ne voulaient pas perdre?	Des moments précieux.
Comment trouvaient-ils leurs jours?	Ils les trouvaient beaux.
Comment trouvaient-ils leurs moments?	Ils les trouvaient précieux.
Pensaient-ils qu'il fût bon de perdre leurs moments précieux?	Non, ils pensaient qu'ils auraient grand tort de les perdre.
Comment ne faut-il pas être à tout âge?	Grave et raisonnable.
Que répondaient-ils à cette question: Faut-il être grave et raisonnable à tout âge?	Non, non! Divertissons-nous.
Quelles étaient les personnes qui avaient eu leur temps?	Leurs parents.
Qu'est-ce que leurs parents avaient eu?	Ils avaient eu leur temps.

* See notes on page 2.

Que disaient les compagnons d'Alexis, à cette occasion?	Aujourd'hui c'est le nôtre.
Qu'est-ce qu'on ne goûte pas, quand on est trop vieux?	Une franche gaieté.
Quand ne goûte-t-on pas une franche gaieté?	Quand on est trop vieux.
Quelle était la seule pensée qu'ils voulaient avoir?	Celle de s'amuser.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Bonjour, monsieur, comment cela va-t-il?	Good day, Sir, how are you?
Bien, et vous?	Well, and how are you?
Assez bien. Et comment va monsieur Delatour?	Pretty well. And how is Mr. Delatour?
Il a eu une petite indisposition l'autre jour, mais il va bien aujourd'hui.	He had a slight indisposition the other day, but he is well now.
Il fait bien beau.	It is very fine weather.
Oui, il fait un temps superbe.	Yes, the weather is beautiful.
Est-ce que vous demeurez à Paris?	Do you live in Paris?
Non, nous y sommes seulement en passant.	No, we are here but momentarily.
Vous y amusez-vous?	Are you amused here?
Oui, beaucoup. Nous y passons notre temps à nous divertir.	Yes, very much. We spend our time here in diverting ourselves.
Nous fréquentons toutes les promenades et tous les théâtres.	We visit all the public walks and the theatres.
Nous nous perdons quelquefois dans les rues.	We sometimes lose our way in the streets.
Mais nous savons nous faire comprendre.	But we know how to make ourselves understood.
Vous parlez fort bien.	You speak very well.

* See note on page 3.

Vous avez beaucoup d'indulgence.	You are very indulgent.
Non, vraiment. Ce n'est pas un compliment.	No, indeed. It is not a compliment.
Monsieur, que voilà, est un compagnon de voyage.	That gentleman is a fellow-traveller.
Parle-t-il français?	Does he speak French?
Il le parle un peu.	He speaks it a little.
Si vous lui parlez, il vous répondra.	If you speak to him, he will answer you.
Parlez-vous français, monsieur?	Do you speak French, Sir?
Fort mal, monsieur.	Very imperfectly, Sir.
Comprenez-vous notre conversation?	Do you understand our conversation?
Oui, monsieur, parce que vous parlez doucement.	Yes, Sir, because you speak slowly.
Y a-t-il longtemps que vous apprenez le français.	Have you been learning French a long time?
Non, monsieur, il n'y a pas longtemps.	No, Sir, not a long time.
Vous avez un compagnon de voyage qui, sans doute, vous donne des leçons?	You have a travelling companion who gives you some lessons undoubtedly?
Oui, monsieur. Nous parlons français une heure tous les jours.	Yes, Sir. We speak French for an hour every day.
C'est la meilleure des leçons.	It is the best lesson.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

QUATORZIÈME, fourteenth, comes from *quatorze*, fourteen.

Nous voilà libres!

Now we are free!—literally, behold us free.

123. **Voilà** is a contraction of two words: *vois*, the second person singular of the imperative mood of *voir*, to see, to behold. and *là*, there; so that its literal meaning is *behold there*. There is a corresponding word, **voici**, which is also in frequent use; it is a contraction of *vois ici*, behold here. These expressions

correspond to *there is, there are, here is, here are, this is, that is, these are, those are, or behold*; as, "*Voilà un homme*, there is a man; *voici un dictionnaire*, here is a dictionary; *voilà des cahiers*, there are some copy-books; *voici un exemple*, this is an example; *les voici*, here they are; *la voilà*, there she is; *le voilà sur le pont*, behold him on the bridge." Sometimes they require a different construction in English; as, "*Voilà une heure que nous parlons*, we have been speaking this hour." But this will be seen later.

Nos beaux jours, our fine days.

BEAUX is the plural of *beau*, fine, already seen.

124. Words ending with **au** or **eu** generally take an **x** instead of an **s** in the plural.—Ex. *Les eaux*, the waters; *les feux*, the fires.

This completes the study of the formation of the plural of nouns and adjectives.

125. 1. Most nouns and adjectives take an **s** in the plural.

2. Those ending with an **s**, **x**, or **z**, in the singular, do not change in the plural.

3. Those ending with **au** or **eu** take an **x** instead of an **s**.

4. Those ending with **al** change *al* into **aux**.

The exceptions to these rules are but few, and will be explained as they occur in the text. Those already seen are, *Ciel*, heaven; *cieux*, heavens; *monsieur*, sir; *messieurs*, gentlemen; and *œil*, eye; *yeux*, eyes.

Faut-il être? Is it necessary to be?

FAUT-IL is the interrogative form of *il faut*, the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *falloir*, must or to be necessary, to be requisite.

126. **Falloir** is an irregular impersonal verb, used only in the third person singular.

It has no present participle and no imperative mood.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Fallu, been necessary.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Il faut, it is necessary.

IMPERFECT.

Il fallait, it was, or used to be necessary.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

Il fallut, it was necessary.

FUTURE.

Il faudra, it shall, or will be necessary.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Il faudrait, it should, or would be necessary.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Qu'il faille, that it may be necessary.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

Qu'il fallût, that it might be necessary.

C'est le nôtre, it is ours.

Le nôtre is here of the masculine singular, on account of *temps*.

127. We have already seen that the possessive pronouns, like the possessive adjectives, agree in gender and number with the thing possessed, and not with the possessor. (60.)

The feminine of **le nôtre** is **la nôtre**; the plural of both genders, **les nôtres**.

Nous amuser,
to amuse ourselves.

Divertissons-nous,
let us divert ourselves.

128. A pronominal verb is conjugated with two pronouns of the same person, both placed before it, except in the imperative mood, the first being the subject, and the second the regimen. The corresponding pronouns for each person are, *Je me, tu te, il se, elle se, nous nous, vous vous, ils se, elles se*.

MODEL OF THE PRONOMINAL FORM OF CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

S'amuser, to amuse one's self.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

S'amusant, amusing one's self.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je m'amuse,</i>	I amuse myself.
<i>Tu t'amuses,</i>	thou amusest thyself.
<i>Il s'amuse,</i>	he amuses himself.
<i>Nous nous amusons,</i>	we amuse ourselves.
<i>Vous vous amusez,</i>	you amuse yourselves, or yourself.
<i>Ils s'amusent,</i>	they amuse themselves.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je m'amusais,</i>	I was amusing myself.
<i>Tu t'amusais,</i>	thou wast amusing thyself.
<i>Il s'amusait,</i>	he was amusing himself.
<i>Nous nous amusions,</i>	we were amusing ourselves.
<i>Vous vous amusiez,</i>	you were amusing yourselves.
<i>Ils s'amusaient,</i>	they were amusing themselves.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je m'amusai,</i>	I did amuse myself.
<i>Tu t'amusas,</i>	thou didst amuse thyself.
<i>Il s'amusa,</i>	he did amuse himself.
<i>Nous nous amusâmes,</i>	we did amuse ourselves.
<i>Vous vous amusâtes,</i>	you did amuse yourselves.
<i>Ils s'amusèrent,</i>	they did amuse themselves.

FUTURE.

<i>Je m'amuserai,</i>	I shall amuse myself.
<i>Tu t'amuseras,</i>	thou shalt amuse thyself.
<i>Il s'amusera,</i>	he shall amuse himself.
<i>Nous nous amuserons,</i>	we shall amuse ourselves.
<i>Vous vous amuserez,</i>	you shall amuse yourselves.
<i>Ils s'amuseront,</i>	they shall amuse themselves.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je m'amuserais,</i>	I should amuse myself.
<i>Tu t'amuserais,</i>	thou shouldst amuse thyself.
<i>Il s'amuserait,</i>	he should amuse himself.
<i>Nous nous amuserions,</i>	we should amuse ourselves.
<i>Vous vous amuseriez,</i>	you should amuse yourselves.
<i>Ils s'amuseraient,</i>	they should amuse themselves.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Amuse-toi,</i>	amuse thyself.
<i>Amusons-nous,</i>	let us amuse ourselves.
<i>Amusez-vous,</i>	amuse yourselves, or yourself.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je m'amuse,</i>	that I may amuse myself.
<i>Que tu t'amuses,</i>	that thou mayst amuse thyself.
<i>Qu'il s'amuse,</i>	that he may amuse himself.
<i>Que nous nous amusions,</i>	that we may amuse ourselves.
<i>Que vous vous amusiez,</i>	that you may amuse yourselves.
<i>Qu'ils s'amusent,</i>	that they may amuse themselves.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je m'amusasse,</i>	that I might amuse myself.
<i>Que tu t'amusasses,</i>	that thou mightst amuse thyself.
<i>Qu'il s'amusât,</i>	that he might amuse himself.
<i>Que nous nous amusassions,</i>	that we might amuse ourselves.
<i>Que vous vous amusassiez,</i>	that you might amuse yourselves.
<i>Qu'ils s'amusassent,</i>	that they might amuse themselves.

129. The most remarkable features of the pronominal form of conjugation are, that the compound tenses take *être* instead of *avoir*, and that the past participle agrees, like the adjective, in gender and number with the word that undergoes the action expressed.—Ex. *Il s'est amusé*, he has amused himself; *elle s'est amusée*, she has amused herself; *ils se sont amusés*, *elles se sont amusées*, they have amused themselves.

Age, age, is masculine by exception.

Vieux, vieille, old; *franc, franche*, frank; and *nul, nulle*, no not any, none, are three adjectives which form their feminine irregularly.

Goûter, to taste, is a regular verb of the first conjugation; *divertir*, to divert, and *jouir*, to enjoy, are of the second; but *jouir* is a neuter verb in French, and requires *de* after it. *Attendre*, to wait, and *perdre*, to lose, are of the third.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. I persuade myself, 128. | 16. I grieve, 128. |
| 2. He persuades himself. | 17. He grieves. |
| 3. We persuade ourselves. | 18. We grieve. |
| 4. You persuade yourselves. | 19. You grieve. |
| 5. They persuade themselves. | 20. They grieve. |
| 6. I free myself. | 21. I imagine. |
| 7. He frees himself. | 22. He imagines. |
| 8. We free ourselves. | 23. We imagine. |
| 9. You free yourself. | 24. You imagine. |
| 10. They free themselves. | 25. They imagine. |
| 11. I stretch myself. | 26. I stop. |
| 12. He stretches himself. | 27. He stops. |
| 13. We stretch ourselves. | 28. We stop. |
| 14. You stretch yourselves. | 29. You stop. |
| 15. They stretch themselves. | 30. They stop. |

31. Here is some paper, 123.—32. There is a fine shop, 123.—
 33. Here are our grammars, 123.—34. There are our dictionaries, 123.—35. Where is the little boy?—36. Here he is, 123.—
 37. Where are the boys?—38. There they are, 123.—39. Why should we not divert ourselves? 128.—40. We should answer you, if we understood you.—41. We should hear them with pleasure.—42. Why should we suspend our studies?—43. It is his taste, but it is not ours, 127.—44. Their pleasures are ours, 127.—45. This grammar is better than ours, 127.—46. Let us finish our lesson.—47. Where are they?—48. There they are, 123.—49. Where is she?—50. There she is, 123.

FIFTEENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Quinzième leçon.

Fifteenth

Ces étourdis avaient toujours quelque
 giddy fellows had
nouvelle partie à lui proposer. L'un
 new party propose
d'eux, par exemple, lui disait un jour :

“ Venez avec moi demain. Nous irons
 Come me to-morrow will go
en bateau sous l'ombre fraîche des grands
 boat under shade cool
saules qui bordent la rivière, et là nous
 willows skirt river there
pêcherons. J'aurai ma ligne ; vous pren-
 will fish I shall have line will
drez la vôtre, | ainsi que | vos hameçons.
 take yours as well as your hooks

* The mode of reviewing mentioned in first note on page 59 could now be made still shorter, by leaving out five of the earlier lessons, translating the 6th, 7th, and 8th from the French into English, the 9th, 10th, and 11th from the English into French, and only the 12th, 13th, and 14th in the complete manner required in first note on page 15. In all these attempts to gain time, however, due regard should be paid to the particular degree of proficiency attained, for the neglect of any portion of the text would of necessity cause much inconvenience in the studies, and tend to retard considerably all kinds of improvements.

** See 2d note on page 59.

Nous aurons de bonnes amorces, et je
 will have good baits I
vous répons que le poisson mordra.
 warrant fish will bite
Votre ami, le gros Guillaume, et son
 Your friend big William
frère, Jacques le roux, seront des nôtres."
 brother James red-haired will be ours

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

These madcaps had always some new party to propose to him. One of them, for instance, said to him one day: "Come with me to-morrow. We will go in a boat in the cool shade of the large willows that skirt the river, and there we will fish. I shall have my line; you will take yours, together with your hooks. We will have some good bait, and I warrant you the fish will bite. Your friend, fat William, and his brother, James the red-haired, will join us."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la quinzième.
Qui avait toujours quelque nouvelle partie à lui proposer?	Ces étourdis.
Quels étourdis?	Les compagnons d'Alexis.
Qu'avaient-ils toujours à proposer?	Quelque nouvelle partie.
A qui avaient-ils quelque partie à proposer?	A Alexis.
Qui lui disait un jour: "Venez avec moi demain?"	L'un d'eux.
Que lui disait l'un d'eux?	Venez avec moi demain.
Comment lui proposait-il d'aller sous les saules?	En bateau.
Où lui proposait-il d'aller en bateau?	Sous l'ombre fraîche des saules.

Qu'est-ce que les saules bordaient ?	La rivière.
De quoi la rivière était-elle bordée ?	De grands saules.
Comment était l'ombre des saules ?	Elle était fraîche.
Que voulaient-ils faire là ?	Ils voulaient pêcher.
Que faut-il avoir pour pêcher ?	Des lignes, des hameçons et des amorces..
Que fait-on avec des lignes, des hameçons et des amorces ?	On pêche.
Que pensaient-ils prendre avec leurs amorces ?	Du poisson.
Comment était Guillaume, l'ami d'Alexis ?	Il était gros.
Comment était son frère Jacques ?	Il était roux.
Comment s'appelaient les deux frères ?	Guillaume et Jacques.
Comment s'appelait l'étourdi qui proposait la partie ?	Nous ne le savons pas.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Nous avons une partie à vous proposer.
 Vous n'avez qu'à parler.
 Nous nous proposons de pêcher à la ligne. Voulez-vous être des nôtres ?
 Avec beaucoup de plaisir.
 Avez-vous des lignes et des hameçons ?
 Oui, oui, nous avons tout ce qu'il faut.
 Et où pêcherons-nous ?
 Dans la rivière.
 Croyez-vous que nous prendrons beaucoup de poisson ?
 Mais, oui ; c'est probable.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

We have a party to propose to you.
 You have but to speak.
 We intend to go fishing. Will you make one of us ?
 With much pleasure.
 Have you any lines and hooks ?
 Yes, yes, we have all that is necessary.
 And where shall we fish ?
 In the river.
 Do you think we shall catch many fish ?
 Why, yes ; it is probable.

* See note on page 8.

Y a-t-il longtemps que vous n'avez pêché ?	Is it a long time since you went a fishing ?
Il y a quinze jours.	A fortnight.
Voilà la rivière. La voyez-vous ?	There is the river. Do you see it ?
Non. Où est-elle ?	No. Where is it ?
Voyez-vous cette petite maison devant laquelle il y a des saules ?	Do you see that little house before which there are some willows ?
Oui, sans doute.	To be sure, I do.
Eh bien, les saules que vous voyez bordent la rivière.	Well, the willows you see border the river.
Nous y voilà.	Here we are.
Passerons-nous le pont ?	Shall we go over the bridge ?
Non, nous avons un petit bateau.	No, we have a little boat.
Nous passerons l'eau dans notre bateau.	We will cross the river in our boat.
Venez avec moi.	Come with me.
Attendez ; retrouvons nos manches.	Wait ; let us tuck up our sleeves.
Comme l'eau est fraîche !	How cool the water is !
Nous ne sommes pas bien placés. Venez à l'ombre.	We are not well here. Come into the shade.
Combien avez-vous de lignes ?	How many lines have you ?
Trois. Voilà celle de Guillaume, et voici la vôtre.	Three. That is William's, and this is yours.
Voyons qui prendra le premier poisson.	Let us see who will catch the first fish.

SÉCOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

QUINZIÈME, *fifteenth*, comes from *quinze*, *fifteen*.

A lui proposer, to propose to him ; *lui disait*, said to him.

130. *To him*, or *him*, used for *to him*, is always translated by *lui*, except after *que*, meaning *as*, *than*, or *only*, and after *c'est*, it is, when *à lui* has to be used.

Him is used for *to him*, in sentences like *Give him an apple* : in which the preposition *to* is understood.

131. **Lui**, like all pronouns in the objective case, is generally placed before the verb, except in Imperative affirmative sentences; as, *Proposez-lui*, propose to him.

Venez avec moi, come with me.

132. **ME**, generally translated by **me** put before the verb, has to be rendered by **moi**, when used isolately; that is to say, chiefly after **que**, meaning *as, than, only*, or any other preposition than *to*, and even then, if *to* is preceded by *c'est*, it is, or *que*.—Ex. *C'est à moi qu'il parle*, it is to me he speaks.

It is also translated by **moi** placed after the verb in Imperative affirmative sentences; as, *Donnez-moi*, give me.

PRENDREZ is the second person plural of the future tense of *prendre*, to take, one of the most important irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Prendre**, TO TAKE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Prendre, to take.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Prenant, taking.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Pris, taken.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je prends,</i>	I take,	am taking, or do take.
<i>Tu prends,</i>	thou takest,	art taking, or dost take.
<i>Il prend,</i>	he takes,	is taking, or does take.
<i>Nous prenons,</i>	we take,	are taking, or do take.
<i>Vous prenez,</i>	you take,	are taking, or do take.
<i>Ils prennent,</i>	they take,	are taking, or do take.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je prenais,</i>	I took,	or was taking.
<i>Tu prenais,</i>	thou tookest,	or wast taking.
<i>Il prenait,</i>	he took,	or was taking.
<i>Nous prenions,</i>	we took,	or were taking.
<i>Vous preniez,</i>	you took,	or were taking.
<i>Ils prenaient,</i>	they took,	or were taking.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je pris,</i>	I took,	or did take.
<i>Tu pris,</i>	thou tookest,	or didst take.
<i>Il prit,</i>	he took,	or did take.
<i>Nous prîmes,</i>	we took,	or did take.
<i>Vous prîtes,</i>	you took,	or did take.
<i>Ils prirent,</i>	they took,	or did take.

FUTURE.

<i>Je prendrai,</i>	I shall take,	or will take.
<i>Tu prendras,</i>	thou shalt take,	or wilt take.
<i>Il prendra,</i>	he shall take,	or will take.
<i>Nous prendrons,</i>	we shall take,	or will take.
<i>Vous prendrez,</i>	you shall take,	or will take.
<i>Ils prendront,</i>	they shall take,	or will take.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je prendrais,</i>	I should take,	or would take.
<i>Tu prendrais,</i>	thou shouldst take,	or wouldst take.
<i>Il prendrait,</i>	he should take,	or would take.
<i>Nous prendrions,</i>	we should take,	or would take.
<i>Vous prendriez,</i>	you should take,	or would take.
<i>Ils prendraient,</i>	they should take,	or would take.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Prends, take (thou).

Prenons, let us take.

Prenez, take.(you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je prenne,</i>	that I may take.
<i>Que tu prennes,</i>	that thou mayst take.
<i>Qu'il prenne,</i>	that he may take.
<i>Que nous prenions,</i>	that we may take.
<i>Que vous preniez,</i>	that you may take.
<i>Qu'ils prennent,</i>	that they may take.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je prisse,</i>	that I might take.
<i>Que tu prisses,</i>	that thou mightst take.
<i>Qu'il prît,</i>	that he might take.
<i>Que nous prissions,</i>	that we might take.
<i>Que vous prissiez,</i>	that you might take.
<i>Qu'ils prissent,</i>	that they might take.

133. Thus are conjugated *apprendre*, to learn; *comprendre*, to understand; *entreprendre*, to undertake; *rapprendre*, to learn again; *surprendre*, to surprise, etc.

J'aurai ma ligne, vous prendrez la vôtre,
I shall have my line, you will take yours.

La vôtre agrees here in gender and number with *ligne*, line, according to the rule explained (127, 60).

134. The masculine singular of **la vôtre** is **le vôtre**; the plural for both genders is **les vôtres**. These three forms correspond to the English word **YOURS**.

VÔTRE is derived from **VOTRE**, *your*, like **NÔTRE**, from **NOTRE**, *our*; but the possessive pronouns **OURS** and **YOURS** have a circumflex accent over the *ô*, and are, moreover, always preceded by the article *le*.

135. **DES NÔTRES** is an expression similar to "*Tom Burke of ours*" in English, introduced chiefly to show that when the preposition *of*, *from*, *to*, or *at*, precedes a possessive pronoun in French, it continues subject to contraction with the article, as indicated in rule 19.—Ex. **Du nôtre, des nôtres**, OF OURS; **au nôtre, aux nôtres**, TO OURS.

Exemple, example, and *saule*, willow, are masculine by exception.

Bon, bonne, good; *gros, grosse*, big; *nouveau, nouvelle*; new; and *roux, rousse*, reddish, are four adjectives which form their feminine irregularly.

Border, to skirt, *pêcher*, to fish, and *proposer*, to propose, are regular verbs of the first conjugation; *répondre*, to warrant, answer, or respond, is of the fourth.

IRONS is a part of *aller*, to go, one of the most irregular French verbs. It will be explained later, together with *dire*, to say, *mordre*, to bite, and *venir*, to come.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. I learn, 133. | 16. I understand. |
| 2. He learns. | 17. He understands. |
| 3. We learn. | 18. We understand. |
| 4. You learn. | 19. You understand. |
| 5. They learn. | 20. They understand. |
| 6. I shall learn. | 21. I shall understand. |
| 7. He shall learn. | 22. He shall understand. |
| 8. We shall learn. | 23. We shall understand. |
| 9. You shall learn. | 24. You shall understand. |
| 10. They shall learn. | 25. They shall understand. |
| 11. I have learned. | 26. I have understood. |
| 12. He has learned. | 27. He has understood. |
| 13. We have learned. | 28. We have understood. |
| 14. You have learned. | 29. You have understood. |
| 15. They have learned. | 30. They have understood. |

31. Where are you?—32. We shall study a new lesson to-morrow.—33. Why will you not come with me? 132.—34. The water is very cool.—35. My friends are yours, 134.—36. I do not understand you.—37. Alexis is not very attentive.—38. Have you his copy-book?—39. No, sir; I have yours, 134.—40. Has he his grammar?—41. Yes, sir; he has his, 60.—42. Where is my dictionary?—43. Yours is lost, 134.—44. Speak to him, 130, 131.—45. Do not speak to him, 130, 131.—46. Will you make me something? 132.—47. Yes, sir, with pleasure.

SIXTEENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Seizième leçon.

Sixteenth

“ Ils auront du Champagne, des gâteaux
 will have some Champagne some cakes
et d’autres friandises que leur fourniront
 some nice things to them will furnish
à crédit des marchands qui les connais-
 on credit some tradesmen them know
sent. Moi, je me chargerai du pain et de
 (myself) will charge bread
la viande. | Quant à | vous, mon cher,
 meat As for my dear
vous apporterez | ce que | vous voudrez.
 will bring what will will
Ces messieurs savent des histoires qui vous
 gentlemen know stories
surprendront et qui vous feront rire. Je
 will surprise will make laugh.
suis sûr que vous ne serez pas fâché d’être
 am sure will be sorry
venu. Je vous avertis que nous serons
 come warn shall be
| de bonne heure | au rendez-vous. Hier,
 early rendez-vous Yesterday

* See 1st note on page 100.

** See 2d note on page 59.

nous y étions avant six heures du matin.
 were before morning.

Nous avons un filet qu'on nous avait
 had net

prêté. Nous passâmes une journée très-
 lent passed day very

agréable."

agreeable

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"They will have some Champagne, some cakes, and other nice things, which some tradesmen of their acquaintance will supply them with on credit. I shall provide the bread and meat. As for you, my dear fellow, bring whatever you please. Those young men know some stories that will surprise you and make you laugh. I am sure you will not be sorry to have come. I warn you that we shall be early at the place of rendez-vous. Yesterday we were there before six o'clock in the morning. We had a net which was lent us. We spent a very pleasant day."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la seizième.
Qu'est-ce que les amis d'Alexis auront ?	Ils auront du Champagne, des gâteaux et d'autres friandises.
Comment auront-ils ces choses ?	Des marchands qui les connaissent les leur fourniront à crédit.
De quoi se chargera l'ami qui parle à Alexis ?	Il se chargera du pain et de la viande.
Qui se chargera du pain et de la viande ?	L'ami qui parle à Alexis.
Et Alexis, qu'apportera-t-il ?	Il apportera ce qu'il voudra.
Quels sont les messieurs qui savent des histoires ?	Guillaume et Jacques.—Le gros Guillaume et Jacques le roux.

* See notes on page 2.

Que savent ces messieurs?

Ils savent des histoires qui surprendront Alexis et qui le feront rire.

Qui est-ce qui ne sera pas fâché d'être venu?

Alexis.

De quoi Alexis ne sera-t-il pas fâché?

D'être venu.

Quand les amis seront-ils au rendez-vous?

Ils y seront de bonne heure.

Où seront-ils de bonne heure?

Au rendez-vous.

Quel jour y étaient-ils avant six heures du matin?

Hier.

A quelle heure y étaient-ils hier?

Avant six heures du matin.

Qu'est-ce qu'ils avaient pour pêcher?

Ils avaient un filet qu'on leur avait prêté.

Qui est-ce qui leur avait prêté un filet?

Nous ne le savons pas.

Comment passèrent-ils la journée?

Ils la passèrent très-agréablement.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Comment cela va-t-il aujourd'hui, mon cher?

Assez bien. Et vous?

Mais, très-bien, comme vous voyez.

Qu'avez-vous fait hier?

Des amis sont venus me prendre pour faire une partie de pêche avec eux.

Avez-vous pris beaucoup de poisson?

Nous n'avons rien pris du tout.

Pauvres garçons! Comment cela se fait-il?

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

How are you to-day, my dear fellow?

Pretty well. How are you?

Why, very well, as you see.

What did you do yesterday?

Some friends came and took me to go fishing with them.

Did you catch much fish?

We did not catch any thing at all.

Poor fellows! How was that?

* See note on page 3.

Il y avait là de jeunes étourdis, qui parlaient, qui riaient, et qui rendaient la pêche impossible.	There were some young madcaps there, who were talking and laughing, and who made it impossible to fish.
Et aujourd'hui, comment passez-vous la journée?	And to-day, how do you spend your time?
Je suis forcé de travailler.	I am obliged to work.
Bah! Vous travaillerez un autre jour.	Pshaw! You can work another day.
Trois de nos camarades nous attendent pour faire une promenade.	Three of our comrades are waiting for us, to take a walk.
Je suis bien fâché de ne pas pouvoir être des vôtres.	I am very sorry that I cannot go with you.
Vous le pouvez, si vous le voulez.	You can, if you will.
Ce ne serait pas raisonnable.	It would not be reasonable.
Vous aurez tout le temps d'être raisonnable, quand vous serez vieux.	You will have plenty of time to be reasonable when you are old.
Pour quelle heure est le rendez-vous?	For what o'clock is the rendezvous?
Pour dix heures. Il n'y a pas de temps à perdre.	For ten o'clock. There is no time to be lost.
Et où irons-nous?	And where shall we go?
Nous irons chez notre ami Guillaume, qui a une petite maison à lui, sur le bord de la rivière.	We will go and see our friend William, who has a little house of his own on the bank of the river.
Votre proposition est bien attrayante.	Your proposal is very tempting.
Aimez-vous le Champagne?	Do you like Champagne?
Oui, beaucoup.	Yes, very much.
Il y en aura, et du meilleur.	There will be some, and of the best sort.
Je me rends.	I consent.

SECOND DIVISION.--THEORETICAL PART.

SEIZIÈME, sixteenth, comes from *seize*, sixteen.

Du champagne, some champagne.

CHAMPAGNE, the name of a province of France, is feminine, as its termination denotes; but when used as a laconism for *VIN de Champagne*, wine of Champagne, it becomes masculine.

Que leur fourniront à crédit des marchands qui les connaissent, which some merchants who know them will furnish them on credit.

Que des marchands qui les connaissent leur fourniront à crédit, would be as well.

136. We have already seen when **THEM** has to be translated by **les eux** and **elles**. To **THEM**, or **THEM** used for **TO THEM**, is always rendered by **leur**, except after *que*, meaning *as*, *than*, or *only*, and after *c'est*, it is, when **à eux** has to be used for the masculine, and **à elles** for the feminine.

137. *Them* is used for *to them* in sentences like the following: "Give **THEM** an apple," in which the preposition *to* is understood.

138. **Leur**, like all pronouns in the objective case, is generally placed before the verb, except in Imperative affirmative sentences; as, *Donnez-leur*, give them. It should not be confounded with the possessive adjective *leur*, *leurs*, their, explained in 67.

139. The pronoun **leur**, them, is chiefly used in speaking of persons, and never takes an *s*.

Qui *les connaissent*, who know them.

140. **Who** is generally translated by **qui**, and **whom** by **que**, except at the beginning of a sentence, or preceded by a preposition, when **who** and **whom** are both rendered by **qui**.—*Ex. Qui est là?* who is there? *Qui avez-vous vu?* whom have you seen? *De qui?* of whom? *à qui?* to whom?

141. **Dont** is used instead of **de qui**, but only in the middle of a sentence.

This completes the study of **WHO**, **WHOM**, **WHICH**, and **WHAT**. Always interrogative at the beginning of a sentence, they are generally relative in the middle. For the translation of **WHICH** and **WHAT**, see 30, 74, 75, 76.

CRÉDIT means *credit, interest, influence*. The English expression, **ON credit**, or **ON trust**, is rendered in French by *À crédit*.

Moi, *je me chargerai*, I will take charge.

142. **Moi** is joined to **je**, by apposition and reduplication, for the sake of emphasis, which in English is represented by underlining the pronoun, or printing it in *italic*. In French, the reduplication either precedes the verb, as in the above phrase, or follows it, thus: "*Je me chargerai, moi.*" The other personal pronouns are also susceptible of this reduplication. In this construction, *quant à* is generally understood, or may be expressed as in the text: "*Quant à vous, mon cher, vous apporterez.*" We might have said: "*Quant à moi, je me chargerai,*" and "*Vous, mon cher, vous apporterez.*"

QUANT, *as*, must not be confounded with **QUAND**, *when*. This adverb is always followed by *à*, and signifies *with regard to, with respect to, as to, as for*.

Ce que *vous voudrez*, what you like.

143. **WHAT**, when it can be replaced by *the thing which*, or *that which*, has to be translated by **ce qui** for the nominative, and by **ce que** for the objective case. (99.)

Des histoires, some stories.

Histoire corresponds to story and history.

144. The termination **oire** is common to substantives and adjectives, about one hundred of which end in English in *ory*; as, *Gloire*, glory; *mémoire*, memory; *accessoire*, accessory; *obligatoire*, obligatory; *victoire*, victory; *ivoire*, ivory, etc.

VENU is the past participle of *venir*, to come, one of the most important irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Venir**, TO COME.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Venir, to come.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Venant, coming.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Venu, come.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je viens,</i>	I come,	am coming, or do come.
<i>Tu viens,</i>	thou comest,	art coming, or dost come.
<i>Il vient,</i>	he comes,	is coming, or does come.
<i>Nous venons,</i>	we come,	are coming, or do come.
<i>Vous venez,</i>	you come,	are coming, or do come.
<i>Ils viennent,</i>	they come,	are coming, or do come.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je venais,</i>	I came,	or was coming.
<i>Tu venais,</i>	thou camest,	or wast coming.
<i>Il venait,</i>	he came,	or was coming.
<i>Nous venions,</i>	we came,	or were coming.
<i>Vous veniez,</i>	you came,	or were coming.
<i>Ils venaient,</i>	they came,	or were coming.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je vins,</i>	I came,	or did come.
<i>Tu vins,</i>	thou camest,	or didst come.
<i>Il vint,</i>	he came,	or did come.
<i>Nous vîmes,</i>	we came,	or did come.
<i>Vous vîntes,</i>	you came,	or did come.
<i>Ils vinrent,</i>	they came,	or did come.

FUTURE.

<i>Je viendrai,</i>	I shall come,	or will come.
<i>Tu viendras,</i>	thou shalt come,	or wilt come.
<i>Il viendra,</i>	he shall come,	or will come.
<i>Nous viendrons,</i>	we shall come,	or will come.
<i>Vous viendrez,</i>	you shall come,	or will come.
<i>Ils viendront,</i>	they shall come,	or will come.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je viendrais,</i>	I should come, &	or would come.
<i>Tu viendrais,</i>	thou shouldst come,	or wouldst come.
<i>Il viendrait,</i>	he should come,	or would come.
<i>Nous viendrions,</i>	we should come,	or would come.
<i>Vous viendriez,</i>	you should come,	or would come.
<i>Ils viendraient,</i>	they should come,	or would come.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Viens,</i>	come (thou).
<i>Venons,</i>	let us come.
<i>Venez,</i>	come (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je vienne,</i>	that I may come.
<i>Que tu viennes,</i>	that thou mayst come.
<i>Qu'il vienne,</i>	that he may come.
<i>Que nous venions,</i>	that we may come.
<i>Que vous veniez,</i>	that you may come.
<i>Qu'ils viennent,</i>	that they may come.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je vinsse,</i>	that I might come.
<i>Que tu vinsses,</i>	that thou mightst come.
<i>Qu'il vînt,</i>	that he might come.
<i>Que nous vinssions,</i>	that we might come.
<i>Que vous vinssiez,</i>	that you might come.
<i>Qu'ils vinssent,</i>	that they might come.

145. Thus are conjugated *convenir*, to agree, to suit; *devenir*, to become; *parvenir*, to attain, to reach; *prévenir*, to anticipate, to prevent, to forewarn; *revenir*, to come again, to return; *se souvenir*, to remember, etc. (146.)

Vous ne serez pas fâché d'être venu,
you will not be sorry to have come.

The verb *être*, to be, is used here instead of *avoir*, to have.

146. There are about six hundred neuter verbs in French, of which about five hundred and fifty are conjugated in their compound tenses by means of the auxiliary verb *avoir*. Among the remainder, some take either *être* or *avoir* as an auxiliary, according to the sense in which they are used, as will be explained later; and the following invariably require *être*: *Aller*, to go; *arriver*, to arrive, to happen; *choir*, to fall; *décéder*, to de cease; *éclore*, to hatch; *mourir*, to die; *naître*, to be born; *tomber*, to fall; *venir*, to come; *devenir*, to become, to grow; *intervenir*, to intervene; *parvenir*, to reach, to succeed; *revenir*, to come back, to return. Observe, that not all the derivatives of *venir*, but only four of them, are included in this list.

DE BONNE HEURE, literally *of good hour*, is an idiomatic adverbial locution, which signifies *early*, or *betimes*.

RENDEZ-VOUS is a compound substantive, formed of the second person plural of the imperative of *rendre* and the pronoun *vous*; its literal sense is, *repair you*, or *betake yourself*.

Six heures du matin, six o'clock in the morning.

147. The distinction made in English between *hour* and *o'clock* has no equivalent in French: the word *heure* being used indifferently to express an interval of sixty minutes, or that moment of time which the clock indicates. In consequence, we render "*It is six o'clock*," by "*Il est six heures*," and "*He works six hours a day*," by "*Il travaille six heures par jour*."

JOURNÉE is one of the derivatives of *jour*, seen in the eighth lesson. These two words, *jour* and *journée*, are rendered in English by the same expression, *day*; but they are not perfectly synonymous. *Jour* is the general term for *day*, without reference to its duration. *Journée* defines the whole or full day. The same difference exists between *an* and *année*, year; *matin* and *matinée*, morning; *soir* and *soirée*, evening.

148. The termination *ée* in substantives commonly denotes the whole, the sum total of that which is expressed by the radical, as in *journée*, a whole day, from *jour*, day. This termination also corresponds in many substantives to the English termination *ful*, or *full*; as in *bouchée*, mouthful, from *bouche*,

mouth; *aiguillée*, needleful, from *aiguille*, needle; *assiettée*, plateful, from *assiette*, plate.

Apporter, to bring; *charger*, to charge; *passer*, to pass; and *prêter*, to lend, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *avertir*, to advise, to warn; and *fournir*, to furnish, are of the second. *Surprendre*, to surprise, has already been seen (133). *Connaître*, to know, to be acquainted with; and *rire*, to laugh, will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. I become, 145. | 16. I have become, 146. |
| 2. He becomes. | 17. He has become. |
| 3. We become. | 18. We have become. |
| 4. You become. | 19. You have become. |
| 5. They become. | 20. They have become. |
| 6. I became. | 21. I had become. |
| 7. He became. | 22. He had become. |
| 8. We became. | 23. We had become. |
| 9. You became. | 24. You had become. |
| 10. They became. | 25. They had become. |
| 11. I shall become. | 26. I shall have become. |
| 12. He shall become. | 27. He shall have become. |
| 13. We shall become. | 28. We shall have become. |
| 14. You shall become. | 29. You shall have become. |
| 15. They shall become. | 30. They shall have become. |

31. Our friends are in the boat.—32. What shall we propose to them? 136, 138.—33. Their parents have given them some good things, 137.—34. Your friend has forgotten his lesson.—35. We have lent a boat to your companions.—36. We have found the tradesman in the shop.—37. Come to-morrow.—38. Where has he gone? 146.—39. Your master has come, 146.—40. Have our friends come back? 146.—41. What o'clock is it? 147.—42. It is seven o'clock, 147.—43. At what o'clock shall you take your lesson? 147.—44. At eight o'clock, 147.—45. You will take a lesson of two hours, 147.

et demi, | ce qui | équivaut à trente et
 half which is equivalent thirty
une livres. Nous en vendîmes la moitié.
 pounds of it sold half
Je ne doute pas que nous ne réussissions
 doubt but succeed (subj.)
encore cette fois-ci."
 again here

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"For some hours, it is true, we had no result. But we had patience, and were amply rewarded for it; for we caught four large golden carps, an eel that was a meter, that is about three feet long, and so many gudgeons, bleaks, and small fry, that we filled a basket with them. We wanted to know the weight of our fish. The whole weighed fifteen kilograms and a half, which is equivalent to thirty-one pounds. We sold the half of it. I do not doubt but we shall succeed this time also."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la dix-septième.
Pendant combien de temps attendirent-ils sans voir rien venir ?	Pendant plusieurs heures.
Qu'est-ce qu'ils eurent ?	De la patience.
Comment leur patience fut-elle récompensée ?	Outre mesure.
Qu'est-ce qui fut récompensé outre mesure ?	Leur patience.
Combien de carpes pêchèrent-ils ?	Quatre.

* See notes on page 2.

Comment étaient les carpes qu'ils pêchèrent ?	Grosses et dorées.
Que pêchèrent-ils encore ?	Une anguille.
Quelle était la longueur de cette anguille ?	Un mètre, ou environ trois pieds.
Que pêchèrent-ils encore ?	Des goujons, des ablettes et du fretin.
Pêchèrent-ils beaucoup de goujons, d'ablettes et de fretin ?	Ils en pêchèrent tant, qu'ils en remplirent un panier.
Que désirèrent-ils savoir ?	Ils désirèrent savoir le poids de leur pêche.
Combien pesait le tout ?	Quinze kilogrammes et demi.
A quoi cela équivalait-il ?	A trente et une livres.
Que firent-ils de ce poisson ?	Ils en vendirent la moitié.
L'étourdi qui parlait à Alexis pensait-il réussir encore ?	Il n'en doutait pas.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Mon cher maître, voulez-vous me rendre un service ?	My dear master, will you do me a service ?
Avec grand plaisir, si c'est en mon pouvoir.	With great pleasure, if it is in my power.
De quoi est-il question ?	What is the matter ?
Je ne comprends rien du tout aux poids et aux mesures de France.	I understand nothing at all about the weights and measures of France.
Et vous voulez que je vous en donne l'explication ?	And you want me to give you an explanation of them ?
C'est cela même.	Exactly so.
Ce n'est pas très-facile.	It is not very easy.
Pourquoi donc ?	Why not ?
Parce que vous ne savez pas tous les mots qui me sont nécessaires pour me faire comprendre.	Because you do not know all the words which I require to make myself understood.
Cela ne fait rien.	That does not signify.

* See note on page 3.

Parlez toujours; je suis sûr de vous comprendre.	Speak nevertheless; I am sure to understand you.
Il y a tant de mots qui ont de la ressemblance entre eux dans les deux langues!	There are so many words which bear a resemblance to each other in the two languages!
Vous pouvez faire usage de quelques-uns de ces mots-là.	You can make use of some of those words.
Eh bien, comme vous voudrez.	Well, as you please.
D'abord, qu'est-ce que le mètre?	First, what is the meter?
C'est la dix millionième partie de la distance de l'équateur au pôle.	It is the ten millionth part of the distance from the equator to the pole.
A laquelle de nos mesures cela correspond-il?	To which of our measures does that correspond?
Au <i>yard</i> , mais c'est plus long d'un quart de pied environ.	To the yard, but it is longer by about a quarter of a foot.
Quelles sont les divisions du mètre?	What are the divisions of the meter?
Le décimètre, qui est la dixième partie du mètre.	The decimeter, which is the tenth part of the meter.
Le centimètre, qui en est la centième partie.	The centimeter, which is the hundredth part of it.
Et le millimètre, qui en est la millième partie.	And the millimeter, which is the thousandth part of it.
Quels sont les multiples du mètre?	What are the multiples of the meter?
Le décamètre, qui équivaut à dix mètres.	The decameter, which is ten meters.
L'hectomètre, ou cent mètres.	The hectometer, or a hundred meters.
Le kilomètre, ou mille mètres.	The kilometer, or a thousand meters.
Et le myriamètre, ou dix mille mètres.	And the myriameter, or ten thousand meters.
Une autre fois, nous parlerons des autres mesures.	Another time, we shall speak of the other measures.
En voilà assez pour aujourd'hui.	This is enough for to-day.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

DIX-SEPTIÈME, seventeenth, comes from *dix-sept*, seventeen.

149. The hyphen is used between two numbers, when the latter does not exceed nineteen. It is also used in *quatre-vingts*, eighty.

VÎMES is the first person plural of the past tense definite of *voir*, to see, one of the most important irregular French verbs.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Voir**, TO SEE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Voir, to see.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Voyant, seeing.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Vu, seen.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je vois,</i>	I see,	am seeing, or do see.
<i>Tu vois,</i>	thou seest,	art seeing, or dost see.
<i>Il voit,</i>	he sees,	is seeing, or does see.
<i>Nous voyons,</i>	we see,	are seeing, or do see.
<i>Vous voyez,</i>	you see,	are seeing, or do see.
<i>Ils voient,</i>	they see,	are seeing, or do see.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je voyais,</i>	I saw,	or was seeing.
<i>Tu voyais,</i>	thou sawest,	or wast seeing.
<i>Il voyait,</i>	he saw,	or was seeing.
<i>Nous voyions,</i>	we saw,	or were seeing.
<i>Vous voyiez,</i>	you saw,	or were seeing.
<i>Ils voyaient,</i>	they saw,	or were seeing.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je vis,</i>	I saw,	or did see.
<i>Tu vis,</i>	thou sawest,	or didst see.
<i>Il vit,</i>	he saw,	or did see.
<i>Nous vîmes,</i>	we saw,	or did see.
<i>Vous vîtes,</i>	you saw,	or did see.
<i>Ils virent,</i>	they saw,	or did see.

FUTURE.

<i>Je verrai,</i>	I shall see,	or will see.
<i>Tu verras,</i>	thou shalt see,	or wilt see.
<i>Il verra,</i>	he shall see,	or will see.
<i>Nous verrons,</i>	we shall see,	or will see.
<i>Vous verrez,</i>	you shall see,	or will see.
<i>Ils verront,</i>	they shall see,	or will see.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je verrais,</i>	I should see,	or would see.
<i>Tu verrais,</i>	thou shouldst see,	or wouldst see.
<i>Il verrait,</i>	he should see,	or would see.
<i>Nous verrions,</i>	we should see,	or would see.
<i>Vous verriez,</i>	you should see,	or would see.
<i>Ils verraient,</i>	they should see,	or would see.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Vois,</i>	see (thou).
<i>Voyons,</i>	let us see.
<i>Voyez,</i>	see (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je voie,</i>	that I may see.
<i>Que tu voies,</i>	that thou mayst see.
<i>Qu'il voie,</i>	that he may see.
<i>Que nous voyions,</i>	that we may see.
<i>Que vous voyiez,</i>	that you may see.
<i>Qu'ils voient,</i>	that they may see.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je visse,</i>	that I might see.
<i>Que tu visses,</i>	that thou mightst see.
<i>Qu'il vît,</i>	that he might see.
<i>Que nous vissions,</i>	that we might see.
<i>Que vous vissiez,</i>	that you might see.
<i>Qu'ils vissent,</i>	that they might see.

Thus are conjugated *entrevoir*, to see imperfectly, to have a glimpse of; *revoir*, to see again, etc.

NOUS FÛMES RÉCOMPENSÉS, we were rewarded, is a form of the passive verb *être récompensé*, to be rewarded.

150. **Passive verbs** are conjugated in both languages with the auxiliary verb **être**, to be; but in French, the past participle agrees, like the adjective, in gender and number with the word that suffers the action expressed.—Ex. *Je suis récompensé*, I am rewarded; *elle fut récompensée*, she was rewarded; *vous serez récompensés*, you will be rewarded; *elles seront récompensées*, they will be rewarded.

Mesure, measure.

151. The termination **ure** is common to about one hundred substantives which are the same, or very nearly the same, in both languages; as, *censure*, *créature*, *miniature*, *nature*, *stature*, *agriculture*; *littérature*, literature; *aventure*, adventure, etc.

152. The conjunction **car**, *for*, should not be confounded with the preposition **pour**, *for*, *in order to*, *instead of*; **car** means *for*, in the sense of *because*.

MÈTRE, meter, and **KILOGRAMME**, kilogram, are masculine by exception. A meter is a little more than a yard in length, and a kilogram about two pounds in weight.

153. In the system of weights, measures, and coins, now established in France, all the words in the nomenclature are masculine.

C'EST-À-DIRE is an adverbial expression, composed of words which have been seen already, and corresponding to *that is*, or *that is to say*.

Une anguille qui avait trois pieds de longueur,
an eel three feet long.

154. In English, the usual manner of expressing dimensions is to employ the verb *to be*, with the noun of measure *followed* by an adjective; as, *An eel which WAS three feet LONG.* In French, the verb *être* may also be employed, with the adjective and the preposition *DE* *preceding* the measure, thus: *Une anguille qui ÉTAIT LONGUE DE trois pieds*; but the construction with the verb *avoir* is more commonly used. The measure, as in the above example, immediately follows *avoir*, and precedes *de* and a substantive of dimension.

PIED has the same variety of acceptations as the English word *foot*; as, "*Les pieds d'un homme*, the feet of a man; *le pied d'une colline*, the foot of a hill; *long de trois pieds*, three feet long," etc.

Tant DE goujons, so many gudgeons.

155. **Beaucoup**, much, or many; **peu**, little, or few; **assez**, enough; **autant**, as much, or as many; **plus**, more; **moins**, less, or fewer; **combien**, how much, or how many; **trop**, too much, or too many; **tant**, so much, or so many; and all adverbs of quantity, require the preposition **de**, when placed before a substantive. This will explain why, in the first lesson, "How many times," is translated by "*Combien de fois.*"

Tant DE goujons, d'ablettes, et DE menu fretin,
so many gudgeons, bleaks, and small fry.

156. The preposition *DE* must be expressed before each noun after an adverb of quantity.

Trente et une livres, thirty-one pounds.

157. After *vingt*, twenty; *trente*, thirty; *quarante*, forty; *cinquante*, fifty; *soixante*, sixty; and *mille*, thousand, the numeral adjective *UN* requires the conjunction *ET* before it. *Onze*, eleven, requires it only after *soixante*. In any other combination of numbers, the conjunction *et* is not employed.

LIVRE, pound, is feminine, according to analogy; but this word means also *book*, and then it is masculine by exception.

158. There are a number of words which vary in meaning according to the gender in which they are used ; the most important are :

<i>un aigle</i> , an eagle ; a bird.	<i>une aigle</i> , a standard.
<i>un couple</i> , a man and his wife.	<i>une couple</i> , a brace, or pair.
<i>un livre</i> , a book.	<i>une livre</i> , a pound.
<i>un manche</i> , a handle.	<i>une manche</i> , a sleeve.
<i>un page</i> , an attendant at court	<i>une page</i> , a page (of a book).
<i>un somme</i> , a nap.	<i>une somme</i> , a sum.
<i>un souris</i> , a smile.	<i>une souris</i> , a mouse.
<i>un tour</i> , a turn.	<i>une tour</i> , a tower.
<i>un voile</i> , a veil.	<i>une voile</i> , a sail, etc.

159. It is chiefly on this account that nouns are seldom used in French without some determinative word to indicate in what particular gender they are used ; and *laziness* will, therefore, be translated by *la paresse*, and *tea* by *du thé*—literally, *some tea*, etc.

160. The determinative words are, *the*, *a* or *an*, *some*, *any* ; *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *our*, *your*, *their* ; *this*, *that*, *these*, *those* ; *which*, *what* ; *each*, *every*, *several*, *a few* ; and the numerals, *one*, *two*, *three*, etc.

161. When there is no determinative word in English, the one which may be introduced without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence has to be added in French.

Cette fois-ci, this time.

162. **Ci** is the abbreviation of *ici*, here. It is sometimes added to substantives which come after the demonstrative adjectives *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, and *ces*, as an expletive denoting nearness, in opposition to *là*, which marks remoteness ; as, *Cette fois-ci*, this time ; *cette fois-là*, that time. *Ci* and *là* are joined to the preceding word by a hyphen.

163. **Ci** and **là** are likewise added to the demonstrative pronouns, *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, and *celles*, thus : *Celui-ci*, this one ; *celui-là*, that one, etc.

Moitié, half, is feminine by exception.

Dorer, to gild ; *douter*, to doubt ; *peser*, to weigh ; and *récompenser*, to reward, are regular verbs of the first conjugation ;

remplir, to fill, and *réussir*, to succeed, are of the second; and *vendre*, to sell, of the third.

Dire, to say; *équivaloir*, to be equivalent; and *savoir*, to know, are irregular verbs, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. I do not see. | 18. These things are gilt. |
| 2. He does not see. | 19. Much time, 155. |
| 3. We do not see. | 20. Little commerce. |
| 4. You do not see. | 21. More genius. |
| 5. They do not see. | 22. Less art. |
| 6. I have not seen. | 23. As much paper. |
| 7. He has not seen. | 24. Too much fish. |
| 8. We have not seen. | 25. How much bread? |
| 9. You have not seen. | 26. Enough water. |
| 10. They have not seen. | 27. Many days. |
| 11. He is guided, 150. | 28. Few words. |
| 12. These boys are guided. | 29. More peaches. |
| 13. This paper is gilt. | 30. Fewer houses. |
| 14. These copy-books are gilt. | 31. As many masters. |
| 15. She is guided. | 32. Too many streets. |
| 16. These mothers are guided. | 33. How many shops? |
| 17. This grammar is gilt. | 34. Enough meat. |

35. Our lesson was finished at four o'clock, 150.—36. A pound is the half of a kilogram.—37. His sleeves are tucked up, 150.—38. His eye is animated, 150.—39. His savings are lost, 150.—40. The lesson is learned, 150.—41. His arms are crossed, 150.—42. His mother is very sorry.—43. The basket is weighed, 150.—44. The meat is weighed, 150.—45. The eels are weighed, 150.—46. Our lessons will not be forgotten, 150.—47. This book, or that book, 162.—48. This miniature, or that one, 151, 163.—49. A thing five feet long, 154.—50. Bread, 159, 160.—51. Meat, 159, 160.—52. Water, 159, 160.—53. His children are studious boys, 159, 160, 161.

pondaient-ils. “ Qu’importe, pourvu que
 swered matters provided

nous nous amusions ? ”

• amuse (subj.)

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

Another day, some apprentices of the neighborhood met together for the purpose of going to take a walk in the fields. "Halloo, comrade," exclaimed they, on perceiving Alexis, "you will come presently and take a turn with us, will you not? We will wait till you are ready. We will all start together—but make haste; be somewhat quicker than usual." "Where are you going?" inquired the latter. "We do not know," answered they. "What matters, provided we enjoy ourselves?"

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la dix-huitième.
Quand des apprentis du voisinage se réunissaient-ils ?	Un autre jour.
Quels étaient les jeunes gens qui se réunissaient un autre jour ?	Des apprentis du voisinage.
Pourquoi se réunissaient-ils ?	Pour aller se promener dans les champs.
Quand s'écriaient-ils : " Dites donc, camarade ? "	En apercevant Alexis.
Par quelle exclamation appelaient-ils l'attention d'Alexis.	Dites donc, camarade !
Que lui proposaient-ils ?	De faire un tour avec eux.
Que voulaient-ils attendre ?	Qu'Alexis fût prêt.
Comment voulaient-ils partir ?	Tous ensemble.
Que lui demandaient-ils ?	De se dépêcher et d'être un peu plus alerte que de coutume.
Que demandait Alexis ?	Où allez-vous ?
Que répondaient-ils ?	Nous n'en savons rien.
Que disaient-ils encore ?	Qu'importe, pourvu que nous nous amusions ?

* See notes on page 2.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Vous m'avez dit l'autre jour que nous reparlerions des poids et des mesures.

C'est vrai ; et je suis prêt à vous donner les explications que vous me demanderez.

Parlons aujourd'hui des poids, si vous le voulez bien.

J'attends vos questions.

Qu'est-ce qu'un kilogramme ?

C'est mille grammes.

Qu'est-ce qu'un gramme ?

C'est le poids d'un centimètre cube d'eau distillée.

Pourquoi distillée ?

Parce que le poids de l'eau distillée est invariable.

Un kilogramme est donc le poids d'un décimètre cube d'eau distillée ?

Précisément.

Auquel de nos poids le kilogramme équivaut-il ?

A un peu plus de deux livres.

L'autre jour, un homme demandait un pain de deux livres. Vous avez donc aussi des livres ?

La livre actuelle est seulement nominale : c'est une autre expression pour cinq cents grammes, ou un demi-kilogramme.

Quelles sont les subdivisions du gramme ?

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

You told me the other day that we should talk again of weights and measures.

It is true ; and I am ready to give you the explanations that you may require.

Let us talk of weights to-day, if you please.

I am ready to hear your questions.

What is a kilogram ?

It is a thousand grams.

What is a gram ?

It is the weight of a cubic centimeter of distilled water.

Why distilled ?

Because the weight of distilled water is invariable.

A kilogram is the weight of a cubic decimeter of distilled water, then ?

Exactly so.

To which of our weights does the kilogram correspond ?

It is a little more than two pounds.

The other day, a man asked for a two-pound loaf. Do you then make use of pounds also ?

The pound, at present, is only nominal : it is another expression for five hundred grams, or half a kilogram.

What are the subdivisions of the gram ?

* See note on page 3.

Le décigramme, le centigramme
et le milligramme.

Comprenez-vous ce que cela veut
dire ?

Oui, très-bien : la dixième, la
centième et la millième partie
du gramme.

Comment le savez-vous ?

Parce que vous m'avez parlé l'autre
jour du décimètre, du cen-
timètre et du millimètre.

Et comme vous m'avez dit tout à
l'heure que le kilogramme
équivalait à mille grammes, je
suppose que les autres multi-
ples sont : le décagramme,
l'hectogramme et le myria-
gramme.

C'est cela même.

Vous avez une excellente mé-
moire.

Je trouve qu'il y a une grande
simplicité dans votre système
métrique.

Oui. Et il y a aussi une grande
stabilité.

Comment cela ?

Nos mesures ayant pour base le
globe lui-même, il est impos-
sible qu'elles se perdent.

C'est vrai.

Mais il y a encore les mesures de
capacité, de superficie et de
solidité.

Ont-elles, comme les poids, le
mètre pour base ?

Oui, sans doute. Nous en parle-
rons un de ces jours.

The decigram, the centigram, and
the milligram.

Do you understand what these
mean ?

Yes, very well : the tenth, the
hundredth, and the thousandth
part of a gram.

How do you know that ?

Because you spoke to me the
other day of the decimeter, the
centimeter, and the millimeter.

And as you told me just now
that the kilogram is a thousand
grams, I suppose that the
other multiples are : the deca-
gram, the hectogram, and the
myriagram.

Just so.

You have an excellent memory.

I find great simplicity in your
metrical system.

Yes. And there is also great
stability in it.

How so ?

Our measures having the globe
itself for their basis, it is im-
possible they can be lost.

That is true.

But there are still the measures
of capacity, the superficial and
solid measures.

Are they, like the weights,
founded on the meter ?

Yes, undoubtedly. We shall
speak of them one of these
days.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

DIX-HUITIÈME, eighteenth, comes from *dix-huit*, eighteen.

Se réunissaient **pour** *aller*,
met together for the purpose of going.

164. IN ORDER TO, or TO, used in the sense of *in order to*, or *for the purpose of*, has to be rendered by **pour**.

Ex. Have you a knife to cut the bread? *Avez-vous un couteau pour couper le pain?*

ALLER is one of the most important irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Aller**, TO GO.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Aller, to go.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Allant, going.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Allé, gone.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je vais,</i>	I go,	am going, or do go.
<i>Tu vas,</i>	thou goest,	art going, or dost go.
<i>Il va,</i>	he goes,	is going, or does go.
<i>Nous allons,</i>	we go,	are going, or do go.
<i>Vous allez,</i>	you go,	are going, or do go.
<i>Ils vont,</i>	they go,	are going, or do go.

IMPERFECT.

<i>J'allais,</i>	I went,	or was going.
<i>Tu allais,</i>	thou wentest,	or wast going.
<i>Il allait,</i>	he went,	or was going.
<i>Nous allions,</i>	we went,	or were going.
<i>Vous alliez,</i>	you went,	or were going.
<i>Ils allaient,</i>	they went,	or were going.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>J'allai,</i>	I went,	or did go.
<i>Tu allas,</i>	thou wentest,	or didst go.
<i>Il alla,</i>	he went,	or did go.
<i>Nous allâmes,</i>	we went,	or did go.
<i>Vous allâtes,</i>	you went,	or did go.
<i>Ils allèrent,</i>	they went,	or did go.

FUTURE.

<i>J'irai,</i>	I shall go,	or will go.
<i>Tu iras,</i>	thou shalt go,	or wilt go.
<i>Il ira,</i>	he shall go,	or will go.
<i>Nous irons,</i>	we shall go,	or will go.
<i>Vous irez,</i>	you shall go,	or will go.
<i>Ils iront,</i>	they shall go,	or will go.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>J'irais,</i>	I should go,	or would go.
<i>Tu irais,</i>	thou shouldst go,	or wouldst go.
<i>Il irait,</i>	he should go,	or would go.
<i>Nous irions,</i>	we should go,	or would go.
<i>Vous iriez,</i>	you should go,	or would go.
<i>Ils iraient,</i>	they should go,	or would go.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Va,</i>	go (thou).
<i>Allons,</i>	let us go.
<i>Allez,</i>	go (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que j'aïlle,</i>	that I may go.
<i>Que tu aïlles,</i>	that thou mayst go.
<i>Qu'il aïlle,</i>	that he may go.
<i>Que nous allions,</i>	that we may go.
<i>Que vous alliez,</i>	that you may go.
<i>Qu'ils aïllent,</i>	that they may go.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que j'allasse,</i>	that I might go.
<i>Que tu allasses,</i>	that thou mightst go.
<i>Qu'il allât,</i>	that he might go.
<i>Que nous allussions,</i>	that we might go.
<i>Que vous allassiez,</i>	that you might go.
<i>Qu'ils allassent,</i>	that they might go.

165. This verb takes **être** instead of **avoir** in its compound tenses.

Ex. <i>Je suis allé,</i>	or <i>je suis allée,</i>	I have gone.
<i>Tu es allé,</i>	or <i>tu es allée,</i>	thou hast gone.
<i>Il est allé,</i>		he has gone.
<i>Elle est allée,</i>		she has gone.
<i>Nous sommes allés,</i>	or <i>nous sommes allées,</i>	we have gone.
<i>Vous êtes allés,</i>	or <i>vous êtes allées,</i>	you have gone.
<i>Ils sont allés,</i>	or <i>elles sont allées,</i>	they have gone.

DITES DONC is a familiar way of calling a person's attention to what you are going to say to him. It corresponds to the English expression, *I say!*

CAMARADE is applicable to persons of either sex, and is therefore of both genders.

166. The termination **ade** is found in about 150 substantives, a third of which have become English, some without any alteration; as, *Balustrade*, *barricade*, *cavalcade*, *brigade*, *arcade*, *parade*: and some presenting a slight difference; as, *Camarade*, comrade; *embuscade*, ambushade; *limonade*, lemonade; *mascarade*, masquerade.

S'ÉCRIAIENT is a form of the verb *s'écrire*, which is always pronominal.

167. Among the French pronominal verbs, some are accidentally so, and others are invariably conjugated with a double pronoun. The former are called *accidental*, and the latter *essential* pronominal verbs. The accidental pronominal verbs,

by taking this form, express that the same person is at once the subject and the object of the action ; as, “ *Il s'affranchit*, he freed himself :” or that the action is reciprocal ; as, “ *Nous nous aimons*, we love each other :” or they correspond to the English neuter form ; as, “ *Il se désolait*, he grieved ; *il se promenait*, he walked.” The number of these verbs is unlimited. As to the essential pronominal verbs, the most important are :

<i>S'abstenir</i> , to abstain.	<i>Se méfier</i> , to mistrust.
<i>S'adonner</i> , to give one's self, to apply one's self.	<i>Se méprendre</i> , to mistake.
<i>S'agenouiller</i> , to kneel.	<i>Se moquer</i> , to mock, to deride, to laugh.
<i>S'écrier</i> , to exclaim, to cry out.	<i>Se prosterner</i> , to prostrate one's self.
<i>S'écrouler</i> , to fall down, to fall to pieces.	<i>Se raviser</i> , to alter one's mind, to think better of it.
<i>S'emparer</i> , to take possession.	<i>Se réfugier</i> , to take refuge, to take shelter.
<i>S'empreser</i> , to hasten, be eager.	<i>Se repentir</i> , to repent.
<i>S'en aller</i> , to go away.	<i>Se ressouvenir</i> , to remember.
<i>S'enfuir</i> , to flee, to run away.	<i>Se souvenir</i> , to remember.
<i>S'évader</i> , to escape.	<i>Se soucier</i> , to care, to be con- cerned.
<i>S'évanouir</i> , to faint, to swoon, to vanish.	
<i>S'extasier</i> , to be in extasy.	

168. The following verbs, though not essentially pronominal, require a particular mention, on account of the different meaning which they acquire by being used in the pronominal form :

<i>Attendre</i> , to wait.	<i>Douter</i> , to doubt.
<i>S'attendre à</i> , to expect.	<i>Se douter</i> , to suspect.
<i>Carrer</i> , to square.	<i>Passer</i> , to pass.
<i>Se carrer</i> , to strut.	<i>Se passer de</i> , to do without.
<i>Défier</i> , to defy, to challenge.	<i>Plaindre</i> , to pity.
<i>Se défier</i> , to distrust.	<i>Se plaindre</i> , to complain.
<i>Dépêcher</i> , to dispatch.	<i>Servir</i> , to serve.
<i>Se dépêcher</i> , to make haste.	<i>Se servir</i> , to make use.
<i>Disputer</i> , to dispute.	<i>Taire</i> , to suppress, to conceal.
<i>Se disputer</i> , to quarrel.	<i>Se taire</i> , to be silent.

TOUT À L'HEURE is an adverbial expression which corresponds to *just now*, *presently*, and *by-and-by*. It refers to past time as well as to future time; as, "*Il est venu tout à l'heure*, he came just now; *il viendra tout à l'heure*, he will come presently."

Faire un tour, to take a turn.

169. The verb **faire** is commonly employed in phrases which denote that distance or space is gone over; as, "*Faire un pas*, to take a step; *faire un tour*, to take a turn, a trip; *faire une promenade*, to take a walk; *faire un voyage*, to perform a journey; *faire un mille à pied*, to walk a mile; *faire une lieue à cheval*, to ride a league."

N'est-ce pas? Is it not?

170. The interrogative form annexed to a proposition, in order to know whether it is assented to, varies in English according to the tense and person of the verb, and may be expressed in as many ways as there are different signs or auxiliary verbs. In French, this form is invariably *n'est-ce pas?* thus: "*Vous viendrez, n'est-ce pas?* you will come, will you not? *Vous ne viendrez pas, n'est-ce pas?* you will not come, will you? *Vous venez, n'est-ce pas?* you are coming, are you not? *Il n'est pas venu, n'est-ce pas?* he has not come, has he? *Il parlait bien, n'est-ce pas?* he spoke well, did he not? *Il ne serait pas chez lui, n'est-ce pas?* he would not be at home, would he?"

QU'IMPORTE? what matters? is a part of *importer*, to matter, to signify, an impersonal verb of the first conjugation.

The expression, **n'importe**, never mind, is an important derivative of this word.

Voisinage, neighborhood, is masculine by exception.

Se dépêcher, to make haste; *demander*, to ask; *s'écrier*, to exclaim; and *se promener*, to take a walk, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *se réunir*, to collect together, is of the second: *attendre*, to wait; and *répondre*, to answer, are of the third.

Apercevoir, to perceive; *dire*, to say; *partir*, to depart; and *savoir*, to know, are irregular verbs, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Do I go? | 16. I am going to speak. |
| 2. Does he go? | 17. He is going to be. |
| 3. Do we go? | 18. We are going to finish. |
| 4. Do you go? | 19. You are going to give. |
| 5. Do they go? | 20. They are going to do. |
| 6. I do not go. | 21. I was going to take. |
| 7. He does not go. | 22. He was going to see. |
| 8. We do not go. | 23. We were going to run. |
| 9. You do not go. | 24. You were going to touch. |
| 10. They do not go. | 25. They were going to think. |
| 11. Do I not go? | 26. I am not going to pass. |
| 12. Does he not go? | 27. He is not going to ask. |
| 13. Do we not go? | 28. We are not going to answer. |
| 14. Do you not go? | 29. You are not going to find. |
| 15. Do they not go? | 30. They are not going to lose. |

31. They speak, to exercise themselves, 164.—32. I have come to see you, 164.—33. We are going into the fields, to take a walk, 164.—34. She was studying her lesson, was she not? 170.—35. They have not forgotten us, have they? 170.—36. We have learned many words, have we not? 170.—37. Your comrades like you, do they not? 170.—38. We shall sell our boat.—39. We shall divert ourselves, 167.—40. I shall finish this story another day.—41. If we are not victorious, we shall perish together.—42. Amuse yourselves, my dear children.—43. Weigh your bread and your meat.—44. Lend me your dictionary.—45. Have you gone? 165.—46. I have gone, 165.—47. She had gone, 165.—48. She would have gone, 165.—49. These ladies have gone, 165.

NINETEENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Dix-neuvième leçon.

Nineteenth

“**Nous courrons, nous sauterons, nous**
 shall run shall leap
jouerons aux barres, au cheval fondu et
 shall play prisoners' base horse melted
à d'autres jeux. Garnissez vos poches,
 games Stock pockets
si vous le pouvez. Si vous n'avez pas
 can have
d'argent, | n'importe | ; suivez-nous tou-
 money no matter follow
jours et n'ayez aucun souci du reste.”
 have care rest

Toutes les invitations du même genre
 invitations kind
étaient joyeusement acceptées, en quelque
 joyfully accepted whatever
moment qu'elles arrivassent, quelque
 arrived (subj.) however
inopportunes qu'elles fussent, quelques
 untimely were (subj.) whatever

* See 1st note on page 187

** See 2d note on page 117.

pressantes occupations qu'elles interrom-
 pressing occupations inter-

pissent, quelques inconvénients qu'elles
 rupted (subj.) whatever inconveniences

eussent, et | quels que | fussent ceux qui
 had (subj.) whoever were those

les faisaient, pourvu qu'ils eussent l'air
 them made had air

de bons enfants.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

“ We shall run and jump and play at prisoners' base, at leap frog, and other games. Line your pockets, if you can. If you have no money, it matters not; come with us, and never mind the rest.”

All invitations of the same kind were joyfully accepted, at whatever moment they might arrive, however untimely they might be, whatever pressing occupations they might interrupt, whatever inconveniences might attend them, and whoever they might be who made them, provided they looked like good fellows.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la dix-neuvième.
Que feront les camarades d'Alexis ?	Ils courront, ils sauteront, ils joueront.
A quels jeux joueront-ils ?	Aux barres, au cheval fondu et à d'autres jeux.
Qu'est-ce que c'est que le cheval fondu ?	C'est un jeu.

* See notes on page 2.

Quelle recommandation les apprentis faisaient-ils à Alexis ?
 Était-il indispensable qu'il eût de l'argent ?

Que lui disaient-ils encore ?

Comment toutes les invitations du même genre étaient-elles acceptées ?

Qu'est-ce qui était joyeusement accepté ?

En quel moment étaient-elles joyeusement acceptées ?

Ces invitations étaient-elles toujours opportunes ?

Étaient-elles acceptées de même, quand elles étaient inopportunes ?

Qu'est-ce que ces invitations interrompaient quelquefois ?

Comment étaient-elles reçues, quand elles avaient des inconvénients ?

Acceptait-il ces invitations quels que fussent ceux qui les faisaient ?

De garnir ses poches, s'il le pouvait.

Non ; car les apprentis lui disaient : " Si vous n'avez pas d'argent, n'importe."

" Suivez-nous toujours, et n'ayez aucun souci du reste."

Elles étaient joyeusement acceptées.

Toutes les invitations du même genre.

En quelque moment qu'elles arrivassent.

Non. Elles étaient quelquefois inopportunes.

Oui ; quelque inopportunes qu'elles fussent.

Elles interrompaient de pressantes occupations.

Elles étaient joyeusement acceptées, quelques inconvénients qu'elles eussent.

Oui, pourvu qu'ils eussent l'air de bons enfants.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Avez-vous encore des explications à me demander sur le système métrique ?

Oui, certainement. Et d'abord sur les mesures en usage pour les liquides, les grains, et cætera.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

Have you any more explanations to ask me on the metrical system ?

To be sure, I have. And firstly, on the measures used for liquids, grains, and so forth.

* See note on page 3.

Nous les appelons mesures de capacité.	We call them measures of capacity.
C'est comme chez nous.	It is the same in our country.
L'unité de mesure est le litre.	The unity of measure is the liter.
C'est un décimètre cube.	It is a cubic decimeter.
A laquelle de nos mesures cela équivaut-il ?	To which of our measures does that correspond ?
A environ deux pintes.	To about two pints.
Ou, plus exactement, à une pinte et trois quarts.	Or, more exactly, to a pint and three quarters.
Je ne vous demande pas la dénomination des autres mesures de capacité : je la trouverai tout seul.	I do not ask you to tell me the names of the other measures of capacity : I shall find them out by myself.
Un de mes amis a un champ de deux hectares ; combien d'acres cela fait-il ?	A friend of mine has a field of two hectares ; how many acres does that make ?
Environ cinq acres.	About five acres.
Je suppose que le mot hectare est pour <i>hectoare</i> , c'est-à-dire cent ares.	I suppose that the word hectare is for <i>hectoare</i> , that is one hundred <i>ares</i> .
Vous avez raison : l'are est l'unité des mesures de superficie.	You are right : the <i>are</i> is the unity of superficial measures.
Un are est une surface de cent mètres carrés.	An <i>are</i> is a surface of one hundred square meters.
Je ne comprends pas le mot <i>carrés</i> .	I do not understand the word <i>carrés</i> .
Le carré est une surface limitée par quatre lignes de la même longueur, formant quatre angles pareils.	The square is a surface limited by four lines of the same length, forming four similar angles.
Cette feuille de papier a quatre angles pareils : est-elle carrée ?	This sheet of paper has four similar angles : is it square ?
Non, pas exactement ; parce que ses quatre bords ne sont pas de la même longueur.	No, not exactly ; because its four sides are not of the same length.
Quelle est l'unité de mesure pour les solides ?	What is the unity of solid measures ?
Le stère, ou le mètre cube.	The stere, or cubic meter.
N'avons-nous rien oublié ?	Have we forgotten nothing ?
Nous n'avons pas parlé de la monnaie.	We have not spoken of coins.

Comprenez-vous le mot *monnaie* ?

Oui, par sa ressemblance avec notre mot *money*.

Le franc est l'unité.

C'est une pièce d'argent du poids de cinq grammes.

A quoi cela équivaut-il ?

A vingt sous.

Y a-t-il des décifrancs, des décafrancs et des centifrancs ?

Non, ces dénominations ne sont pas en usage.

Les subdivisions du franc sont appelées centimes.

Un centime est le centième d'un franc.

Il y a des pièces de cinq centimes, ou des sous.

Il y a des pièces de dix, de vingt et de cinquante centimes.

Il y a aussi des pièces de deux francs et de cinq francs.

De quel métal sont-elles faites ?

D'argent.

N'avez-vous pas de pièces d'or ?

Nous avons des pièces de dix francs, de vingt francs et de quarante francs.

Je vous suis bien obligé de vos explications.

Do you understand the word *monnaie* ?

Yes, from its resemblance to our word *money*.

The franc is the unity.

It is a piece of silver weighing five grams.

What is it equivalent to ?

To twenty cents, or sous.

Are there any decifrancs, decifrancs, and centifrancs ?

No, these denominations are not used.

The subdivisions of the franc are called centimes.

A centime is the hundredth part of a franc.

There are pieces of five centimes, or sous.

There are pieces of ten, twenty, and fifty centimes.

And there are pieces of two francs and of five francs.

What metal are they made of ?

Of silver.

Have you no pieces of gold ?

We have pieces of ten, twenty, and forty francs.

I am much obliged to you for your explanations.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

DIX-NEUVIÈME, nineteenth, comes from *dix-neuf*, nineteen.

NOUS COURRONS, we shall run, is the first person plural of the future tense of *courir*, to run, one of the most important irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Courir**, TO RUN.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Courir, to run.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Courant, running.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Couru, run.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je cours,</i>	I run,	am running, or do run.
<i>Tu cours,</i>	thou runnest,	art running, or dost run.
<i>Il court,</i>	he runs,	is running, or does run.
<i>Nous courons,</i>	we run,	are running, or do run.
<i>Vous courez,</i>	you run,	are running, or do run.
<i>Ils courent,</i>	they run,	are running, or do run.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je courais,</i>	I ran,	or was running.
<i>Tu courais,</i>	thou rannest,	or wast running.
<i>Il courait,</i>	he ran,	or was running.
<i>Nous courions,</i>	we ran,	or were running.
<i>Vous couriez,</i>	you ran,	or were running.
<i>Ils couraient,</i>	they ran,	or were running.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je courus,</i>	I ran,	or did run.
<i>Tu courus,</i>	thou rankest,	or didst run.
<i>Il courut,</i>	he ran,	or did run.
<i>Nous courûmes,</i>	we ran,	or did run.
<i>Vous courûtes,</i>	you ran,	or did run.
<i>Ils coururent,</i>	they ran,	or did run.

FUTURE.

<i>Je courrai,</i>	I shall run,	or will run.
<i>Tu courras,</i>	thou shalt run,	or wilt run.
<i>Il courra,</i>	he shall run,	or will run.
<i>Nous courrons,</i>	we shall run,	or will run.
<i>Vous courrez,</i>	you shall run,	or will run.
<i>Ils courront,</i>	they shall run,	or will run.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je courrais,</i>	I should run,	or would run.
<i>Tu courrais,</i>	thou shouldst run,	or wouldst run.
<i>Il courrait,</i>	he should run,	or would run.
<i>Nous courrions,</i>	we should run,	or would run.
<i>Vous courriez,</i>	you should run,	or would run.
<i>Ils courraient,</i>	they should run,	or would run.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Cours,</i>	run (thou).
<i>Courons,</i>	let us run.
<i>Courez,</i>	run (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je coure,</i>	that I may run.
<i>Que tu coures,</i>	that thou mayst run.
<i>Qu'il coure,</i>	that he may run.
<i>Que nous courions,</i>	that we may run.
<i>Que vous couriez,</i>	that you may run.
<i>Qu'ils courent,</i>	that they may run.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je courusse,</i>	that I might run.
<i>Que tu courusses,</i>	that thou mightst run.
<i>Qu'il courût,</i>	that he might run.
<i>Que nous courussions,</i>	that we might run.
<i>Que vous courussiez,</i>	that you might run.
<i>Qu'ils courussent,</i>	that they might run.

171. Thus are conjugated *accourir*, to run up; *concourir*, to concur, to compete; *discourir*, to discourse; *encourir*, to incur; *parcourir*, to go over, to run over; *recourir*, to run again, to recur; *secourir*, to succor, to relieve, to help, etc.

Nous courrons, nous sauterons, nous jouerons.

172. It would not be incorrect to say, "*Nous courrons, sauterons, jouerons,*" etc. The repetition of the subject pronoun depends rather on the taste of the speaker than on any precise rule. Yet it may be stated, in a general way, that the repetition of the pronoun is more frequent in French than in English.

CHEVAL FONDU, literally *horse-melted*, is an idiomatic expression, signifying *leap-frog*.

Si vous n'avez pas d'argent, if you have no money.

173. **Pas**, when used in the sense of *no*, or *not any*, is an adverb of quantity, and requires **de** before the noun placed after it. (155.)

174. **N'IMPORTE**, being in frequent use, and giving rise to several idiomatic locutions, requires a particular mention. It is the negative form of *il importe*, it is important, the third person singular of the present tense of *importer*, to be important, a verb which, in this sense, is only used in the infinitive or in the third person singular, with the impersonal pronoun *il*. *N'importe* means, *no matter, never mind, it does not signify*. Its principal combinations are: *N'importe lequel*, no matter which, be it which it may; *n'importe où*, anywhere; *n'importe quand*, at any time; *n'importe qui*, any one, whoever you like; *n'importe quoi*, no matter what.

En quelque moment qu'elles arrivassent,
at whatever moment they might arrive.

175. **Quelque**, followed by **que**, corresponds to *whatever* and *however*.

Pressantes occupations, pressing occupations.

176. When the present participle is used as an adjective, it follows the rule of the adjective, and agrees in gender and number with the noun which it qualifies. (40, 85.)

Ceux *qui les faisaient*, those who made them.

177. The demonstrative pronoun **THESE**, or **THOSE**, is translated by **ceux** for the masculine, and by **celles** for the feminine. This completes the study of the demonstrative pronoun in French.

Masculine.	Feminine.	
Celui,	celle,	<i>this, or that.</i>
Ceux,	celles,	<i>these, or those.</i>

Each of these pronouns is susceptible of being made to indicate more particularly the proximity or remoteness of the object referred to, by the addition of **ci** or **là**.—Ex. *Celui-ci*, this one; *celui-là*, that one.

Ceci, *this*, and **cela**, *that*, are but modifications of **ce**, *it, this, or that*, seen before. They have no plural, and do not refer to a word expressed before, but serve only to point out objects.—Ex. *Vous voyez ceci*, you see this; *cela est beau*, that is fine.

QU'ILS EUSSENT L'AIR is a part of the verb *avoir l'air*—literally, to have the air; which signifies, to look, to look like, to seem.

Genre, kind, and *reste*, rest, are masculine by exception.

Enfant is of both genders: masculine, when referring to a male child, and feminine, when speaking of a female one.

Accepter, to accept; *arriver*, to arrive; *jouer*, to play; *presser*, to press; and *sauter*, to jump, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *garnir*, to stock, is of the second: *fonder*, to melt; and *interrompre*, to interrupt, are of the third.

Pouvoir, to be able; and *suivre*, to follow, are irregular verbs, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. I run up, 171. | 12. I relieve, 171. | |
| 2. He runs up. | 13. He relieves. | |
| 3. We run up. | 14. We relieve. | |
| 4. You run up. | 15. You relieve. | |
| 5. They run up. | 16. They relieve. | |
| 6. I ran up. | 17. I relieved. | |
| 7. I shall run up. | 18. I shall relieve. | |
| 8. I should run up. | 19. I should relieve. | |
| 9. Let us run up. | 20. Let us relieve. | |
| 10. Run up. | 21. Relieve. | |
| 11. I have run up. | 22. I have relieved. | |
| 23. The boys. | 29. The months. | 35. The boats. |
| 24. The men. | 30. The days. | 36. The cakes. |
| 25. The elbows. | 31. The fires. | 37. The generals. |
| 26. The sons. | 32. The arms. | 38. The metals. |
| 27. The times. | 33. The noses. | 39. The crystals. |
| 28. Some ideas. | 34. Some houses. | 40. Some things. |

41. Come and see the generals.—42. The children were playing with the animals.—43. The tradesmen have sold all their provisions, 55.—44. Have you heard his question?—45. Finish that story.—46. Sell me your horse.—47. He has no comrades, 173.—48. We have no meat; but no matter, we have some bread, 173, 174.—49. They do not study, because they have no dictionaries, 173.—50. You will play with them.—51. He has no occupation, 173.—52. Have you any occupation?—53. They have money, but they have no bread, 173.—54. Have you any books?—55. No; we have no books, 173.—56. Has she any friends?—57. No; she has no friends, 173.—58. Has he any patience?—59. No; he has no patience, 173.—60. They will make you laugh.—61. She has received two very pressing invitations, 176.

TWENTIETH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingtième leçon.

Twentieth

| Il y avait, | parmi les anciennes con-
 There was among old ac-
 naissances d'Alexis, un étudiant austère
 acquaintances student austere
 et froid, qui le sermonnait de temps en
 cold lectured
 temps, et qui, la dernière fois qu'ils se
 last each other
 rencontrèrent, lui tint | à peu près | ce
 met held nearly
 langage : "Croyez-moi, cher condisciple :
 language Believe fellow-student
 fuyez les flatteuses séductions de cette
 shun flattering seductions
 compagnie frivole et corruptrice. Quand
 company frivolous corrupting Though
 même vous auriez de la fortune, vous
 even should have
 seriez à blâmer de ne songer qu'à boire,
 would be to blame to dream drink
 à manger, à dormir et à tuer le temps,
 eat sleep kill

* See 1st note on page 187.

** See 2d note on page 117.

sans rien faire de profitable. Vous finirez
profitable will finish
par vous lasser de cette vie dissipée, et
to tire life dissipated
vous en reconnaîtrez le vide ; mais ne
of it will acknowledge empty (emptiness)
sera-t-il pas trop tard ? ”
will be late

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

There was, among the old acquaintances of Alexis, an austere and frigid student, who lectured him now and then, and who, the last time they met, spoke to him nearly as follows : “ Take my advice, dear fellow-student, shun the enticements of that frivolous and corrupting society. Even though you were wealthy, still you would be to blame to think of nothing but eating and drinking, and sleeping and killing time, without doing any thing profitable. You will at last get tired of this life of dissipation, and you will acknowledge the futility of it ; but will it not be too late ? ”

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la vingtième.
Qui est-ce qui sermonnait Alexis ?	Un étudiant.
Quand le sermonnait-il ?	De temps en temps.
Quel était le caractère de cet étudiant ?	Il était austère et froid.
Était-ce un ami d'Alexis ?	C'était une de ses anciennes connaissances.
Que faisait-il de temps en temps ?	Il sermonnait Alexis.
Quand lui dit-il : “ Croyez-moi, cher condisciple ? ”	La dernière fois qu'ils se rencontrèrent.
Comment appelait-il Alexis ?	Cher condisciple.

* See notes on page 2.

Que pensait-il de la compagnie que fréquentait Alexis ?	Que c'était une compagnie frivole et corruptrice.
Avec quelles expressions lui parlait-il de cette compagnie ?	"Fuyez les flatteuses séductions de cette compagnie frivole et corruptrice."
De quoi un homme serait-il à blâmer, quand même il aurait de la fortune ?	Il serait à blâmer de ne songer qu'à boire, à manger, à dormir et à tuer le temps, sans rien faire de profitable.
Comment l'étudiant parla-t-il de la vie dissipée d'Alexis ?	"Vous finirez par vous lasser de cette vie dissipée, et vous en reconnaîtrez le vide ; mais ne sera-t-il pas trop tard ?"

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Que pensez-vous de cette histoire ?	What do you think of this story ?
De quelle histoire voulez-vous parler ?	What story do you mean ?
De celle d'Alexis Delatour.	This of Alexis Delatour.
Faut-il vous parler franchement ?	Must I speak frankly ?
Oui, sans doute.	Yes, undoubtedly.
Je ne la trouve pas fort amusante.	I do not find it very amusing.
Quel défaut y trouvez-vous ?	What fault do you find with it ?
D'abord, il n'y a guère d'incidents.	Firstly, there are but few incidents.
C'est vrai.	It is true.
A tout moment la narration est interrompue par des réflexions et des conversations.	At every moment the narration is interrupted by reflections and conversations.
Vous avez raison.	You are right.
Nous serions plus attentifs si l'histoire était plus attrayante.	We should be more attentive if the story were more attractive.
Avez-vous d'autres observations à faire ?	Have you any other observations to make ?

* See note on page 3.

Je pense que c'est bien assez.

Je suis forcé de dire d'abord que vos observations sont très-justes.

Cela me fait plaisir.

Mais soyez assez bon pour répondre à quelques questions.

Je suis prêt à vous entendre et à vous répondre.

Où avez-vous appris les mots que vous venez de prononcer ?

Dans l'histoire d'Alexis.

Quand je vous parle, vous comprenez tous les mots que je prononce, n'est-ce pas ?

Oui, monsieur.

Et quand vous avez quelque chose à dire, vous trouvez des expressions pour rendre votre pensée ?

Pas toujours ; mais souvent.

Où avez-vous appris toutes ces expressions ?

Dans l'histoire d'Alexis.

S'il n'y avait pas de conversations dans cette histoire, croyez-vous qu'il vous serait possible de trouver tant d'expressions ?

Je ne le pense pas.

Dans une conversation, l'on parle à la première et à la seconde personne.

Dans une narration non interrompue, nous n'apprendrions que la troisième personne.

Et nous n'aurions les verbes qu'au passé.

Voilà ce qui fait que cette histoire n'est pas très-amusante.

Mais nous avons une compensation.

I think it is quite enough.

I am forced to say first that your observations are very right.

I am glad to hear it.

But be kind enough to answer me a few questions.

I am ready to hear and to answer you.

Where have you learned the words that you have just pronounced ?

In the story of Alexis.

When I speak to you, you understand every word I pronounce, don't you ?

Yes, sir.

And when you have something to say, you find expressions to render your thought ?

Not always ; but often I do.

Where have you learned all these expressions ?

In the story of Alexis.

If there were no conversations in this story, do you believe it would be possible for you to find so many expressions ?

I do not believe it would.

In a conversation, we speak in the first and second persons.

In an uninterrupted narration, we should learn but the third person.

And we should have the verbs but in the past tense.

That is why this story is not very amusing.

But we have a compensation.

Nous pouvons nous entendre en français.	We can understand each other in French.
A partir de la vingt et unième leçon, je ne vous parlerai plus anglais.	From the twenty-first lesson, I shall no longer speak English to you.
Et vous croyez que nous vous comprendrons ?	And do you believe that we shall understand you ?
J'en suis sûr.	I am sure of it.
Vous savez assez de mots pour cela.	You know words enough for that.
Voyez quelle longue conversation nous avons eue aujourd'hui !	See what a long conversation we have had to-day !

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

VINGTIÈME, twentieth, comes from *vingt*, twenty.

CONNAISSANCE, seen in the fifth lesson translated by *knowledge*, signifies *acquaintance* in this one. It is used to express either male or female acquaintance ; but whether it refers to males or females, it remains feminine ; and in speaking of a man, we say, "*C'est UNE de mes connaissances.*"

DE TEMPS EN TEMPS is an adverbial expression corresponding to *now and then, every now and then, ever and anon.*

ILS SE RENCONTRÈRENT, *they met each other*, is a pronominal verb, denoting *reciprocity*.

178. The idea of a reciprocal or mutual action, expressed in English by adding the pronouns *each other* or *one another* to the verb, is rendered in French by means of two pronouns of the same person—*nous nous, vous vous, ils se*, placed before the verb ; that is, by the pronominal form, which is likewise employed with reflective verbs ; the only difference being that reciprocal verbs of course are only used in the plural number. *Nous nous aimons—Vous vous voyez—Ils se blâment*, may consequently mean, *We love each other, or, we love ourselves—You*

see each other, or, you see yourselves—*They blame each other, or, they blame themselves.* When the rest of the construction does not clearly show the sense, ambiguity is avoided by the addition of the pronouns *l'un l'autre, les uns les autres*, when the action is reciprocal; and *nous-mêmes, vous-mêmes, eux-mêmes, elles-mêmes*, when it is reflective.

A **PEU-PRÈS** is an adverbial expression, signifying *nearly, almost, or pretty much.*

Croyez-moi, believe me.

179 In the Imperative mood, **moi** is used instead of **me**, after the verb, when the phrase is not negative. *Do not believe me*, would be translated regularly by *ne me croyez pas*. This completes the study of the objective pronouns of the first person singular. **ME**, or **TO ME**, generally rendered by **me** put before the verb, is translated by **moi** placed after it in Imperative affirmative sentences; as, *Donnez-moi*, give me. When used isolately, that is to say, chiefly after **que**, meaning *as, than, only*, or **c'est**, *it is*, **ME** is invariably translated by **moi**, and **TO ME**, by **à moi**.

Quand même vous auriez de la fortune,
even though you had fortune.

180. When **QUAND** signifies *though, although*, it is always followed by a verb in the conditional mood.

Vous seriez à blâmer, you would be **TO BLAME**.

181. In this particular example, the construction is the same in both languages. In French, this construction is perfectly regular; but in English, it is exceptional, the passive form being the usual corresponding construction, as will be seen by the following examples :

Il est à PLAINDRE.

He is TO BE PITIED.

Fautes à CORRIGER.

Faults TO BE CORRECTED.

C'est une chose à VOIR.

It is a thing TO BE SEEN.

Il y a quelque chose à FAIRE. *There is something TO BE DONE.*

BOIRE, to drink, is one of the most important irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Boire**, TO DRINK.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Boire, to drink.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Buvant, drinking.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Bu, drunk.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je bois,</i>	I drink,	am drinking, or do drink.
<i>Tu bois,</i>	thou drinkest,	art drinking, or dost drink.
<i>Il boit,</i>	he drinks,	is drinking, or does drink.
<i>Nous buvons,</i>	we drink,	are drinking, or do drink.
<i>Vous buvez,</i>	you drink,	are drinking, or do drink.
<i>Ils boivent,</i>	they drink,	are drinking, or do drink.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je buvais,</i>	I drank,	or was drinking.
<i>Tu buvais,</i>	thou drankest,	or wast drinking.
<i>Il buvait,</i>	he drank,	or was drinking.
<i>Nous buvions,</i>	we drank,	or were drinking.
<i>Vous buviez,</i>	you drank,	or were drinking.
<i>Ils buvaient,</i>	they drank,	or were drinking.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je bus,</i>	I drank,	or did drink.
<i>Tu bus,</i>	thou drankest,	or didst drink.
<i>Il but,</i>	he drank,	or did drink.
<i>Nous bûmes,</i>	we drank,	or did drink.
<i>Vous bûtes,</i>	you drank,	or did drink.
<i>Ils burent,</i>	they drank,	or did drink.

FUTURE.

<i>Je boirai,</i>	I shall drink,	or will drink.
<i>Tu boiras,</i>	thou shalt drink,	or wilt drink.
<i>Il boira,</i>	he shall drink,	or will drink.
<i>Nous boirons,</i>	we shall drink,	or will drink.
<i>Vous boirez,</i>	you shall drink,	or will drink.
<i>Ils boiront,</i>	they shall drink,	or will drink.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je boirais,</i>	I should drink,	or would drink.
<i>Tu boirais,</i>	thou shouldst drink,	or wouldst drink.
<i>Il boirait,</i>	he should drink,	or would drink.
<i>Nous boirions,</i>	we should drink,	or would drink.
<i>Vous boiriez,</i>	you should drink,	or would drink.
<i>Ils boiraient,</i>	they should drink,	or would drink.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Bois,</i>	drink (thou).
<i>Buvons,</i>	let us drink.
<i>Buvez,</i>	drink (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je boive,</i>	that I may drink.
<i>Que tu boives,</i>	that thou mayst drink.
<i>Qu'il boive,</i>	that he may drink.
<i>Que nous buvions,</i>	that we may drink.
<i>Que vous buviez,</i>	that you may drink.
<i>Qu'ils boivent,</i>	that they may drink.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je busse,</i>	that I might drink.
<i>Que tu busses,</i>	that thou mightst drink.
<i>Qu'il bût,</i>	that he might drink.
<i>Que nous bussions,</i>	that we might drink. *
<i>Que vous bussiez,</i>	that you might drink.
<i>Qu'ils bussent,</i>	that they might drink.

Sans rien faire de profitable,
without doing any thing profitable.

182. The preposition **de** must be prefixed to an adjective which follows **rien, quelque chose,** and **que.**

Ex. *Qu'avez-vous de beau?* what have you fine?

Je n'ai rien de beau, mais j'ai quelque chose de vilain,
I have nothing fine, but I have something ugly.

LE VIDE, the emptiness, is derived from the adjective *vide*, void, empty. It is masculine.

183. Words which, without being nouns, are accidentally used as such, are masculine. This completes the study of the gender of French nouns.

184. Names of males are masculine, and names of females feminine; but the inanimate objects are classified according to their termination, those ending with an unaccented **e**, **eur**, **ion**, **té**, being feminine, and those ending otherwise, masculine.

The exceptional words likely to occur in ordinary conversation are comparatively few, and will be explained as they occur in the text.

185. Those already seen will be found in the following lists :

Are masculine, though ending with an unaccented <i>e</i> .		Are feminine, though ending otherwise.	
<i>Age.</i>	<i>Doute.</i>	<i>Personnage.</i>	<i>Eau.</i>
<i>Avantage.</i>	<i>Exemple.</i>	<i>Proverbe.</i>	<i>Fois.</i>
<i>Caractère.</i>	<i>Génie.</i>	<i>Reste.</i>	<i>Main.</i>
<i>Commerce.</i>	<i>Genre.</i>	<i>Saule.</i>	<i>Maison.</i>
<i>Condisciple.</i>	<i>Kilogramme.</i>	<i>Service.</i>	<i>Moitié.</i>
<i>Coude.</i>	<i>Langage.</i>	<i>Vice.</i>	<i>Plupart.</i>
<i>Dictionnaire.</i>	<i>Mètre.</i>	<i>Voisinage.</i>	<i>Raison.</i>

To these might be added the words which, without being nouns, are accidentally used as such (183), and those which are masculine in one acceptation, and feminine in another; as,

<i>Un enfant,</i>	a male child.	<i>Une enfant,</i>	a female child.
<i>Un camarade,</i>	a boy.	<i>Une camarade,</i>	a girl.
<i>Un livre,</i>	a book.	<i>Une livre,</i>	a pound.
<i>Un manche,</i>	a handle.	<i>Une manche,</i>	a sleeve, etc. (158.)

FLATTEUSES is the feminine plural of *flatteur*, *flatteuse*, flattering, one of the few adjectives which form their feminine irregularly.

186. Adjectives ending in **eur** have their feminine in **euse**, when they can be derived from a present participle by changing

the termination *ant* into *eur*.—Ex. *Flatteur*, *flatteuse*, flattering, from *flattant*, present participle of *flatter*, to flatter.

Blâmer, to blame; *dissiper*, to dissipate; *lasser*, to tire; *manger*, to eat; *profiter*, to profit; *songer*, to dream; *tuer*, to kill; *rencontrer*, to meet; and *sermonner*, to sermonize, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *croire*, to believe; *dormir*, to sleep; *fuir*, to flee; *reconnaître*, to recognize; and *tenir*, to hold, are irregular. They will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Do I drink? | 8. We have not drunk. | |
| 2. Does he drink? | 9. You have not drunk. | |
| 3. Do we drink? | 10. They have not drunk. | |
| 4. Do you drink? | 11. Do not drink. | |
| 5. Do they drink? | 12. Let us not drink. | |
| 6. I have not drunk. | 13. I shall not drink. | |
| 7. He has not drunk. | 14. I should not drink. | |
| 15. The moment. | 20. The question. | 25. The morning. |
| 16. The horse. | 21. The foot. | 26. The river. |
| 17. The basket. | 22. The net. | 27. The meat. |
| 18. The pocket. | 23. The liberty. | 28. The bread. |
| 19. The peach. | 24. The society. | 29. The thing. |

30. They love each other, 178.—31. Do you understand the French actors when they play? 133.—32. Give me some bread and some water, 156.—33. Do not give me any meat, 173.—34. Do you know any thing new? 182.—35. No; we know nothing new, 182.—36. We shall eat something good, 182.—37. There is something agreeable in this production, 182.—38. What do you drink?—39. I drink water, 159.—40. What are you doing?—41. We are amusing ourselves.—42. I accept your flattering invitation, 186.—43. Something useful, 182.—44. Something old, 182.—45. Something small, 182.—46. What have you good? 182.—47. What have you bad? 182.

TWENTY-FIRST LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingt et unième leçon.

first

“ Si vous poursuiviez vos études, elles
pursued

vous conduiraient loin; car vous ne
would conduct far

manquez ni de mémoire ni de jugement.
lack memory judgment

Vous apprendriez facilement et vous
would learn easily

trouveriez bien vite l'occasion d'utiliser
would find quickly to profit by

votre savoir et vos talents. Alors vous
knowledge Then

adouciriez la position de votre père, qui
might alleviate which

n'est pas heureuse. Vous souvenez-vous
happy Do you remember

qu'un jour, à notre pension, le maître

* We now cease to refer to the notes given in the early lessons as a guide to the manner of studying them, practice having most likely by this time rendered any further aid of that kind unnecessary. We would, however, improve this opportunity to recommend once more a close observance of the plan laid down, especially to those who would make rapid progress.

promit une semaine de congé à celui qui
 promised week holiday

ferait le meilleur thème et la meilleure
 would make exercise

version ? ”

translation

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

“ If you pursued your studies, they would advance you in the world ; for you want neither memory nor judgment. You would learn easily, and would soon find an opportunity of profiting by your learning and talents. You might then alleviate your father’s position, which is not a happy one. Do you remember that one day, at your school, the master promised a week’s holiday to him who should make the best exercise and translation ? ”

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C’est la vingt et unième.
Qu’arriverait-il si Alexis poursuivait ses études ?	Elles le conduiraient loin.
A quelle condition Alexis pouvait-il aller loin ?	A condition qu’il poursuivît ses études.
Qu’est-ce qui pouvait le conduire loin ?	Ses études.
De quoi ne manquait-il pas ?	De mémoire ni de jugement.
Comment apprendrait-il ?	Facilement
Pourquoi apprendrait-il facilement ?	Parce qu’il ne manquait ni de mémoire ni de jugement.
Que faut-il avoir pour apprendre facilement ?	De la mémoire et du jugement.
Quelle occasion Alexis trouverait-il bien vite ?	L’occasion d’utiliser son savoir et ses talents.
Qu’adoucirait-il alors ?	La position de son père.
Comment était la position de son père ?	Elle n’était pas heureuse.

Quand le maître promet-il une semaine de congé?	Un jour.
Qu'est-ce que le maître promet un jour?	Une semaine de congé.
Où promet-il cela?	A leur pension.
A qui promet-il cela?	A celui qui ferait le meilleur thème et la meilleure version.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
D'où venez-vous, mon cher ami?	Where do you come from, my dear friend?
J'arrive de Paris.	I am just arrived from Paris.
Avez-vous fait un bon voyage?	Have you had a good journey?
Excellent. Les communications sont si faciles et si rapides aujourd'hui.	Excellent. The communication is so easy and rapid now.
Comment va monsieur votre père?	How is your father?
Il ne va pas très-bien.	He is not very well.
Vraiment! Qu'est-ce qu'il a donc?	Indeed! What is the matter with him?
Il a bien des infirmités.	He has many infirmities.
Il est bien vieux, n'est-ce pas?	He is very old, is he not?
Il a quatre-vingts ans.	He is eighty years old.
Que fait votre frère?	What does your brother do?
Il est dans le commerce.	He is in trade.
Est-il toujours aussi étourdi?	Is he still the same madcap that he was?
Non, il est un peu plus raisonnable.	No, he is somewhat more reasonable.
Passerez-vous quelques jours avec nous?	Shall you spend a few days with us?
Oui, j'ai un congé de huit jours.	Yes, I have leave of absence for a week.
Que je suis heureux de vous voir!	How happy I am to see you!
Croyez que je suis bien heureux moi-même.	Believe me, I am very happy too.
Il y a bien longtemps que je vous attends.	I have been expecting you a very long time.

Eh bien ! comment utiliserons-nous notre temps ?	Well, how shall we make the best of our time ?
D'abord, nous irons voir toutes les curiosités.	We shall first go and see all the curiosities.
On dit qu'il y en a beaucoup à voir.	They say there are many things to be seen.
Oh ! je vous en réponds.	Yes, I warrant you.
Mais, j'oubliais de vous demander si vous voulez prendre quelque chose.	But, I forgot to ask you whether you would take any thing.
Non, je vous suis bien obligé.	No, I am much obliged to you.
Vous ne voulez pas goûter de mon vin avec quelques gâteaux ?	Won't you taste some of my wine, with a few cakes ?
Plus tard, si vous le voulez bien.	By and by, if you please.
Il me serait impossible de boire ou de manger à présent.	It would be impossible for me to eat or drink at present.
Je pense que vous ne feriez pas de cérémonies avec moi.	I think you would not stand on ceremonies with me.
Non, vraiment.	No, indeed.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

VINGT ET UNIÈME, twenty-first, comes from *vingt et un*, twenty-one.

187. The adjective *first*, when it is not preceded by another number, is translated by **premier**, for the masculine, and by **première**, for the feminine, as has been seen in the first lesson ; but when preceded by *vingt*, twenty ; *trente*, thirty ; *quarante*, forty ; *cinquante*, fifty ; *soixante*, sixty ; *quatre-vingt*, eighty ; *cent*, hundred ; and *mille*, thousand, it is rendered by **unième**.

Si vous poursuiviez vos études,
if you pursued your studies.

The verb *poursuiviez*, here, is in the imperfect tense, and may be literally rendered thus : "*If you PURSUED your studies ;*" but

the sense being conditional, it would also be correct in English to make use of the conditional mood, and to say, "*If you SHOULD PURSUE your studies;*" whereas, in French, the use of the conditional mood in this case would be improper.

188. When the conjunction **si** corresponds to the English word *if*, and signifies *supposing that*, the verb that follows the conjunction is used in the present tense of the indicative with the correlative verb of the phrase in the future; or the conjunction is followed by the imperfect tense, with the second verb in the conditional mood, as in these examples: "*Si vous me PARLEZ, je vous RÉPONDRAI*, if you speak to me, I shall answer you; *Si vous me PARLIEZ, je vous RÉPONDRAIS*, if you should speak to me, I should answer you."

But when **si** corresponds to the English conjunction *whether*, and expresses doubt, it may be followed by the conditional mood or the future tense, according to the sense of the sentence.—
Ex. *Il ne savait pas si vous poursuivriez vos études*, he knew not whether you would pursue your studies.

CONDUIRAIENT is the third person plural of the conditional mood of *conduire*, to lead, to conduct,—one of the most necessary irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Conduire**, TO CONDUCT.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Conduire, to conduct.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Conduisant, conducting.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Conduit, conducted.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je conduis,</i>	I conduct,	am conducting, or do conduct.
<i>Tu conduis,</i>	thou conductest,	art conducting, or dost conduct.
<i>Il conduit,</i>	he conducts,	is conducting, or does conduct.
<i>Nous conduisons,</i>	we conduct,	are conducting, or do conduct.
<i>Vous conduisez,</i>	you conduct,	are conducting, or do conduct.
<i>Ils conduisent,</i>	they conduct,	are conducting, or do conduct.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je conduisais,</i>	I conducted,	or was conducting.
<i>Tu conduisais,</i>	thou conductedst,	or wast conducting.
<i>Il conduisait,</i>	he conducted,	or was conducting.
<i>Nous conduisions,</i>	we conducted,	or were conducting.
<i>Vous conduisiez,</i>	you conducted,	or were conducting.
<i>Ils conduisaient,</i>	they conducted,	or were conducting.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je conduisis,</i>	I conducted,	or did conduct.
<i>Tu conduisis,</i>	thou conductedst,	or didst conduct.
<i>Il conduisit,</i>	he conducted,	or did conduct.
<i>Nous conduisîmes,</i>	we conducted,	or did conduct.
<i>Vous conduisîtes,</i>	you conducted,	or did conduct.
<i>Ils conduisirent,</i>	they conducted,	or did conduct.

FUTURE.

<i>Je conduirai,</i>	I shall conduct,	or will conduct.
<i>Tu conduiras,</i>	thou shalt conduct,	or wilt conduct.
<i>Il conduira,</i>	he shall conduct,	or will conduct.
<i>Nous conduirons,</i>	we shall conduct,	or will conduct.
<i>Vous conduirez,</i>	you shall conduct,	or will conduct.
<i>Ils conduiront,</i>	they shall conduct,	or will conduct.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je conduirais,</i>	I should conduct,	or would conduct.
<i>Tu conduirais,</i>	thou shouldst conduct,	or wouldst conduct.
<i>Il conduirait,</i>	he should conduct,	or would conduct.
<i>Nous conduirions,</i>	we should conduct,	or would conduct.
<i>Vous conduiriez,</i>	you should conduct,	or would conduct.
<i>Ils conduiraient,</i>	they should conduct,	or would conduct.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Conduis,</i>	conduct (thou).
<i>Conduisons,</i>	let us conduct.
<i>Conduisez,</i>	conduct (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je conduise,</i>	that I may conduct.
<i>Que tu conduises,</i>	that thou mayst conduct.
<i>Qu'il conduise,</i>	that he may conduct.
<i>Que nous conduisions,</i>	that we may conduct.
<i>Que vous conduisiez,</i>	that you may conduct.
<i>Qu'ils conduisent,</i>	that they may conduct.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je conduisisse,</i>	that I might conduct.
<i>Que tu conduisisses,</i>	that thou mightst conduct.
<i>Qu'il conduisît,</i>	that he might conduct.
<i>Que nous conduisissions,</i>	that we might conduct.
<i>Que vous conduisissiez,</i>	that you might conduct.
<i>Qu'ils conduisissent,</i>	that they might conduct.

189. Thus are conjugated all verbs ending with **uire**; as, *cuire*, to cook; *détruire*, to destroy; *traduire*, to translate; *construire*, to construct; *instruire*, to instruct; *introduire*, to introduce; *produire*, to produce; *réduire*, to reduce, etc.

Vous ne manquez ni de mémoire ni de jugement.

190. The conjunction **ni** corresponds to the two words *neither* and *nor*, or to *either* and *or*, with *not*; as, *You do not want EITHER memory OR judgment.* The negative words, *pas* and *point*, must not be employed when the conjunction **ni** is repeated in a phrase.

Utiliser, to utilize.

191. The termination **iser** is common to many verbs, about eighty of which terminate in English in *ize* or *ise*, without any other difference in their spelling; as, *Scandaliser*, to scandalize; *naturaliser*, to naturalize; *fertiliser*, to fertilize; *familiariser*, to familiarize; *réviser*, to revise, etc.

Votre savoir, your knowledge.

192. The infinitive mood of verbs is sometimes used substantively in French. In this case, it has to be preceded by a

determinative word, like any other noun. We say, *Le boire, le manger, le savoir*, for, Drinking, eating, knowledge, etc.

Thème, theme, exercise, is masculine by exception.

Manquer, to lack; *trouver*, to find; and *utiliser*, to utilize, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *adoucir*, to soften, is of the second. *Apprendre*, to learn, and *se souvenir*, to remember, have already been seen. *Poursuiviez*, from *poursuivre*, to pursue; and *promit*, from *promettre*, to promise, are irregular verbs, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. I translate, 189. | 16. I should translate. |
| 2. He translates. | 17. He should translate. |
| 3. We translate. | 18. We should translate. |
| 4. You translate. | 19. You should translate. |
| 5. They translate. | 20. They should translate. |
| 6. I translated. | 21. I have translated. |
| 7. He translated. | 22. He has translated. |
| 8. We translated. | 23. We have translated. |
| 9. You translated. | 24. You have translated. |
| 10. They translated. | 25. They have translated. |
| 11. I shall translate. | 26. I had translated. |
| 12. He shall translate. | 27. Translate. |
| 13. We shall translate. | 28. Let us translate. |
| 14. You shall translate. | 29. Translating. |
| 15. They shall translate. | 30. To translate. |

31. Why have you not cooked this fish? 189.—32. Have you not heard our question?—33. They would answer, if they heard you, 188.—34. Would you understand her, if she spoke fast? 188.—35. Should you like this trade?—36. Your talent will immortalize you, 191.—37. Our hopes will be realized, 191.—38. Your occupations will make you forget eating and drinking, 192.—39. We had neither friends nor acquaintances, 190.—40. They had neither bread nor money, 190.—41. Who instructs you?—42. Whom do you instruct? 140.—43. Introduce me.

TWENTY-SECOND LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

*LITERAL TRANSLATION.***Vingt-deuxième leçon.**

“ Vous étiez, je crois, le moins avancé
 were believe least advanced
de la classe. Vous languissiez dans l’obs-
 class languished ob-
curité. Jamais vous n’aviez obtenu le
 scurity had obtained
moindre prix. Cependant, stimulé par
 least prize However stimulated
une si charmante perspective, vous fîtes
 charming prospect did
des prodiges. Vous travaillâtes avec une
 prodigies worked
ardeur telle que vous vous rendîtes ma-
 ardor such rendered
lade. Vous finîtes votre tâche avant tous
 ill finished task
vos rivaux, et vous fûtes vainqueur. Voilà
 rivals were victorious
ce que vous eûtes le courage d’accomplir ;
 had courage accomplish
et ce courage, vous l’aurez toutes les fois
 will have
que vous le voudrez.”

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

“You were, I think, the most backward in the class. You were lost in obscurity. You had never gained the least prize. However, stimulated by such a charming prospect, you did wonders. You worked with such ardor that you made yourself ill. You completed your task before all your rivals, and were victorious. This you had the courage to perform; and that courage you will have whenever you please.”

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?

Alexis était-il avancé?

Était-il remarqué?

Qu'est-ce qu'il n'avait jamais obtenu?

Par quoi fut-il stimulé cependant?

Quelle charmante perspective?

Que fit Alexis, stimulé par cette perspective?

Comment travailla-t-il?

Travailla-t-il avec beaucoup d'ardeur?

Que finit-il avant tous ses rivaux?

Quand finit-il sa tâche?

Quel fut le résultat de ses efforts?

Qui est-ce qui fut vainqueur?

Que dit l'étudiant, après avoir parlé de cette circonstance?

C'est la vingt-deuxième.

Il était le moins avancé de la classe.

Non, il languissait dans l'obscurité.

Il n'avait jamais obtenu le moindre prix.

Par une si charmante perspective.

Celle d'une semaine de congé.

Il fit des prodiges.

Il travailla avec ardeur.

Il travailla avec une ardeur telle qu'il se rendit malade.

Sa tâche.

Avant tous ses rivaux.

Il fut vainqueur.

Alexis.

Voilà ce que vous eûtes le courage d'accomplir; et ce courage vous l'aurez toutes les fois que vous le voudrez.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Que ferons-nous aujourd'hui ?
 Tout ce que vous voudrez.
 Voulez-vous faire une promenade ?
 Oui, vraiment.
 Où irons-nous ?
 Allons aussi loin que possible.
 Eh bien, alors, nous irons au village où demeure notre ami.
 Savez-vous où c'est ?
 Pas très-bien, mais nous demanderons.
 Je crois que ce sera trop loin pour moi.
 Non, non, vous pouvez aller beaucoup plus loin.
 Vous savez que je suis encore un peu malade.
 La promenade vous fera du bien.
 Croyez-vous ?
 J'en suis sûr.
 Notre ami ne sera pas fâché de nous voir.
 Je vous réponds qu'il sera bien joyeux.
 Mais, s'il n'était pas chez lui ?
 Il y sera, soyez-en bien sûr.

 Il n'est heureux que dans son jardin.
 Sommes-nous encore bien loin du village ?
 Non, nous arriverons avant dix minutes.
 Vous voyez bien ces saules devant une petite maison ?
 Oui, très-bien.
 C'est là qu'il demeure.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

What shall we do to-day ?
 Whatever you please.
 Will you take a walk ?

 To be sure, I will.
 Where shall we go ?
 Let us go as far as possible.
 Well, then, we will go to that village where our friend lives.
 Do you know where it is ?
 Not very well, but we shall inquire.
 I believe it will be too far for me.

 No, no, you can go much farther.

 You know I am still rather unwell.
 Walking will do you good.
 Do you believe it will ?
 I am sure of it.
 Our friend will not be sorry to see us.
 I warrant you he will be very glad.
 But, if he should not be at home ?
 He will be at home, depend upon it.
 He is never happy but when he is in his garden.
 Are we still very far from the village ?
 No, we shall be there in less than ten minutes.
 Do you see those willows before a small house ?
 Yes, perfectly well.
 There he lives.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

VINGT-DEUXIÈME, twenty-second, comes from *vingt-deux*, twenty-two.

JE CROIS is the first person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *croire*, to believe, one of the most necessary irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Croire**, TO BELIEVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Croire, to believe.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Croyant, believing.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Cru, believed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je crois,</i>	I believe,	am believing, or do believe.
<i>Tu crois,</i>	thou believest,	art believing, or dost believe.
<i>Il croit,</i>	he believes,	is believing, or does believe.
<i>Nous croyons,</i>	we believe,	are believing, or do believe.
<i>Vous croyez,</i>	you believe,	are believing, or do believe.
<i>Ils croient,</i>	they believe,	are believing, or do believe.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je croyais,</i>	I believed,	or was believing.
<i>Tu croyais,</i>	thou believedst,	or wast believing.
<i>Il croyait,</i>	he believed,	or was believing.
<i>Nous croyions,</i>	we believed,	or were believing.
<i>Vous croyiez,</i>	you believed,	or were believing.
<i>Ils croyaient,</i>	they believed,	or were believing.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je crus,</i>	I believed,	or did believe.
<i>Tu crus,</i>	thou believedst,	or didst believe.
<i>Il crut,</i>	he believed,	or did believe.
<i>Nous crûmes,</i>	we believed,	or did believe.
<i>Vous crûtes,</i>	you believed,	or did believe.
<i>Ils crurent,</i>	they believed,	or did believe.

FUTURE.

<i>Je croirai,</i>	I shall believe,	or will believe.
<i>Tu croiras,</i>	thou shalt believe,	or wilt believe.
<i>Il croira,</i>	he shall believe,	or will believe.
<i>Nous croirons,</i>	we shall believe,	or will believe.
<i>Vous croirez,</i>	you shall believe,	or will believe.
<i>Ils croiront,</i>	they shall believe,	or will believe.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je croirais,</i>	I should believe,	or would believe.
<i>Tu croirais,</i>	thou shouldst believe,	or wouldst believe.
<i>Il croirait,</i>	he should believe,	or would believe.
<i>Nous croirions,</i>	we should believe,	or would believe.
<i>Vous croiriez,</i>	you should believe,	or would believe.
<i>Ils croiraient,</i>	they should believe,	or would believe.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Crois,</i>	believe (thou).
<i>Croyons,</i>	let us believe.
<i>Croyez,</i>	believe (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je croie,</i>	that I may believe.
<i>Que tu croies,</i>	that thou mayst believe.
<i>Qu'il croie,</i>	that he may believe.
<i>Que nous croyons,</i>	that we may believe.
<i>Que vous croyez,</i>	that you may believe.
<i>Qu'ils croient,</i>	that they may believe.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je crusse,</i>	that I might believe.
<i>Que tu crusses,</i>	that thou mightst believe.
<i>Qu'il crût,</i>	that he might believe.
<i>Que nous crussions,</i>	that we might believe.
<i>Que vous crussiez,</i>	that you might believe.
<i>Qu'ils crussent,</i>	that they might believe.

Une si charmante perspective, so charming a prospect.

193. In English, after the adverbs *so*, *as*, *too*, and *how*, the word *A* is placed between the next adjective and substantive. In French, the first three of these adverbs, rendered by *si*, *aussi*, and *trop*, are preceded by *un*, *une*. As for the place of the adjective, it is often optional: we may say, "*Une perspective si charmante*," as well as, "*Une si charmante perspective*;" "*Une perspective trop charmante*," or "*Une trop charmante perspective*."

194. The adverb *How*—in French, *comment* or *combien*—cannot be joined to *un*, and requires a different construction or a different expression; as, "*How charming a prospect! Quelle charmante perspective!*" or, "*Que cette perspective est charmante!*"

Et ce courage, vous l'aurez,
and this courage, you will have it.

195. The regular construction would be, *Et vous aurez ce courage*,—the pronoun *LE* would be useless, and even improper.

But in inversive phrases, in which the regimen precedes the verb, this regimen must be repeated in the form of a pronoun, which is generally *LE*, *LA*, or *LES*, according to the sense; as, "*Ce qu'il dit, je LE ferai*, what he says, I will perform; *Cette personne, je LA connais*, that person I know; *Ces prodiges, nous LES avons vus*, those prodigies we have seen."

Vous étiez, you were; *vous aviez*, you had.

196. All French verbs, regular and irregular, end in the imperfect tense with **ais**, **ais**, **ait**, **ions**, **iez**, and **aient**, as in the following examples:

1st Conjugation.	2d Conjugation.	3d Conjugation.
<i>Je parlais,</i>	<i>Je finissais,</i>	<i>Je rendais,</i>
<i>Tu parlais,</i>	<i>Tu finissais,</i>	<i>Tu rendais,</i>
<i>Il parlait,</i>	<i>Il finissait,</i>	<i>Il rendait,</i>
<i>Nous parlions,</i>	<i>Nous finissions,</i>	<i>Nous rendions,</i>
<i>Vous parliez,</i>	<i>Vous finissiez,</i>	<i>Vous rendiez,</i>
<i>Ils parlaient.</i>	<i>Ils finissaient,</i>	<i>Ils rendaient,</i>

197. The imperfect tense is generally formed from the present participle, by changing **ant** into **ais**.—Ex. *Etant*, being; *j'étais*, I was; *prenant*, taking; *je prenais*, I took.

198. The most important exceptions to this rule are: *Ayant*, having; *j'avais*, I had; and *sachant*, knowing; *je savais*, I knew.

Vous l'aurez, you will have it.

199. All French verbs, regular and irregular, end in the future tense with **rai**, **ras**, **ra**, **rons**, **rez**, **ront**; and in the conditional with **rais**, **rais**, **rait**, **rions**, **riez**, **raient**.

1st Conjugation.	2d Conjugation.	3d Conjugation.
Future.	Future.	Future.
<i>Je parlerai,</i>	<i>Je finirai,</i>	<i>Je rendrai,</i>
<i>Tu parleras,</i>	<i>Tu finiras,</i>	<i>Tu rendras,</i>
<i>Il parlera,</i>	<i>Il finira,</i>	<i>Il rendra,</i>
<i>Nous parlerons,</i>	<i>Nous finirons,</i>	<i>Nous rendrons,</i>
<i>Vous parlerez,</i>	<i>Vous finirez,</i>	<i>Vous rendrez,</i>
<i>Ils parleront.</i>	<i>Ils finiront.</i>	<i>Ils rendront.</i>
Conditional.	Conditional.	Conditional.
<i>Je parlerais,</i>	<i>Je finirais,</i>	<i>Je rendrais,</i>
<i>Tu parlerais,</i>	<i>Tu finirais,</i>	<i>Tu rendrais,</i>
<i>Il parlerait,</i>	<i>Il finirait,</i>	<i>Il rendrait,</i>
<i>Nous parlerions,</i>	<i>Nous finirions,</i>	<i>Nous rendrions,</i>
<i>Vous parleriez,</i>	<i>Vous finiriez,</i>	<i>Vous rendriez,</i>
<i>Ils parleraient.</i>	<i>Ils finiraient.</i>	<i>Ils rendraient.</i>

200. The future tense and conditional mood are formed by adding the terminations **ai** and **ais** to that of the infinitive mood, the final *e* being suppressed in the verbs in *re*.—Ex. *Amuser*, to amuse; *j'amuserai*, I shall amuse; *j'amuserais*, I should amuse: *sentir*, to feel; *je sentirai*, I shall feel; *je sentirais*, I should feel: *prendre*, to take; *je prendrai*, I shall take; *je prendrais*, I should take.

The exceptions to this rule will be found explained in the irregular verbs.

Prodige, prodigy, and *courage*, courage, are masculine by exception.

Avancer, to advance; *stimuler*, to stimulate; and *travailler*, to work, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *languir*, to languish; and *accomplir*, to accomplish, are of the second. *Obtenu*, from *obtenir*, to obtain, is a derivative of *tenir*, to hold which is conjugated like *venir*, to come.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. I worked, 196. | 16. I languished, 196. |
| 2. He worked. | 17. He languished. |
| 3. We worked. | 18. We languished. |
| 4. You worked. | 19. You languished. |
| 5. They worked. | 20. They languished. |
| 6. I shall work, 199. | 21. I shall languish, 199. |
| 7. He shall work. | 22. He shall languish. |
| 8. We shall work. | 23. We shall languish. |
| 9. You shall work. | 24. You shall languish. |
| 10. They shall work. | 25. They shall languish. |
| 11. I should work, 199. | 26. I should languish, 199. |
| 12. He should work. | 27. He should languish. |
| 13. We should work. | 28. We should languish. |
| 14. You should work. | 29. You should languish. |
| 15. They should work. | 30. They should languish. |

31. Your brother is less ambitious than you.—32. To whom did you sell your horse?—33. That young man was the least attentive.—34. You were finishing your exercise when he arrived.—35. Were you not filling your baskets with provisions? 110.—36. Why did you not answer him?—37. You followed your friend's example.—38. Where will you find a good friend?—39. A long story makes us yawn, 121.—40. We will not tell what we have heard, 99.—41. We shall never forget what you have told us, 99.—42. He will not accept the prize which he has obtained.—43. Let us advance.—44. We will work.—45. We will accomplish.—46. He was working.—47. Advance, if you can.

TWENTY-THIRD LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingt-troisième leçon.

“Je ne dis pas qu’il soit nécessaire que
 say be necessary
 vous vous rendiez malade, que vous
 render (subj.)
 passiez des nuits à écrire, ou que vous
 pass (subj.) nights to write
 jaunissiez sur des livres. Je voudrais seule-
 grow yellow (subj.) books would
 ment que vous perdissiez moins de temps,
 lost (subj.)
 que vous sentissiez ce dont vous êtes ca-
 felt (subj.) of which are ca-
 pable, et que vous eussiez de l’ambition.”
 pable had (subj.) ambition.
 Alexis reconnut peut-être la justesse de
 acknowledged perhaps justness
 ces observations ; mais il n’aimait pas les
 observations liked
 remontrances, et il répondit brusquement
 remonstrances abruptly
 à ce sage conseiller : “ Je voudrais, moi,
 wise counsellor

que vous fussiez moins sérieux, ou, sinon,
 were (subj.) serious if not
que vous me laissassiez tranquille.”
 left (subj.) quiet

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

“I do not say that it is necessary you should make yourself ill, sit up for whole nights writing, or pore over books till you turn yellow. I only wish you would lose less time, and that you could feel what you are capable of, and that you had some ambition.”

Alexis probably felt the justness of these observations, but he disliked remonstrances, and abruptly replied to his sage adviser : “I wish you would be less serious, or else that you would let me alone.”

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la vingt-troisième.
L'étudiant voulait-il qu'Alexis se rendît malade ?	Non, il ne disait pas que cela fût nécessaire.
A quoi ne voulait-il pas qu'il passât des nuits ?	A écrire.
Sur quoi ne voulait-il pas qu'il jaunît ?	Sur des livres.
Qu'est-ce qui n'était pas nécessaire ?	Qu'Alexis se rendît malade, qu'il passât des nuits à écrire, ou qu'il jaunît sur des livres.
L'étudiant voulait-il qu'Alexis perdît son temps ?	Non, il voulait qu'il perdît moins de temps.
Que voulait-il qu'il sentît ?	Il voulait qu'il sentît ce dont il était capable.
Que voulait-il qu'il eût ?	Il voulait qu'il eût de l'ambition.
Qu'est-ce qu'Alexis reconnut peut-être ?	La justesse de ces observations.
Que n'aimait-il pas ?	Il n'aimait pas les remontrances.
A qui répondit-il brusquement ?	A ce sage conseiller

Comment répondit-il à ce sage conseiller ?	Il lui répondit brusquement.
Que répondit-il ?	“ Je voudrais, moi, que vous fussiez moins sérieux, ou, sinon, que vous me laissassiez tranquille.”
Pourquoi répondit-il si brusquement et si sèchement ?	Parce qu'il n'aimait pas les remontrances.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Pardon, monsieur, si je vous arrête. N'êtes-vous pas M. Delatour ?
 Oui, monsieur.
 Vous ne me reconnaissez pas ?
 Mais, non, monsieur.
 Vous ne vous souvenez pas du petit Jacques, l'ami de votre fils ?
 Quoi ! c'est vous ?
 Oui, vraiment.
 Comme vous voilà grand !
 Savez-vous qu'il y a bien longtemps que nous ne nous sommes rencontrés ?
 Oui ; vous étiez alors un enfant.
 J'espère que mon ami va bien.
 Très-bien. Il sera charmé de vous voir.
 Demeure-t-il toujours avec vous ?
 Oui, toujours ; mais il n'est pas souvent à la maison.
 Que fait-il ?
 Il est dans le commerce.
 Travaille-t-il beaucoup ?
 Oui, toute la journée.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

I beg pardon, sir, for stopping you. Are you not Mr. Delatour ?
 Yes, sir.
 You don't remember me ?
 Why, no, sir.
 You do not remember little James, your son's friend ?
 What ! is it you ?
 Yes, indeed.
 Why, you are quite a man !
 Do you know it is very long since we met ?
 Yes ; you were quite a boy then.
 I hope my friend is well.
 Very well. He will be delighted to see you.
 Does he still live with you ?
 Yes, he does ; but he is not often at home.
 What does he do ?
 He is in trade.
 Does he work much ?
 Yes, all day long.

Je voudrais cependant bien le voir.	I should very much like to see him, however.
Il faut venir de très-bonne heure.	You must come very early.
A quelle heure le trouverai-je?	At what o'clock shall I find him?
Venez à sept heures du matin.	Come at seven o'clock in the morning.
C'est que je suis bien paresseux.	The fact is, I am very lazy.
Eh bien, il passera chez vous.	Well, he shall call upon you.
Cela me ferait grand plaisir.	It would do me great pleasure.
Où demeurez-vous?	Where do you live?
Sur le quai, tout près du pont.	On the quay, close to the bridge
Je le lui dirai.	I will tell him.
Au plaisir de vous revoir.	Good-bye.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

VINGT-TROISIÈME, twenty-third, comes from *vingt-trois*, twenty-three.

ÉCRIRE, to write, is one of the most important irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Écrire**, TO WRITE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Écrire, to write.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Écrivant, writing.

Écrit, written.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>J'écris</i> ,	I write,	am writing, or do write.
<i>Tu écris</i> ,	thou writest,	art writing, or dost write.
<i>Il écrit</i> ,	he writes,	is writing, or does write. *
<i>Nous écrivons</i> ,	we write,	are writing, or do write.
<i>Vous écrivez</i> ,	you write,	are writing, or do write.
<i>Ils écrivent</i> ,	they write,	are writing, or do write.

IMPERFECT.

<i>J'écrivais,</i>	I wrote,	or was writing.
<i>Tu écrivais,</i>	thou wrotest,	or wast writing.
<i>Il écrivait,</i>	he wrote,	or was writing.
<i>Nous écrivions,</i>	we wrote,	or were writing.
<i>Vous écriviez,</i>	you wrote,	or were writing.
<i>Ils écrivaient,</i>	they wrote,	or were writing.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>J'écrivis,</i>	I wrote,	or did write.
<i>Tu écrivis,</i>	thou wrotest,	or didst write.
<i>Il écrivit,</i>	he wrote,	or did write.
<i>Nous écrivîmes,</i>	we wrote,	or did write.
<i>Vous écrivîtes,</i>	you wrote,	or did write.
<i>Ils écrivirent,</i>	they wrote,	or did write.

FUTURE.

<i>J'écrirai,</i>	I shall write,	or will write.
<i>Tu écriras,</i>	thou shalt write,	or wilt write.
<i>Il écrira,</i>	he shall write,	or will write.
<i>Nous écrirons,</i>	we shall write,	or will write.
<i>Vous écrirez,</i>	you shall write,	or will write.
<i>Ils écriront,</i>	they shall write,	or will write.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>J'écrirais,</i>	I should write,	or would write.
<i>Tu écrirais,</i>	thou shouldst write,	or wouldst write.
<i>Il écrirait,</i>	he should write,	or would write.
<i>Nous écririons,</i>	we should write,	or would write.
<i>Vous écririez,</i>	you should write,	or would write.
<i>Ils écriraient,</i>	they should write,	or would write.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Écris,</i>	write (thou).
<i>Écrivons,</i>	let us write.
<i>Écrivez,</i>	write (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que j'écrive,</i>	that I may write.
<i>Que tu écrives,</i>	that thou mayst write.
<i>Qu'il écrive,</i>	that he may write.
<i>Que nous écrivions,</i>	that we may write.
<i>Que vous écriviez,</i>	that you may write.
<i>Qu'ils écrivent,</i>	that they may write.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que j'écrivisse,</i>	that I might write.
<i>Que tu écrivisses,</i>	that thou mightst write.
<i>Qu'il écrivît,</i>	that he might write.
<i>Que nous écrivissions,</i>	that we might write.
<i>Que vous écrivissiez,</i>	that you might write.
<i>Qu'ils écrivissent,</i>	that they might write.

201. Thus are conjugated *décrire*, to describe; *inscrire*, to inscribe; *prescrire*, to prescribe; *proscrire*, to proscribe; *souscrire*, to subscribe; *transcrire*, to transcribe, etc.

Ce dont vous êtes capable, what you are capable of.

Literally, "that OF WHICH you are capable." *CE QUE vous êtes capable DE*, would not be correct.

202. The inversive construction, so frequent in English, by which the preposition governing a relative pronoun is thrown to the end of a phrase, never takes place in French.

203. **Dont** is generally used instead of **de quoi**, after **ce**.

PEUT-ÊTRE, *perhaps*, is an adverb formed of the two words *peut* and *être*, exactly as *may be*, in English.

JUSTESSE is one of the derivatives of *juste*, already seen.

204. The termination **esse** is added to about 40 adjectives, to form them into substantives; as, *Justesse*, from *juste*, just; *délicatesse*, delicacy, from *délicat*, delicate; *faiblesse*, weakness, from *faible*, weak; *hardiesse*, boldness, from *hardi*, bold. It denotes the abstract of that which is expressed by the radical.

Que vous rendiez. Que vous passiez. Que vous jaunissiez.

205. All French verbs, regular and irregular, end in the present of the subjunctive with **e, es, e, ions, iez, ent**.

1st Conjugation.	2d Conjugation.	3d Conjugation.
Subjunctive Present.	Subjunctive Present.	Subjunctive Present.
<i>Que je parle,</i>	<i>Que je finisse,</i>	<i>Que je rende,</i>
<i>Que tu parles,</i>	<i>Que tu finisses,</i>	<i>Que tu rendes,</i>
<i>Qu'il parle,</i>	<i>Qu'il finisse,</i>	<i>Qu'il rende,</i>
<i>Que nous parlions,</i>	<i>Que nous finissions,</i>	<i>Que nous rendions,</i>
<i>Que vous parliez,</i>	<i>Que vous finissiez,</i>	<i>Que vous rendiez,</i>
<i>Qu'ils parlent.</i>	<i>Qu'ils finissent.</i>	<i>Qu'ils rendent.</i>

206. The subjunctive present is generally formed from the present participle by changing **ant** into **e**.—Ex. *Conduisant*, conducting; *que je conduise*, that I may conduct; *écrivant*, writing; *que j'écrive*, that I may write, etc.

The exceptions to this rule will be found explained among the irregular verbs.

Que vous perdissiez. Que vous sentissiez. Que vous laissassiez.

207. The subjunctive past always ends with

asse,	asses,	ât,	assions,	assiez,	assent;
isse,	isses,	ît,	issions,	issiez,	issent;
or, usse,	usses,	ût,	ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.

1st Conjugation.	2d Conjugation.	Subjunctive Past of
Subjunctive Past.	Subjunctive Past.	être, to be.
<i>Que je parlasse,</i>	<i>Que je finisse,</i>	<i>Que je fusse,</i>
<i>Que tu parlasses,</i>	<i>Que tu finisses,</i>	<i>Que tu fusses,</i>
<i>Qu'il parlât,</i>	<i>Qu'il finît,</i>	<i>Qu'il fût,</i>
<i>Que nous parlussions,</i>	<i>Que nous finissions,</i>	<i>Que nous fussions,</i>
<i>Que vous parlassiez,</i>	<i>Que vous finissiez,</i>	<i>Que vous fussiez,</i>
<i>Qu'ils parlassent.</i>	<i>Qu'ils finissent.</i>	<i>Qu'ils fussent.</i>

208. The subjunctive past is formed from the past tense definite by changing for the verbs in *er*, **ai** into **asse**, and by adding **se** to the ending **is** or **us** for the others.—Ex. *Je laissai*, I did leave; *que je laissasse*, that I might leave; *je sentis*, I did feel; *que je sentisse*, that I might feel; *j'eus*, I did have; *que j'eusse*, that I might have.

Nuit, night, is feminine, and *livre*, book, masculine, by exception. (158.)

Passer, to pass; *aimer*, to love, or to like; and *laisser*, to leave, or to let, are regular verbs of the first conjugation; *jaunir*, to grow yellow, is of the second; and *répondre*, to answer, and *perdre*, to lose, of the third. *Dis*, from *dire*, to say; *sentissiez*, from *sentir*, to feel, or to smell; and *reconnut*, from *reconnaître*, to recognize, to acknowledge, are irregular verbs, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. That I may like, 205, 206. | 16. That I might like, 207, 208. |
| 2. That he may like. | 17. That he might like. |
| 3. That we may like. | 18. That we might like. |
| 4. That you may like. | 19. That you might like. |
| 5. That they may like. | 20. That they might like. |
| 6. That I may collect. | 21. That I might collect. |
| 7. That he may collect. | 22. That he might collect. |
| 8. That we may collect. | 23. That we might collect. |
| 9. That you may collect. | 24. That you might collect. |
| 10. That they may collect. | 25. That they might collect. |
| 11. That I may answer. | 26. That I might answer. |
| 12. That he may answer. | 27. That he might answer. |
| 13. That we may answer. | 28. That we might answer. |
| 14. That you may answer. | 29. That you might answer. |
| 15. That they may answer. | 30. That they might answer. |

31. I desire that you may find this book useful, 205, 206.—
 32. I do not think that you will finish your task to-day.—
 33. That book is too serious.—34. The eel weighed one pound.
 —35. This observation is not just.—36. The man of whom I
 speak is wise and serious.—37. We admire the memory of your
 father.—38. Why do you lose your time?—39. We have a
 house which we should like to sell.—40. Do you know what
 they are speaking of? 202.—41. You do not know what he is
 capable of, 202.—42. Whom do you speak to? 202.—43. Let
 me pass.—44. Do you like me?—45. Answer me.—46. The
 paper grows yellow.

TWENTY-FOURTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

*LITERAL TRANSLATION.***Vingt-quatrième leçon.**

Delatour commençait à devenir vieux.
 began become

Il se plaignait de plus en plus amèrement
 complained bitterly

de l'apathie de son fils. "Méchant en-
 apathy Wicked

fant," disait-il, "il semble que tu aies
 it seems thou have (subj.)

résolu de me faire mourir de chagrin. Je
 resolved to die sorrow

veux que tu m'écoutes à la fin, et que tu
 will listen (subj.) end

m'obéisses. Après tout ce que j'ai fait
 obey (subj.) I have done

pour toi, je veux que tu te rendes utile
 thee thee render (subj.)

d'une manière quelconque ; et tu le feras,
 manner whatever wilt do

à moins que tu ne sois un ingrat. Tu ne
 unless be (subj.) ungrateful

réfléchis donc jamais ? Tu n'as donc point
 reflectest hast not

de souci de l'avenir ?"
 future

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

Delatour began to grow old. He complained more and more bitterly of his son's apathy. "You wicked boy," said he, "you seem resolved to make me die with sorrow. But you shall listen to me at last, and obey me. After all I have done for you, you shall make yourself useful in one way or another; and you will, if you are not an ungrateful boy. Do you never reflect? Have you no care of the future?"

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la vingt-quatrième.
Delatour était-il vieux ?	Il commençait à devenir vieux, <i>or</i> , Il commençait à le devenir.
Qui est-ce qui commençait à devenir vieux ?	Delatour.
Qui était-ce que Delatour ?	C'était le père d'Alexis.
De quoi se plaignait-il de plus en plus amèrement ?	De l'apathie de son fils.
Comment se plaignait-il de l'apathie de son fils ?	De plus en plus amèrement.
Comment appelait-il son fils ?	Méchant enfant.
Que semblait-il que son fils eût résolu ?	De le faire mourir de chagrin.
Que voulait Delatour ?	Il voulait que son fils l'écoutât, à la fin, et qu'il lui obéît.
Comment le lui disait-il ?	"Je veux que tu m'écoutes, à la fin, et que tu m'obéisses."
Que voulait-il encore, après ce qu'il avait fait pour lui ?	Il voulait qu'il se rendît utile.
De quelle manière voulait-il qu'il se rendît utile ?	D'une manière quelconque.
Comment le lui disait-il ?	"Je veux que tu te rendes utile d'une manière quelconque."
Que lui disait-il pour rendre son exhortation plus pressante ?	"Et tu le feras, à moins que tu ne sois un ingrat."
Quelles questions lui faisait-il ?	"Tu ne réfléchis donc jamais ? Tu n'as donc point de souci de l'avenir ?"

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Parlons un peu de nos anciens camarades.

Il y en avait trois ou quatre pour lesquels nous avions beaucoup d'affection.

Oui: le petit Charles, le gros Robert, le grand Guillaume, et encore un autre.

Que fait le premier?

Il est dans le commerce.

Il a toujours aimé les spéculations.

Fait-il fortune?

Mais, je pense que oui.

Vous savez combien il est actif.

Oui; mais ce n'est pas toujours une raison pour réussir.

Dans le commerce, on est exposé à des revers inattendus.

Je pense comme vous.

Et le second?

Qui? le gros Robert?

Oui.

Il est poète.

Pas possible!

C'est très-vrai. Il compose en ce moment une tragédie.

Quoi! ce gros garçon si jovial? C'est à n'y pas croire!

Il n'est plus le même aujourd'hui.

Il est tranquille et grave.

Il passe les nuits à barbouiller du papier.

A-t-il du talent, au moins?

On le dit; mais j'en doute.

Et le grand Guillaume? Est-il toujours aussi bon enfant?

Oui, vraiment. Nous nous voyons presque tous les jours.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

Let us talk a little about our old comrades.

There were three or four of them that we were very fond of.

Yes: little Charles, fat Robert, tall William, and another.

What is the first doing?

He is in trade.

He was always fond of speculations.

Is he making a fortune?

Why, I think he is.

You know how active he is.

Yes; but that does not always insure success.

In trade, one is exposed to unforeseen mischances.

I think as you do.

And the second?

Who? fat Robert?

Yes.

He is a poet.

Impossible!

It is very true. He is now composing a tragedy.

What! that fat fellow, who was so jovial? You don't say so!

You would not know him again.

He is grave and steady.

He spends his nights in scribbling.

Has he any talent at least?

It is said he has; but I doubt it.

And tall William? Is he still the same good fellow?

Oh! yes. We see each-other almost every day.

Que fait-il ?	What is he doing?
Il est artiste, et se fait une belle réputation.	He is an artist, and is getting into high repute.
Mais, quel était donc le quatrième de nos camarades ?	But, who was our fourth comrade ?
O'était Martin, le paresseux.	It was that lazy fellow, Martin.
Le voyez-vous toujours ?	Do you still see him ?
Non, nous avons cessé de nous voir.	No, we have ceased to see each other.
Pourquoi cela ?	How so ?
Parce que son père lui a laissé une grande fortune, et qu'il regarde ses anciennes connaissances comme au-dessous de lui.	Because his father has left him a large fortune, and he looks upon his old acquaintances as below him.
C'est un ingrat.	He is an ungrateful fellow.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

VINGT-QUATRIÈME, twenty-fourth, comes from *vingt-quatre*, twenty-four.

Delatour commençait à devenir vieux,

Delatour began to grow old.

209. The preposition *to*, before an infinitive, has to be expressed sometimes by *à*, sometimes by *de*, and sometimes it has to be suppressed, according to the verb which precedes.

Ex. He began to grow old, *Il commençait à devenir vieux.*

He ceased to study, *Il cessa d'étudier.*

They pretend to be poets, *Ils prétendent être poètes.*

210. There is a corresponding rule in English, the preposition *to*, before an infinitive, being suppressed after *can*, *will*, *let*, etc., and expressed after *to be able*, *to wish*, *to like* ; as, He can play—we will study—let me think ; We wish to play—we are able to study—they like to think.

211. The most necessary verbs which govern other verbs in the infinitive mood with the preposition *à*, are :

<i>Aider</i> , to aid, to help.	<i>Donner</i> , to give.
<i>S'appliquer</i> , to apply one's self.	<i>Encourager</i> , to encourage.
<i>Apprendre</i> , to learn.	<i>Engager</i> , to engage.
<i>Aspirer</i> , to aim.	<i>Enseigner</i> , to teach.
<i>Avoir</i> , to have.	<i>Inviter</i> , to invite.
<i>Chercher</i> , to try.	<i>Montrer</i> , to show.
<i>Consentir</i> , to consent.	<i>Préparer</i> , to prepare.
<i>Contribuer</i> , to contribute.	<i>Renoncer</i> , to renounce.

212 Those which require the preposition *de*, are :

<i>Achever</i> , to complete, to finish.	<i>Finir</i> , to finish.
<i>Affecter</i> , to affect.	<i>Se flatter</i> , to flatter one's self.
<i>Avertir</i> , to warn.	<i>Se hâter</i> , to make haste.
<i>Avoir envie</i> , to wish.	<i>Jurer</i> , to swear.
<i>Avoir honte</i> , to be ashamed.	<i>Méditer</i> , to meditate.
<i>Avoir peur</i> , to be afraid.	<i>Menacer</i> , to threaten.
<i>Avoir raison</i> , to be right.	<i>Mériter</i> , to deserve.
<i>Avoir soin</i> , to take care.	<i>Négliger</i> , to neglect.
<i>Avoir tort</i> , to be wrong.	<i>Ordonner</i> , to order.
<i>Cesser</i> , to cease.	<i>Oublier</i> , to forget.
<i>Choisir</i> , to choose.	<i>Parler</i> , to speak.
<i>Commander</i> , to command.	<i>Permettre</i> , to permit.
<i>Conseiller</i> , to advise.	<i>Persuader</i> , to persuade.
<i>Se contenter</i> , to be contented.	<i>Prier</i> , to pray.
<i>Convenir</i> , to agree.	<i>Promettre</i> , to promise.
<i>Craindre</i> , to fear.	<i>Proposer</i> , to propose.
<i>Dédaigner</i> , to disdain, to scorn.	<i>Recommander</i> , to recommend.
<i>Défendre</i> , to forbid.	<i>Refuser</i> , to refuse.
<i>Se désoler</i> , to grieve.	<i>Regretter</i> , to regret.
<i>Dire</i> , to tell, to say.	<i>Se réjouir</i> , to rejoice.
<i>Empêcher</i> , to prevent.	<i>Se repentir</i> , to repent.
<i>Entreprendre</i> , to undertake.	<i>Risquer</i> , to risk, to venture.
<i>Etre bien aise</i> , to be very glad.	<i>Rougir</i> , to blush.
<i>Eviter</i> , to avoid.	<i>Se souvenir</i> , to remember.
<i>Feindre</i> , to feign.	<i>Se vanter</i> , to boast.

213. The preposition *to* is suppressed after

Aimer, to like, to love.

Aller, to go.

Compter, to intend.

Croire, to believe.

Daigner, to deign.

Désirer, to desire.

Détester, to detest.

Devoir, to be obliged, ought.

Entendre, to hear.

Espérer, to hope.

Faire, to make.

Falloir, must.

Laisser, to let.

Oser, to dare.

Penser, to think.

Pouvoir, to be able.

Préférer, to prefer.

Prétendre, to pretend.

Savoir, to know.

Sembler, to seem.

S'imaginer, to imagine.

Souhaiter, to wish.

Valoir mieux, to be better.

Venir, to come. This verb may be followed by *de*, but the meaning is different: it is, *to have just*; as, *Il venait de parler*, he had just spoken.

Voir, to see.

Vouloir, to will, to wish, to want.

214. The following require either *à* or *de*, according to their different acceptations, or according as the ear or taste of the speaker directs:

Commencer, to begin, is followed by *à* much more frequently than by *de*.

Continuer, to continue, requires *à* when it denotes that a thing is doing without interruption; otherwise it is usually followed by *de*.

Défier requires *à* when it means *to challenge*, *to provoke* to a competition; and *de* when it means *to set at defiance*, to do something.

Demander, to demand, to ask.

Essayer, to try, may be followed by *à* or *de*, but *s'essayer* requires *à*.

Être, to be, when joined to *ce*, is followed by *à*, if it denotes *turn*; and by *de*, if it denotes *right*, *duty*, or *attribution*; as, *C'est à vous à parler*, it is your turn to speak; *C'est au maître de commander*, it is for the master to command.

Forcer, to force, to compel.

Obliger, to oblige, when used in the sense of *to compel*, may be followed by *à* or *de*: if the verb is active, *à* is more in use; if passive, *de* is generally preferred. When used in the sense of *to do a*

service or a favor, *de* always precedes the infinitive. *Tâcher*, to endeavor. After this verb, *de* is more frequently used than *à*.

Venir, when meaning that a thing has *just* been done, is followed by *de*. *En venir*, to come, to proceed, requires *à*.

De plus en plus, more and more.

215. This may be taken as a model of construction for adverbial phrases marking augmentation or diminution, by the repetition of the comparative. *Less and less* should therefore be translated by *de moins en moins*; *farther and farther*, by *de plus en plus loin*, etc.

DISAIT-IL, said he, is the third person singular of the imperfect tense of *Dire*, to say, one of the most important irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Dire**, TO SAY.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Dire, to say.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Disant, saying.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Dit, said.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je dis,</i>	I say,	am saying, or do say.
<i>Tu dis,</i>	thou sayest,	art saying, or dost say.
<i>Il dit,</i>	he says,	is saying, or does say.
<i>Nous disons,</i>	we say,	are saying, or do say.
<i>Vous dites,</i>	you say,	are saying, or do say.
<i>Ils disent,</i>	they say,	are saying, or do say.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je disais,</i>	I said,	or was saying.
<i>Tu disais,</i>	thou saidst,	or wast saying.
<i>Il disait,</i>	he said,	or was saying.
<i>Nous disions,</i>	we said,	or were saying.
<i>Vous disiez,</i>	you said,	or were saying.
<i>Ils disaient,</i>	they said,	or were saying.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je dis,</i>	I said,	or did say.
<i>Tu dis,</i>	thou saidst,	or didst say.
<i>Il dit,</i>	he said,	or did say.
<i>Nous dûmes,</i>	we said,	or did say.
<i>Vous dîtes,</i>	you said,	or did say.
<i>Ils dirent,</i>	they said,	or did say.

FUTURE.

<i>Je dirai,</i>	I shall say,	or will say.
<i>Tu diras,</i>	thou shalt say,	or wilt say.
<i>Il dira,</i>	he shall say,	or will say.
<i>Nous dirons,</i>	we shall say,	or will say.
<i>Vous direz,</i>	you shall say,	or will say.
<i>Ils diront,</i>	they shall say,	or will say.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je dirais,</i>	I should say,	or would say.
<i>Tu dirais,</i>	thou shouldst say,	or wouldst say.
<i>Il dirait,</i>	he should say,	or would say.
<i>Nous dirions,</i>	we should say,	or would say.
<i>Vous diriez,</i>	you should say,	or would say.
<i>Ils diraient,</i>	they should say,	or would say.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Dis,</i>	say (thou).
<i>Disons,</i>	let us say.
<i>Dites,</i>	say (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je dise,</i>	that I may say.
<i>Que tu dises,</i>	that thou mayst say.
<i>Qu'il dise,</i>	that he may say.
<i>Que nous disions,</i>	that we may say.
<i>Que vous disiez,</i>	that you may say.
<i>Qu'ils disent,</i>	that they may say.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je disse,</i>	that I might say.
<i>Que tu dissés,</i>	that thou mightst say.
<i>Qu'il dît,</i>	that he might say.
<i>Que nous dissions,</i>	that we might say.
<i>Que vous dissiez,</i>	that you might say.
<i>Qu'ils dissent,</i>	that they might say.

216. Thus are conjugated *redire*, to say again; *contredire*, to contradict; *dédire*, to gainsay; *interdire*, to interdict; *médire*, to slander; and *prédire*, to predict: except that the last five have the second person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood, and the same person in the imperative, ending with *isez*.—Ex. *Vous contredisez*, you contradict; *dédisez*, gainsay; *interdisez*, interdict; *médisez*, slander; *prédisez*, predict.

<i>Pour toi,</i>	<i>Que tu te rendes,</i>
for thee.	that thou mayst render thee.

All the observations made on the three pronouns of the first person, *je*, *me*, *moi*, are applicable to the three pronouns of the second person, **tu**, **te**, **toi**.

217. THOU, generally **tu**, has to be rendered by **toi**, when used isolately; that is to say, chiefly after **c'est**, *it is*, or **que**, *as*, *than*, or *only*.—Ex. *Tu as*, thou hast; *c'est toi*, it is thou.

THEE, or TO THEE, is translated by **te** put before the verb, unless isolated, or preceded by any other preposition than *to*; and even then, if *to* is preceded by **c'est** or **que**, when **toi** is used instead of **te**.—Ex. *Je te vois*, I see thee; *je te parle*, I speak to thee; *pour toi*, for thee; *c'est à toi que je parle*, it is to thee I speak.

THEE and TO THEE are also rendered by **toi**, but placed after the verb in imperative affirmative sentences.—Ex. *Rends-toi*, render thee. Do not render thee, would have to be translated by *ne te rends pas*.

A moins que tu ne sois.

218. The negative **ne** always follows *à moins que*, unless.

Fin, end, is feminine by exception. *Vieux*, *vieille*, old, is one of the few adjectives which form their feminine irregularly.

Commencer, to commence; *sembler*, to seem; *écouter*, to listen to, are regular verbs of the first conjugation; *obéir*, to obey, and *réfléchir*, to reflect, are of the second. *Devenir*, to become, is a derivative of *venir*, to come (145). *Il se plaignait*, from *se plaindre*, to complain; *résolut*, from *résoudre*, to resolve; and *mourir*, to die, are irregular verbs, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. I have to give, 211. | 16. I forget to say, 212. |
| 2. He has to make. | 17. He forgets to go. |
| 3. We have to correct. | 18. We forget to come. |
| 4. You have to examine. | 19. You forget to play. |
| 5. They have to answer. | 20. They forget to do. |
| 6. I am going to study, 213. | 21. I wish to work, 213. |
| 7. He is going to loiter. | 22. He wishes to sleep. |
| 8. We are going to finish. | 23. We wish to eat. |
| 9. You are going to wait. | 24. You wish to drink. |
| 10. They are going to find. | 25. They wish to run. |
| 11. I commence to speak, 214. | 26. Let us tell him to write, 212. |
| 12. He commences to fish. | 27. He pretends to have. |
| 13. We commence to sell. | 28. We promise to take. |
| 14. You commence to ask. | 29. You seem to wish. |
| 15. They commence to jump. | 30. They force us to be. |

31. We will go with thee, 217.—32. We give thee our books, 217.—33. Work more and more, 215.—34. She studies less and less, 215.—35. He is always eating, unless he is sick, 218.—36. You will be victorious, unless you want courage, 218.—37. We will listen to their observations, unless they are too tedious, 218.—38. We shall finish our task, if we can.—39. More and more beautiful, 215.—40. More and more useful, 215.—41. More and more intelligent, 215.—42. He predicts, 216.—43. We contradict, 216.—44. You slander, 216.—45. Let us interdict, 216.—46. We will interdict, 216.—47. Let us obey.—48. Let us begin.—49. Listen to me.

se servent de leurs bras ; pourquoi ne
 themselves serve
te sers-tu pas des tiens ? ”
 servest thine

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

“ What are you thinking of ? Speak. How can you hope to thrive, if you waste your time thus ? How will you save yourself from beggary, when I am dead ? What resources will you have, when you are obliged to shift for yourself ? Tell me, don't you think you will repent then ? Just look at the children of my fellow-workmen. They are in the same position as yourself, remember ; and yet, do you not see them at work from morning till night ? Are you not as strong as they ? They put their hands to work ; why don't you put yours ? ”

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la vingt-cinquième.
Par quelle question cette leçon commence-t-elle ?	“ A quoi penses-tu ? ”
Qui faisait cette question ?	Le père d'Alexis.
A qui faisait-il cette question ?	A son fils.
Qu'est-ce que le fils ne pouvait pas espérer, s'il perdait son temps ?	Il ne pouvait pas espérer de faire son chemin.
Que perdait-il ?	Il perdait son temps.
De quoi sera-t-il obligé de se défendre, quand son père ne sera plus ?	Il sera obligé de se défendre de la misère.
Quand sera-t-il obligé de se défendre de la misère ?	Quand son père ne sera plus.
Quand manquera-t-il de ressources ?	Quand il sera obligé de se suffire à lui-même.

Qu'arrivera-t-il probablement, quand il manquera de ressour- ces?	Il se repentira.
Sur qui son père lui disait-il de jeter les yeux?	Sur les enfants de ses confrères.
Ces enfants étaient-ils les supé- rieurs ou les inférieurs d'Alexis?	Ils étaient ses égaux.
Que faisaient-ils depuis le matin jusqu'au soir?	Ils travaillaient— <i>or</i> , Ils étaient à l'ouvrage.
Quand travaillaient-ils?	Depuis le matin jusqu'au soir.
Alexis était-il moins fort qu'eux?	Il était aussi fort qu'eux.
De quoi ces enfants se servaient- ils?	Ils se servaient de leurs bras.
Quelle question le père faisait-il, après avoir dit qu'ils se ser- vaient de leurs bras?	“Pourquoi ne te sers-tu pas des tiens?”

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Bonjour, camarade.
 Bonjour, mon ami.
 Comment cela va-t-il?
 Toujours de même. Et toi?
 Mais, assez bien.
 Tu as l'air triste.
 Je le suis aussi.
 Pourquoi donc?
 J'ai perdu mon père.
 Pauvre garçon! Tu es bien à
 plaindre.
 C'était un brave et digne homme.
 T'a-t-il laissé de la fortune?
 Rien du tout, mon cher.
 As-tu des ressources?
 Quand un homme est jeune, fort
 et actif, il a toujours des res-
 sources.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

Good morning, comrade.
 Good morning, my dear fellow.
 How are you?
 Always the same. And how are
 you?
 Why, pretty well.
 You look sad.
 I am so indeed.
 Why?
 I have lost my father.
 Poor fellow! You are much to
 be pitied.
 He was an honest worthy man.
 Has he left you any fortune?
 Nothing at all, my dear fellow.
 Have you any resources?
 When a man is young, strong,
 and active, he always has re-
 sources.

Que fais-tu ?

Je travaille chez un menuisier.

Quoi ! tu es ouvrier ?

Pourquoi pas ?

Tu as cependant reçu une belle éducation.

C'est vrai ; mais pour utiliser une belle éducation, il faut de l'argent ou des protections.

De l'argent, nous en avons à ton service.

Je te suis obligé, mais je n'en veux pas.

Et des protections, tu peux en avoir bien facilement.

Oui, mais il faut les demander, et c'est ce que je n'aime pas faire.

Tu es un original.

Je me trouve heureux comme cela.

What are you doing ?

I work at a joiner's.

What ! are you a workman ?

Why not ?

You have received a fine education however.

It is true ; but in order to avail one's self of a fine education, one must have money or protection.

As for money, we have some at your service.

I am obliged to you, but I will not have any of it.

And as for protection, you can very easily get that.

Yes, but I must beg for it, and that is what I do not like to do.

You are an eccentric fellow.

I am happy such as I am.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

VINGT-CINQUIÈME, twenty-fifth, comes from *vingt-cinq*, twenty-five.

A *quoi penses-tu ?* what art thou thinking of?—

* literally, to what art thou thinking ?

219. Certain verbs require to be followed by a different preposition in French than in English.

Ex. Think of me, *Pensez à moi.*

Answer my question, *Répondez à ma question.*

Others require to be used without a preposition, contrary to English usage.

Ex. Listen to me, *Écoutez-moi.*

Wait for me, *Attendez-moi.*

They will be explained as they occur in the text.

Parle, speak.

220. The imperative is generally like the indicative present, leaving out the pronouns.

Indicative Present.		Imperative.	
<i>Tu finis</i> ,	thou finishest.	<i>Finis</i> ,	finish (thou).
<i>Nous finissons</i> ,	we finish.	<i>Finissons</i> ,	let us finish.
<i>Vous finissez</i> ,	you finish.	<i>Finissez</i> ,	finish (you).
<i>Tu rends</i> ,	thou givest back.	<i>Rends</i> ,	give (thou) back.
<i>Nous rendons</i> ,	we give back.	<i>Rendons</i> ,	let us give back.
<i>Vous rendez</i> ,	you give back.	<i>Rendez</i> ,	give (you) back.

221. But the verbs ending with **es**, in the second person singular of the indicative present, drop the *s* in the imperative.

Indicative Present.		Imperative.	
<i>Tu parles</i> ,	thou speakest.	<i>Parle</i> ,	speak (thou).
<i>Nous parlons</i> ,	we speak.	<i>Parlons</i> ,	let us speak.
<i>Vous parlez</i> ,	you speak.	<i>Parlez</i> ,	speak (you).

The exceptions to rule 220 are: *Aie*, have (thou); *ayons*, let us have; *ayez*, have (you); *sois*, be (thou); *soyons*, let us be; *soyez*, be (you); *va*, go (thou); and *sache*, know (thou); *sachons*, let us know; *sachez*, know (you).

Quand je ne serai plus, when I shall be no more.

222. **Plus**, more, means *no more*, *not more*, and *not any more*, when **ne** is put before the verb.

Ex. *Je n'ai plus de pain*, I have no more bread.

Te suffire à toi-même.

223. The personal pronouns, **moi**, **toi**, **lui**, **elle**, **soi**, **nous**, **vous**, **eux**, **elles**, combine with the adjective **même**, and acquire the following significations: *Moi-même*, myself; *toi-même*, thyself; *lui-même*, himself, itself (masc.); *elle-même*, herself, itself (fem.); *soi-même*, one's self; *nous-mêmes*, ourselves; *vous-même*, yourself; *vous-mêmes*, yourselves; *eux-mêmes*, themselves (masc.); *elles-mêmes*, themselves (fem.).

In this phrase, *à toi-même* is not indispensable, for it has precisely the same meaning as *te*, placed before the verb. The pronouns *moi-même*, *toi-même*, *nous-mêmes*, etc., sometimes

necessary to avoid ambiguity, may also be used as mere expletives, for the sake of emphasis.

NE TE REPENTIRAS-TU PAS? wilt thou not repent? is the second person singular of the future tense of *se repentir*, to repent, one of the most necessary irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Se Repentir**, TO REPENT.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Se repentir, to repent.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Se repentant, repenting.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je me repens,</i>	I repent,	am repenting, or do repent.
<i>Tu te repens,</i>	thou repentest,	art repenting, or dost repent.
<i>Il se repent,</i>	he repents,	is repenting, or does repent.
<i>Nous nous repentons,</i>	we repent,	are repenting, or do repent.
<i>Vous vous repentiez,</i>	you repent,	are repenting, or do repent.
<i>Ils se repentent,</i>	they repent,	are repenting, or do repent.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je me repentai,</i>	I repented,	or was repenting.
<i>Tu te repentai,</i>	thou repentedst,	or wast repenting.
<i>Il se repentait,</i>	he repented,	or was repenting.
<i>Nous nous repentions,</i>	we repented,	or were repenting.
<i>Vous vous repentiez,</i>	you repented,	or were repenting.
<i>Ils se repentaient,</i>	they repented,	or were repenting.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je me repentis,</i>	I repented,	or did repent.
<i>Tu te repentis,</i>	thou repentedst,	or didst repent.
<i>Il se repentit,</i>	he repented,	or did repent.
<i>Nous nous repentîmes,</i>	we repented,	or did repent.
<i>Vous vous repentîtes,</i>	you repented,	or did repent.
<i>Ils se repentirent,</i>	they repented,	or did repent.

FUTURE.

<i>Je me repentirai,</i>	I shall repent,	or will repent.
<i>Tu te repentiras,</i>	thou shalt repent,	or wilt repent.
<i>Il se repentira,</i>	he shall repent,	or will repent.
<i>Nous nous repentirons,</i>	we shall repent,	or will repent.
<i>Vous vous repentirez,</i>	you shall repent,	or will repent.
<i>Ils se repentiront,</i>	they shall repent,	or will repent.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je me repentirais,</i>	I should repent,	or would repent.
<i>Tu te repentirais,</i>	thou shouldst repent,	or wouldst repent.
<i>Il se repentirait,</i>	he should repent,	or would repent.
<i>Nous nous repentirions,</i>	we should repent,	or would repent.
<i>Vous vous repentiriez,</i>	you should repent,	or would repent.
<i>Ils se repentiraient,</i>	they should repent,	or would repent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Repens-toi,</i>	repent (thou).
<i>Repentons-nous,</i>	let us repent.
<i>Repentez-vous,</i>	repent (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je me repente,</i>	that I may repent.
<i>Que tu te repentes,</i>	that thou mayst repent.
<i>Qu'il se repente,</i>	that he may repent.
<i>Que nous nous repentions,</i>	that we may repent.
<i>Que vous vous repentiez,</i>	that you may repent.
<i>Qu'ils se repentent,</i>	that they may repent.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je me repentisse,</i>	that I might repent.
<i>Que tu te repentisses,</i>	that thou mightst repent.
<i>Qu'il se repentît,</i>	that he might repent.
<i>Que nous nous repentissions,</i>	that we might repent.
<i>Que vous vous repentissiez,</i>	that you might repent.
<i>Qu'ils se repentissent,</i>	that they might repent.

JETTE is the second person singular of the imperative mood of *jeter*, to throw.

224. Verbs ending in **eter** and **eler**, as *jeter*, to throw; *appeler*, to call, double the consonant *t* or *l* before *e* mute; as, *Je jette*, I throw; *j'appelle*, I call; *nous jetterons*, we shall throw; *nous appellerons*, we shall call.

225. The most important exceptions to this rule are: *Acheter*, to buy; *geler*, to freeze; and *peler*, to peel. In these the *t* or *l* is not doubled, but a grave accent modifies the sound of the first *e*, just as a double consonant would do, thus: *J'achète*, I buy; *il gèle*, it freezes, etc.

226. The verbs ending in **eter** and **eler** must not be confounded with those in **éter** and **éler**, as *inquiéter*, to disquiet; *révéler*, to reveal. In the latter, the acute accent (') is changed into a grave accent, without doubling the consonant before *e* mute, thus: *J'inquiète*, I disquiet; *je révèle*, I reveal.

Pourquoi ne te sers-tu pas des tiens?

Why dost thou not make use of thine?

227. All the observations made on *le sien* (60), apply also to **Le tien, la tienne, les tiens, les tiennes**, thine.

228. The article *le, la, les*, which enters into the composition of the possessive pronouns, continues subject to contraction, as follows:

Du tien, de la tienne, des tiens, des tiennes, of thine.
Au tien, à la tienne, aux tiens, aux tiennes, to thine.

Ex. *Le chapeau de mon fils, du tien, du sien,*
the hat of my son, of thine, of his or of hers.

Le chapeau de ma fille, de la tienne, de la sienne,
the hat of my daughter, of thine, of his or of hers.

Les chapeaux de nos enfants, des tiens, des siens,
the hats of our children, of thine, of his or of hers.

Ouvrage, work, is masculine by exception.

Penser, to think, to reflect; *espérer*, to hope; *obliger*, to oblige; and *songer*, to dream, to think, are regular verbs of the first conjugation; *perdre*, to lose; *défendre*, to defend; and

répondre, to answer, are of the third. *Pouvoir*, to be able; *suffire*, to suffice; and *servir*, to serve, are irregular verbs, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. We fill. | 13. We collect. |
| 2. You fill. | 14. You collect. |
| 3. Let us fill, 220. | 15. Let us collect, 220. |
| 4. Fill. | 16. Collect. |
| 5. We answer. | 17. We defend. |
| 6. You answer. | 18. You defend. |
| 7. Let us answer. | 19. Let us defend. |
| 8. Answer. | 20. Defend. |
| 9. We hope. | 21. We think. |
| 10. You hope. | 22. You think. |
| 11. Let us hope, 221. | 23. Let us think, 221. |
| 12. Hope. | 24. Think. |

25. You work much.—26. You do not listen to me.—27. Work while you are young.—28. Bring your fish-hooks.—29. Finish your task.—30. Defend your friends.—31. Do not lose your books.—32. You learn easily.—33. Do you understand what I say?—34. You will not lose your time.—35. Let us be friends.—36. Let us sell our fish.—37. Do you call me?—38. Yes, sir; I call you.—39. This is my book, and that is thine, 227.—40. My position is not better than thine, 227.—41. My comrades are not thine, 227.—42. We shall answer him when he speaks to us, 219.—43. Will you come with me?—44. I will.—45. William is not as ungrateful as James.—46. You are younger than I.—47. You pronounce as well as he.—48. You will oblige me.—49. Have you lost any thing?—50. I do not think so.

TWENTY-SIXTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingt-sixième leçon.

“ Lorsque j’étais à mon aise, je nour-

When was ease nour-

rissais l’espoir de te voir occuper dans le

ished hope to see to occupy

monde un rang plus brillant que le mien.

world rank brilliant than mine

Je désirais que tu t’élevasses | au-dessus

desired rose (subj.) above

de | ta famille, et que tu en fusses l’orgueil

thy family of it wert pride

et l’appui. Il fallait pour cela que tu

support must (imperf.)

eusses de l’instruction ; aucun sacrifice

hadst (subj.) instruction sacrifice

ne m’a coûté pour te mettre à même d’en

cost to put in condition some

acquérir. Ton excellente mère, dont je

to acquire excellent whose

ne cesse de pleurer la perte, avait

cease to weep loss

combattu mes projets ; mais j’avais fini

fought (contended) projects had finished

par les lui faire partager. J'attendais de
 to her to share expected
ton élévation le bonheur de ma vieillesse."
 elevation happiness old age.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"When I was in easy circumstances, I entertained a hope of seeing you hold in the world a more brilliant station than mine. I wished you might rise above your family, to be our pride and support. For this, it was necessary you should have learning; I grudged no sacrifice to enable you to acquire it. Your excellent mother, whose loss I incessantly lament, opposed my projects; but I had at last prevailed on her to adopt them. I relied on your advancement for the happiness of my old age."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la vingt-sixième.
Quel rang Delatour désirait-il que son fils occupât dans le monde ?	Un rang plus brillant que le sien.
Où désirait-il qu'il occupât un rang plus brillant que le sien ?	Dans le monde.
Quel espoir nourrissait-il ?	L'espoir de voir son fils occuper dans le monde un rang plus brillant que le sien.
Quand nourrissait-il cet espoir ?	Lorsqu'il était à son aise.
Que désirait-il encore ?	Que son fils s'élevât au-dessus de sa famille, et qu'il en fût l'orgueil et l'appui.
Que fallait-il pour cela ?	Il fallait que son fils (<i>or</i> qu'Alexis) eût de l'instruction.
Le père avait-il fait quelque chose pour le mettre à même d'en acquérir ?	Aucun sacrifice ne lui avait coûté pour cela.
Pourquoi le père avait-il fait des sacrifices ?	Pour mettre son fils à même d'acquérir de l'instruction.

Qui est-ce qui avait combattu ses projets ?	L'excellente mère d'Alexis.
Qu'est-ce qu'elle avait combattu ?	Les projets de Monsieur Delatour.
Les avait-elle toujours combattus ?	Non. Il avait fini par les lui faire partager.
Alexis avait-il encore sa mère ?	Non ; car Delatour ne cessait de pleurer sa perte.
Qu'est-ce que Delatour attendait de l'élévation de son fils ?	Il en attendait le bonheur de sa vieillesse.
De quoi attendait-il le bonheur de sa vieillesse ?	De l'élévation de son fils.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Eh bien, mon cher monsieur, où en sommes-nous de nos études ?	Well, my dear sir, how do we get on with our studies ?
Est-ce de l'étude du français que vous voulez parler ?	Do you mean the study of the French language ?
Oui. Cela va sans dire.	Of course, I do.
Mais, j'avance petit à petit.	Well, I am getting forward by degrees.
Vous prononcez très-bien.	You pronounce very well.
Vous avez bien de l'indulgence.	You are very indulgent.
Non. Je vous dis ce que je pense.	No. I say what I think.
Je parle plus facilement que je ne comprends.	I speak more easily than I understand.
Mais vous me comprenez bien, cependant.	But you understand me very well, however.
Quand vous me parlez, je comprends tout ce que vous dites.	When you speak to me, I understand every word you say.
Mais quand vous parlez avec vos amis, je m'imagine quelquefois que ce n'est plus la même langue.	But when you are talking with your friends, I sometimes imagine it is not the same language.
C'est que je ne parle pas aussi doucement avec eux qu'avec vous.	That is because I do not speak so slowly with them as I do with you.

Je m'en doute bien.

Combien y a-t-il que vous apprenez ?

Il y a quatre mois.

Vous n'avez pas perdu votre temps.

Mon ami, qui a commencé bien plus tard, parle plus facilement que moi.

Il travaille sans doute plus que vous ?

Non. Il ne travaille pas du tout.

Alors, c'est qu'il a beaucoup de mémoire.

C'est possible.

Prenez-vous beaucoup de leçons ?

J'en prends une tous les huit jours.

Ce n'est pas assez.

Vous croyez ?

J'en suis sûr. Vous avez le temps d'oublier d'une leçon à l'autre ce que vous avez appris.

Je crois que vous avez raison.

Il faut prendre une leçon tous les deux jours.

Bien.

Mais, je voudrais savoir si vous êtes très-attentif pendant votre leçon.

Il me semble que oui.

Est-ce que vous ne pensez jamais à autre chose ?

Pourquoi cette question ?

Parce-que nous appelons souvent manque de mémoire ou de capacité ce qui est seulement manque d'attention.

Quand vous prenez votre leçon, il ne faut penser qu'à votre leçon.

I suppose that is it.

How long have you been learning ?

Four months.

You have not lost your time.

My friend, who began much later, speaks more easily than I do.

He probably works more than you ?

No. He does not work at all.

Then, he must have a very good memory.

It may be.

Do you take many lessons ?

I take one every week.

It is not enough.

You believe it is not ?

I am positive. You have time between one lesson and another to forget what you have learned.

I believe you are right.

You must take a lesson every other day.

Very well.

But I should like to know whether you are very attentive during your lesson.

I think I am.

Do you never think of any thing else ?

Wherefore this question ?

Because we often call want of memory or capacity what is merely want of attention.

When you are taking your lesson, you should think of nothing but your lesson.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

VINGT-SIXIÈME, twenty-sixth, comes from *vingt-six*, twenty-six.

A mon aise, Ton élévation, Ton excellente mère,
at my ease. thy elevation. thy excellent mother.

229. **Mon, ton, son**, are used instead of **ma. ta, sa**, before a word fem. sing. beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute. (72.)

Un rang plus brillant que le mien,
A rank more brilliant than mine.

230. **Le mien**, mine, is subject to the same rules as **le tien**, thine, and **le sien**, his or hers.

All possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the person or thing possessed, and not with the possessor. (60.)

Ex. *Ce chapeau est le mien,* this hat is mine.
Cette casquette est la mienne, this cap is mine.
Ces chapeaux sont les miens, these hats are mine.
Ces casquettes sont les miennes, these caps are mine.

Pour te mettre à même d'en acquérir.

METTRE À MÊME is an idiomatic locution, which signifies *to enable*. The literal translation of this phrase is, *To enable thee to acquire* SOME. The pronoun *some* is the direct regimen of *acquire*.

231. When *some* or *any* is the direct regimen of a verb, it is rendered by **en**, which has to be placed before the verb, except in imperative affirmative sentences. *Give him some*, would have to be translated by *donnez-lui-en*.

METTRE, to put, is one of the most necessary irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Mettre**, TO PUT.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Mettre, to put.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Mettant, putting.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Mis, put.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je mets,</i>	I put,	am putting, or do put.
<i>Tu mets,</i>	thou puttest,	art putting, or dost put.
<i>Il met,</i>	he puts,	is putting, or does put.
<i>Nous mettons,</i>	we put,	are putting, or do put.
<i>Vous mettez,</i>	you put,	are putting, or do put.
<i>Ils mettent,</i>	they put,	are putting, or do put.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je mettais,</i>	I put,	or was putting.
<i>Tu mettais,</i>	thou puttest,	or wast putting.
<i>Il mettait,</i>	he put,	or was putting.
<i>Nous mettions,</i>	we put,	or were putting.
<i>Vous mettiez,</i>	you put,	or were putting.
<i>Ils mettaient,</i>	they put,	or were putting.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je mis,</i>	I put,	or did put.
<i>Tu mis,</i>	thou puttest,	or didst put.
<i>Il mit,</i>	he put,	or did put.
<i>Nous mîmes,</i>	we put,	or did put.
<i>Vous mîtes,</i>	you put,	or did put.
<i>Ils mirent,</i>	they put,	or did put.

FUTURE.

<i>Je mettrai,</i>	I shall put,	or will put.
<i>Tu mettras,</i>	thou shalt put,	or wilt put.
<i>Il mettra,</i>	he shall put,	or will put.
<i>Nous mettrons,</i>	we shall put,	or will put.
<i>Vous mettrez,</i>	you shall put,	or will put.
<i>Ils mettront,</i>	they shall put,	or will put.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je mettrais,</i>	I should put,	or would put.
<i>Tu mettrais,</i>	thou shouldst put,	or wouldst put.
<i>Il mettrait,</i>	he should put,	or would put.
<i>Nous mettrions,</i>	we should put,	or would put.
<i>Vous mettriez,</i>	you should put,	or would put.
<i>Ils mettraient,</i>	they should put,	or would put.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Mets, put (thou).

Mettons, let us put.

Mettez, put (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je mette,</i>	that I may put.
<i>Que tu mettes,</i>	that thou mayst put.
<i>Qu'il mette,</i>	that he may put.
<i>Que nous mettions,</i>	that we may put.
<i>Que vous mettiez,</i>	that you may put.
<i>Qu'ils mettent,</i>	that they may put.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je misse,</i>	that I might put.
<i>Que tu misses,</i>	that thou mightst put.
<i>Qu'il mît,</i>	that he might put.
<i>Que nous missions,</i>	that we might put.
<i>Que vous missiez,</i>	that you might put.
<i>Qu'ils missent,</i>	that they might put.

232. Thus are conjugated *admettre*, to admit; *commettre*, to commit; *compromettre*, to compromise; *promettre*, to promise; *omettre*, to omit; *permettre*, to permit; *remettre*, to put again; *soumettre*, to submit; *transmettre*, to transmit, etc.

Dont *je ne cesse de pleurer la perte.*

In this phrase, *dont* signifies *whose*. It determines the substantive *perte*, which is the regimen of *pleurer*, and is preceded by the article *la*.

233. When **dont** signifies *whose*, and accordingly determines the sense of a substantive, that substantive must always be preceded by the article; and if it is the regimen of a verb, it must be placed after the verb, instead of following the pronoun as it does in English, when we say, *WHOSE LOSS I do not cease to lament.*

234. If the substantive determined by **dont** is the subject of the verb, it occupies the same place as in English, but is still preceded by the article.

EX. DONT LA PERTE *me désole*, whose loss grieves me.

Les lui faire partager.

235. When several objective pronouns precede a verb, **le**, **la**, **les** are placed before **lui** and **leur**, and after **me**, **te**, **se**, **nous**, and **vous**.

This completes the study of the particular order in which the small words which have to be placed before the verb follow each other.

236. **En** is always nearest to the verb—**ne** always farthest off; while the rest are grouped in between, according to the above rule (235).

In *les lui faire partager*, *lui* is the indirect regimen of *faire partager*. It refers to *mère*, and signifies *à elle*, to her.

237. The pronoun **lui** never refers to a feminine substantive, except when it is an indirect regimen.

This completes the study of the personal pronouns in French, which are :

For the nominative case.

238. **Je**, *I* ; **tu**, *thou* ; **il**, *he*, or *it* ; **elle**, *she*, or *it* ; **nous**, *we* ; **vous**, *you* ; **ils** (masc.), **elles** (fem.), *they*.

239. **Moi**, **toi**, **lui**, **eux**, are used instead of **je**, **tu**, **il**, **ils**, when used isolately ; that is to say, when the verb which the pronoun governs is understood, which happens chiefly after **c'est**, *it is*, and **que**, meaning *only*, *than*, or *as*.

EX. *C'est moi*, it is I ; *aussi grand que lui*, as tall as he.

For the objective case.

240. **Me**, *me*, or *to me* ; **te**, *thee*, or *to thee* ; **le**, *him*, or *it* ; **la**, *her*, or *it* ; **lui**, *to him*, or *to her* ; **nous**, *us*, or *to us* ; **vous**, *you*, or *to you* ; **les**, *them* ; **leur**, *to them*.

241. These are generally placed before the verb, except in affirmative imperative sentences, when they should invariably be put after it, and **moi** and **toi** be used instead of **me** and **te**.—EX. *Voulez-vous me donner ?* will you give me ? *Donnez-moi*, give me.

242. **Moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles**, must also be used to render *me, thee, him, her, us, you, them*, after any other preposition than *to*; and even then, if *to* is preceded by **c'est**, *it is*, or **que**, meaning *as, than, or only*.

Ex. *C'est à moi qu'il parle*, it is to me he speaks.

J'étais avec eux, I was with them.

243. It is translated by **ce**, *only*, before **est**, *is*, when it can be replaced by *this*, or *that*, in English, without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence. Before any other verb not an impersonal one, it is translated by **ceci**, *this*, or **cela**, *that*. In all impersonal verbs, it is translated by **il**.

244. But owing to the absence of the neuter gender in French, inanimate objects are always spoken of either in the masculine or in the feminine, and it has therefore to be translated in turn by **il, elle, le, or la**.

245. The best plan to be pursued in such cases is to replace at once the word *it* by *he, she, him, or her*, according to the gender of the French noun referred to, and to translate it regularly as a personal pronoun.—Ex. Where is my hat? *Où est mon chapeau?* It is on the table, *il est sur la table*—literally, He is on the table. Give it to me, *donnez-le-moi*—literally, Give him to me.

246. OF OR FROM IT, OR THEM, is translated by **en**; and TO IT, OR TO THEM, by **y**. (113–118.)

Sacrifice, sacrifice, and *monde*, world, are masculine by exception.

Occuper, to occupy; *désirer*, to desire; *élever*, to elevate; *coûter*, to cost; *cesser*, to cease; *pleurer*, to weep; and *partager*, to partake, are regular verbs of the first conjugation; *attendre*, to wait, to expect, is of the third.

Nourrir, to nourish, and *acquérir*, to acquire, are irregular verbs, which will be explained later. *Combattu*, a form of *combattre*, to fight, to contend, is a derivative of *battre*, to beat.

247. The irregularity of *battre*, and its derivatives, is very slight: it consists in not doubling the *t* in the three persons singular of the present of the indicative,—*je bats, tu bats, il bat*, instead of *je batts*, etc.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. I promise, 232. | 17. I omit, 232. |
| 2. He promises. | 18. He omits. |
| 3. We promise. | 19. We omit. |
| 4. You promise. | 20. You omit. |
| 5. They promise. | 21. They omit. |
| 6. I was promising. | 22. I was omitting. |
| 7. I did promise. | 23. I did omit. |
| 8. I shall promise. | 24. I shall omit. |
| 9. I should promise. | 25. I should omit. |
| 10. Let us promise. | 26. Let us omit. |
| 11. Promise. | 27. Omit. |
| 12. That I may promise. | 28. That I may omit. |
| 13. That I might promise. | 29. That I might omit. |
| 14. To promise. | 30. To omit. |
| 15. Promising. | 31. Omitting. |
| 16. I have promised. | 32. I have omitted. |

33. I reflected little when I was young.—34. I used to interrupt those who were speaking.—35. I used to promise things which I could not give.—36. James is your friend, but he is not mine, 230.—37. I love her children, as if they were mine, 230.—38. Your resources are greater than mine, 230.—39. I listened to all their observations.—40. I often worked with them.—41. You have alleviated our position.—42. My ambition is great, 229.—43. Thy observation is just, 229.—44. His history will not be long, 229.—45. I have money enough : my father has given me some.—46. Do you accept my invitation? 229.—47. When shall I speak to her?—48. What have you to say to him?—49. She says that you forget her.

TWENTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingt-septième leçon.

“ Quelque place que tu remplisses, je ne
 Whatever place filledst (subj.)
doutais pas que tu ne répondisses à mon
 doubted answeredst (subj.)
attente. Mon fils, me disais-je, aura les
 expectation said will have
professeurs les plus distingués; il s'ins-
 professors most distinguished will
truira, deviendra célèbre, et me bénira
 instruct will become celebrated will bless
de lui avoir ouvert la carrière de la vraie
 to him opened career
gloire, de celle que l'on tient de soi-même
 glory holds one's self
et non de ses aïeux. Mais, tu le sais, des
 not one's ancestors knowest some
personnes sur l'honneur desquelles je
 persons honor of whom
croyais pouvoir compter, trahirent ma
 believed to be able to rely betrayed
confiance de la manière la plus honteuse
 trust in shameful
et la plus infâme. Je perdis subitement
 infamous lost suddenly
le fruit de trente ans de travail.”
 fruit years labor

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"Whatever place you might occupy, I did not doubt but you would realize my expectations. My son, thought I, will have the most eminent professors ; he will acquire learning, will become a celebrated man, and bless me for having pointed out to him the path of true glory ; that glory for which we are indebted to ourselves and not to our ancestors. But, you know, some persons, on whose honor I thought I might rely, betrayed my trust in the most shameful and infamous manner. I suddenly lost the fruit of thirty years' labor."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la vingt-septième.
De quoi Delatour ne doutait-il pas ?	Il ne doutait pas que son fils ne répondît à son attente.
Dites cela avec les expressions de Delatour.	"Quelque place que tu remplisses, je ne doutais pas que tu ne répondisses à mon attente."
Pour parler encore comme Delatour, quels professeurs son fils aura-t-il ?	Les professeurs les plus distingués.
Que fera-t-il avec l'assistance de ces professeurs ?	Il s'instruira.
Que deviendra-t-il ?	Il deviendra célèbre.
Qui bénira-t-il ?	Il bénira son père.
De quoi le bénira-t-il ?	De lui avoir ouvert la carrière de la vraie gloire.
Quelle est la vraie gloire ?	Celle que l'on tient de soi-même, et non de ses aïeux.
Quelles étaient les personnes qui trahirent la confiance de Delatour ?	Des personnes sur l'honneur desquelles il croyait pouvoir compter.
Que firent ces personnes ?	Elles trahirent sa confiance.
De quelle manière trahirent-elles sa confiance ?	De la manière la plus honteuse et la plus infâme.
Qu'est-ce que Delatour perdit subitement ?	Le fruit de trente ans de travail.

Perdit-il en plusieurs fois le fruit de son travail?	Non ; il le perdit subitement.
Savez-vous comment il le perdit?	Oui ; ce fut par la banqueroute de deux maisons de commerce.
Pendant combien de temps Delatour avait-il travaillé, quand il perdit ses épargnes ?	Pendant trente ans.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Je suis allé chez vous hier, mais vous n'y étiez pas.	I called on you yesterday, but you were not at home.
On me l'a dit. Je suis bien fâché de ne pas m'y être trouvé.	So I heard. I am very sorry I was out.
J'ai un projet dont je désire vous entretenir.	I have a project I wish to speak to you about.
Je suis à votre disposition.	I am at your service.
J'ai quelques épargnes que je voudrais utiliser.	I have a few savings that I wish to make the best of.
C'est bien facile.	That is very easy.
Pas si facile que vous le croyez.	Not so easy as you think.
Comment donc cela ?	How so ?
Je ne voudrais pas m'exposer à perdre mon argent.	I should not like to run the risk of losing my money.
Bien entendu.	Of course.
Et cependant je voudrais en retirer le plus possible.	And yet I want to make it produce as much as possible.
Vous avez raison.	You are right.
Je ne veux pas faire de spéculations, parce que je n'y entends rien.	I will not speculate, because I am unfit for it.
Mais alors, que comptez-vous faire ?	Well, then, what do you intend to do ?
Si je plaçais mon argent dans une maison de commerce ?	Suppose I were to place my money in a commercial house ?
Vous feriez peut-être bien.	Perhaps you would do well.
Connaissez-vous la maison Jacques, Guillaume et compagnie ?	Do you know the firm of James, William and company ?
J'en ai entendu parler.	I have heard of it.

Est-elle bonne?	Is it solvent?
Je le crois.	I believe it is.
On me dit que si j'y place mon argent, il me rapportera de dix à douze pour cent.	They tell me that if I place my money there, it will produce between ten and twelve per cent.
Cela ne m'étonne pas.	I should not be surprised if it did.
Que me conseillez-vous?	What do you advise me to do?
Je vous conseille de ne pas trop vous presser.	I advise you not to be too hasty.
Vous pensez donc que la maison n'est pas sûre?	So, you think the house is not to be trusted?
Je ne dis pas cela. Mais je prendrai des informations.	I do not say that. But I will make some inquiries.
Vous êtes bien bon.	You are very kind.
Où vous retrouverai-je?	Where shall I meet you again?
Où vous voudrez. Donnez-moi un rendez-vous.	Where you please. Make an appointment.
Eh bien, chez moi, demain, à deux heures.	Well, at my place, to-morrow, at two o'clock.
J'y serai.	I will be there.

SECOND DIVISION.--THEORETICAL PART.

VINGT-SEPTIÈME, twenty-seventh, comes from *vingt-sept*, twenty-seven.

Les professeurs les plus distingués.
the most distinguished professors.

248. When an adjective, in the superlative degree, precedes the substantive, one article serves for both; as, *Les plus grands garçons*, the largest boys: but when the adjective follows, the article must be repeated before it.

De la manière la plus honteuse et la plus infâme,
in the most shameful and infamous manner.

249. When there are several adjectives, the article is repeated each time before the words *plus*, more; *moins*, less; *mieux*, better.

OUVERT is the past participle of *ouvrir*, to open, one of the most important irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Ouvrir**, TO OPEN.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Ouvrir, to open.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Ouvrant, opening.

Ouvert, opened.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>J'ouvre,</i>	I open,	am opening, or do open.
<i>Tu ouvres,</i>	thou openest,	art opening, or dost open.
<i>Il ouvre,</i>	he opens,	is opening, or does open.
<i>Nous ouvrons,</i>	we open,	are opening, or do open.
<i>Vous ouvrez,</i>	you open,	are opening, or do open.
<i>Ils ouvrent,</i>	they open,	are opening, or do open.

IMPERFECT.

<i>J'ouvrais,</i>	I opened,	or was opening.
<i>Tu ouvrais,</i>	thou openedst,	or wast opening.
<i>Il ouvrirait,</i>	he opened,	or was opening.
<i>Nous ouvririons,</i>	we opened,	or were opening.
<i>Vous ouvririez,</i>	you opened,	or were opening.
<i>Ils ouvriraient,</i>	they opened,	or were opening.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>J'ouvris,</i>	I opened,	or did open.
<i>Tu ouvris,</i>	thou openedst,	or didst open.
<i>Il ouvrit,</i>	he opened,	or did open.
<i>Nous ouvrîmes,</i>	we opened,	or did open.
<i>Vous ouvrîtes,</i>	you opened,	or did open.
<i>Ils ouvrirent,</i>	they opened,	or did open.

FUTURE.

<i>J'ouvrirai,</i>	I shall open,	or will open.
<i>Tu ouvriras,</i>	thou shalt open,	or wilt open.
<i>Il ouvrira,</i>	he shall open,	or will open.
<i>Nous ouvrirons,</i>	we shall open,	or will open.
<i>Vous ouvrirez,</i>	you shall open,	or will open.
<i>Ils ouvriront,</i>	they shall open,	or will open.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>J'ouvrirais,</i>	I should open,	or would open.
<i>Tu ouvrirais,</i>	thou shouldst open,	or wouldst open.
<i>Il ouvrirait,</i>	he should open,	or would open.
<i>Nous ouvririons,</i>	we should open,	or would open.
<i>Vous ouvririez,</i>	you should open,	or would open.
<i>Ils ouvriraient,</i>	they should open,	or would open.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Ouvre,</i>	open (thou).
<i>Ouvrons,</i>	let us open.
<i>Ouvrez,</i>	open (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que j'ouvre,</i>	that I may open.
<i>Que tu ouvres,</i>	that thou mayst open.
<i>Qu'il ouvre,</i>	that he may open.
<i>Que nous ouvrions,</i>	that we may open.
<i>Que vous ouvriez,</i>	that you may open.
<i>Qu'ils ouvrent,</i>	that they may open.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que j'ouvrisse,</i>	that I might open.
<i>Que tu ouvrisses,</i>	that thou mightst open.
<i>Qu'il ouvrît,</i>	that he might open.
<i>Que nous ouvrissions,</i>	that we might open.
<i>Que vous ouvrissiez,</i>	that you might open.
<i>Qu'ils ouvrissent,</i>	that they might open.

250. Thus are conjugated *couvrir*, to cover; *découvrir*, to discover, etc.

Celle que l'on tient, that which one holds.

251. The **l'** before **on** is merely euphonic, and used after *et*, *si*, *ou*, *que*, and *qui*, to avoid the hiatus. It may, however, be omitted after *que*, this word being contracted into *qu'* before a vowel. We might accordingly say, *Celle qu'on tient*.

Et non de ses aïeux, and not from one's ancestors.

252. **Non** is often used for *not*, instead of *ne pas*, particularly in elliptical phrases where the verb is not repeated, as in this instance: "*La gloire que l'on tient de soi-même et non de ses aïeux*," which stands for "*La gloire que l'on tient de soi-même et que l'on ne tient pas de ses aïeux*."

Aïeux is the irregular plural of *aïeul*.

Aïeul has two forms in the plural: **Aïeuls** and **Aïeux**. The first is used only for grandfathers. **Aïeux** signifies ancestors or forefathers.

Des personnes sur l'honneur desquelles,
some persons on whose honor.

253. **Dont** is never preceded by a preposition. Accordingly, when *whose* follows one, it must be rendered by *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, or *desquelles*, placed after the substantive in connection with *whose*.

PERSONNE, as a substantive, is always feminine, even when it is used to denote persons of the male sex. So, in speaking of a man, we should not say, *C'est un excellent personne*, but, *C'est une excellente personne*, he is an excellent person. *Personne* is not always a substantive. It will be seen later as an indefinite pronoun, signifying *nobody*, *anybody*, in which case it is always masculine and singular.

Je croyais pouvoir compter, I thought I might rely.

254. Two verbs in the infinitive mood are often placed in succession, the second being the regimen of the first.

Honneur, honor, is masculine by exception.

Douter, to doubt; *distinguer*, to distinguish; and *compter*, to

count, to intend, to rely, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *remplir*, to fill; *bénir*, to bless; and *trahir*, to betray, are of the second: *répondre*, to respond, to answer; and *perdre*, to lose, are of the third. *Instruire*, to instruct, is conjugated like *conduire*, to conduct, and *devenir* like *venir*, to come.

Tenir, to hold; *savoir*, to know; and *pouvoir*, to be able, are irregular verbs, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I cover, 250. | 15. I do not cover. |
| 2. He covers. | 16. He does not cover. |
| 3. We cover. | 17. We do not cover. |
| 4. You cover. | 18. You do not cover. |
| 5. They cover. | 19. They do not cover. |
| 6. I was covering. | 20. I was not covering. |
| 7. I did cover. | 21. I did not cover. |
| 8. I shall cover. | 22. I shall not cover. |
| 9. I should cover. | 23. I should not cover. |
| 10. Let us cover. | 24. Let us not cover. |
| 11. Cover. | 25. Do not cover. |
| 12. To cover. | 26. Not to cover. |
| 13. Covering. | 27. Not covering. |
| 14. I have covered. | 28. I have not covered. |

29. That man is a false friend; he will betray you.—30. How will this man feed his children?—31. Our forefathers were not wiser than we.—32. They have had much courage.—33. I have lost my fortune, but not my cheerfulness, 252.—34. Go with those gentlemen.—35. He loves his children too much.—36. He does not love his parents enough.—37. We have had a long conversation to-day.—38. We shall hear the most distinguished artists, 248.—39. The most useful men, 248.—40. The most intelligent boys, 248.—41. Do you hear me?—42. I hear you.—43. Fill the basket of that worthy man.—44. I thought I could distinguish myself, 254.—45. We thought we could recite well, 254.

TWENTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingt-huitième leçon.

“Quand tu revins au domicile paternel,
 returnedst domicile paternal
tu prétendis que tu n'étais pas fait pour
 pretendedst wast made
manier des outils. Tu m'assuras que tu
 to handle tools assuredst
réfléchissais aux moyens de tirer parti de
 reflectedst means to draw advantage
tes hautes facultés ; car tu prétendais être
 high faculties pretendedst
propre à tout, et personne n'était mieux
 proper nobody better
disposé que moi à te croire. Tu finis par
 disposed to believe finishedst
me demander du temps pour te décider
 to ask to decide
sur le choix d'un état. D'autres, à ma
 choice state (condition)
place, auraient été durs et sévères. Tu
 place would have been hard severe
sais pourtant avec quelle indulgence tu
 however what indulgence
fus écouté. Tu n'eus pas de peine à
 wast listened (to) hadst pain (difficulty)

obtenir de ma tendresse les délais que tu
 tenderness delays

souhaitais."
 wishedst

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"When you were again under the paternal roof, you said that you were not made to handle tools. You assured me that you were musing on the best way of employing your eminent faculties; for you boasted of being fit for any thing, and no one was better disposed than I to believe you. At last, you begged I would grant you time to make up your mind as to the choice of a profession. Others, in my place, would have been harsh and severe. You know, however, with what indulgence you were listened to. You had no difficulty to obtain from my fondness the delay you wished for."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la vingt-huitième.
Quand Alexis prétendit-il qu'il n'était pas fait pour manier des outils ?	Quand il revint au domicile paternel.
Que prétendit-il, quand il revint au domicile paternel ?	Qu'il n'était pas fait pour manier des outils.
A quoi réfléchissait-il, quand il revint au domicile paternel ?	Aux moyens de tirer parti de ses hautes facultés.
En êtes-vous sûr ?	Non. Mais il assura à son père qu'il y réfléchissait.
A quoi prétendait-il être propre ?	A tout.
Delaunoy était-il disposé à le croire ?	Personne n'était mieux disposé que lui à le croire.
Pourquoi Alexis demanda-t-il du temps ?	Pour se décider sur le choix d'un état.
Que demanda-t-il, pour se décider sur le choix d'un état ?	Il demanda du temps.

Comment d'autres, à la place du père, auraient-ils été ?	Ils auraient été durs et sévères.
Comment Alexis fut-il écouté ?	Avec indulgence.
Par qui fut-il écouté avec indulgence ?	Par son père.
Qu'est-ce qu'il n'eut pas de peine à obtenir de son père ?	Les délais qu'il souhaitait.
Lui fut-il difficile d'obtenir les délais qu'il souhaitait ?	Non. Il n'eut pas de peine à les obtenir.
Par quel sentiment son père fut-il guidé ?	Par la tendresse.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Vous avez l'air bien sérieux. A quoi pensez-vous ?	You look very serious. What are you thinking about ?
Je pense à aller en France.	I am thinking of going to France.
Quand vous proposez-vous d'y aller ?	When do you purpose going thither ?
Aussitôt qu'il me sera possible de me faire comprendre.	As soon as I can make myself understood.
Croyez-vous que ce sera bientôt ?	Do you think it will be soon ?
Mais, oui, je l'espère.	Why, yes, I hope it will.
Vous êtes plus avancé que moi.	You are more advanced than I am.
Je ne sais pas. Mais je commence à trouver des mots avec plus de facilité.	I don't know that. But I begin to find words with greater facility.
Je trouve qu'il est plus facile de parler que de comprendre.	I find it more easy to speak than to understand.
Moi aussi.	So do I.
Les Français parlent trop vite.	The French speak too fast.
Nous nous imaginons cela, parce que nous n'avons pas l'habitude de les entendre.	We imagine so, because we have not the habit of hearing them.
Ils ne parlent pas plus vite que nous.	They do not speak faster than we.
Ne trouvez-vous pas que notre	Don't you find that our friend

ami Jacques parle très-distinctement ?

Oui. J'entends tout ce qu'il dit.

C'est qu'il a la complaisance de parler doucement.

Si vous voulez, nous ferons ensemble le voyage de France.

Avec le plus grand plaisir.

Ce sera un voyage très-agréable.

Et très-instructif en même temps.

Nous irons d'abord à Boulogne, où nous passerons quelques jours.

Est-ce que vous y avez des connaissances ?

Oui, j'y ai des amis qui nous feront une bonne réception.

De là nous nous rendrons à Paris en six ou sept heures.

Ce sera charmant. Quand partirons-nous ?

Dans quinze jours, si vous voulez.

Je serai prêt.

Eh bien, c'est entendu.

James speaks very distinctly ?

Yes. I understand all that he says.

It is because he has the kindness to speak slowly.

If you are disposed, we will take our trip to France together.

With the greatest pleasure.

It will be a very agreeable journey.

And a very instructive one, at the same time.

We shall first go to Boulogne, where we shall spend a few days.

Have you any acquaintances there ?

Yes, I have some friends there, who will give us a good reception.

From there we shall reach Paris in six or seven hours.

It will be charming. When shall we start ?

In a fortnight, if you will.

I shall be ready.

Well, it is agreed on.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

VINGT-HUITIÈME, twenty-eighth, comes from *vingt-huit*, twenty-eight.

Tu revins, thou didst come back. *Tu fus*, thou wast.

Tu m'assuras, thou didst assure me. *Tu finis*, thou didst finish.

Tu prétendis, thou didst pretend. *Tu n'eus pas*, thou hadst not.

255. Most French verbs end in the past tense definite with

is, is, it, îmes, îtes, irent ;

or with **us, us, ut, ûmes, ûtes, urent.**

<i>Je finis,</i>	I did finish.	<i>J'eus,</i>	I did have.
<i>Tu finis,</i>	thou didst finish.	<i>Tu eus,</i>	thou didst have.
<i>Il finit,</i>	he did finish.	<i>Il eut,</i>	he did have.
<i>Nous finîmes,</i>	we did finish.	<i>Nous eûmes,</i>	we did have.
<i>Vous finîtes,</i>	you did finish.	<i>Vous eûtes,</i>	you did have.
<i>Ils finirent,</i>	they did finish.	<i>Ils eurent,</i>	they did have.

256. But those of the first conjugation end with

ai, as, a, âmes, âtes, èrent.

<i>Je parlai,</i>	I did speak.	<i>Nous parlâmes,</i>	we did speak.
<i>Tu parlas,</i>	thou didst speak.	<i>Vous parlâtes,</i>	you did speak.
<i>Il parla,</i>	he did speak.	<i>Ils parlèrent,</i>	they did speak.

The only exceptional words to rule 255 are *venir*, to come; and *tenir*, to hold, whose inflections are as follows :

Je vins, tu vins, il vint, nous vînmes, vous vîntes, ils vinrent.
Je tins, tu tins, il tint, nous tînmes, vous tîntes, ils tinrent.

257. It is often difficult to decide between the use of the past tense definite and imperfect, whether to say **j'avais** or **j'eus**; the better way is to change the English into WAS HAVING, USED TO HAVE, OR DID HAVE; rendering WAS HAVING and USED TO HAVE by **avais**, and DID HAVE by **eus**. In case of doubt, however, it will be best to use the perfect, **j'ai eu**, I HAVE HAD.

Personne n'était mieux disposé,
no one was better disposed.

258. **Personne**, as an indefinite pronoun, is always masculine, singular, and used without an article or any determinate word. With the negative *ne*, it signifies *no one, none, nobody*. Without the negative, it corresponds to *any one*, or *anybody*.

259. **MIEUX**, *better*, should not be confounded with **MEILLEUR**, *better*. **MIEUX** is the comparative of the adverb **BIEN**, *well*; while **MEILLEUR** is the comparative of **BON**, *good*.

D'autres auraient été durs,
others would have been hard.

260. The participle **été**, *been*, is always invariable.

TU SAIS is the second person sing. of the indicative present of *savoir*, to know, one of the most necessary irregular French verbs.

261. *Savoir* differs from *connaître*, inasmuch as *savoir* is applied to *things*, and *connaître* to *persons*.—Ex. To know a thing, *savoir une chose*; to know a person, *connaître une personne*.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Savoir**, TO KNOW.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Savoir, to know.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Sachant, knowing.

Su, known.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je sais,</i>	I know,	am knowing, or do know.
<i>Tu sais,</i>	thou knowest,	art knowing, or dost know.
<i>Il sait,</i>	he knows,	is knowing, or does know.
<i>Nous savons,</i>	we know,	are knowing, or do know.
<i>Vous savez,</i>	you know,	are knowing, or do know.
<i>Ils savent,</i>	they know,	are knowing, or do know.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je savais,</i>	I knew,	or was knowing.
<i>Tu savais,</i>	thou knewest,	or wast knowing.
<i>Il savait,</i>	he knew,	or was knowing.
<i>Nous savions,</i>	we knew,	or were knowing.
<i>Vous saviez,</i>	you knew,	or were knowing.
<i>Ils savaient,</i>	they knew,	or were knowing.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je sus,</i>	I knew,	or did know.
<i>Tu sus,</i>	thou knewest,	or didst know.
<i>Il sut,</i>	he knew,	or did know.
<i>Nous sûmes,</i>	we knew,	or did know.
<i>Vous sûtes,</i>	you knew,	or did know.
<i>Ils surent,</i>	they knew,	or did know.

FUTURE.

<i>Je saurai,</i>	I shall know,	or will know.
<i>Tu sauras,</i>	thou shalt know,	or wilt know.
<i>Il saura,</i>	he shall know,	or will know.
<i>Nous saurons,</i>	we shall know,	or will know.
<i>Vous saurez,</i>	you shall know,	or will know.
<i>Ils sauront,</i>	they shall know,	or will know.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je saurais,</i>	I should know,	or would know.
<i>Tu saurais,</i>	thou shouldst know,	or wouldst know.
<i>Il saurait,</i>	he should know,	or would know.
<i>Nous saurions,</i>	we should know,	or would know.
<i>Vous sauriez,</i>	you should know,	or would know.
<i>Ils sauraient,</i>	they should know,	or would know.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sache,</i>	know (thou).
<i>Sachons,</i>	let us know.
<i>Sachez,</i>	know (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je sache,</i>	that I may know.
<i>Que tu saches,</i>	that thou mayst know.
<i>Qu'il sache,</i>	that he may know.
<i>Que nous sachions,</i>	that we may know.
<i>Que vous sachiez,</i>	that you may know.
<i>Qu'ils sachent,</i>	that they may know.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je susse,</i>	that I might know.
<i>Que tu susses,</i>	that thou mightst know.
<i>Qu'il sût,</i>	that he might know.
<i>Que nous sussions,</i>	that we might know.
<i>Que vous sussiez,</i>	that you might know.
<i>Qu'ils sussent,</i>	that they might know.

Domicile, domicile, is masculine by exception.

Manier, to handle; *assurer*, to assure; *disposer*, to dispose; *tirer*, to draw, to pull; *demander*, to ask; *décider*, to decide; *écouter*, to listen to; *souhaiter*, to wish, are regular verbs of the first conjugation; *réfléchir*, to reflect, is of the second; and *prétendre*, to pretend, of the third.

Revenir, to return, is conjugated like *venir*, to come. *Obtenir*, to obtain, is an irregular verb, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. I did ask, 256. | 16. I did like, 256. |
| 2. He did ask. | 17. He did like. |
| 3. We did ask. | 18. We did like. |
| 4. You did ask. | 19. You did like. |
| 5. They did ask. | 20. They did like. |
| 6. I did reflect, 255. | 21. I did languish, 255. |
| 7. He did reflect. | 22. He did languish. |
| 8. We did reflect. | 23. We did languish. |
| 9. You did reflect. | 24. You did languish. |
| 10. They did reflect. | 25. They did languish. |
| 11. I did pretend, 255. | 26. I did answer, 255. |
| 12. He did pretend. | 27. He did answer. |
| 13. We did pretend. | 28. We did answer. |
| 14. You did pretend. | 29. You did answer. |
| 15. They did pretend. | 30. They did answer. |

31. Did you like the style of that poet?—32. You did lose all your money.—33. Defend me, as you defended your comrade.—34. You did occupy an important place.—35. Why did you not work?—36. You were finishing your task when we arrived, 257.—37. He saw nobody, and nobody saw him, 257.—38. There is nobody in the house.—39. Why did you weep this morning? 257.—40. Nobody has been forgotten.—41. He assured me that he would study, 257.—42. Do not handle anything.—43. This horse draws well, but that one draws better, 259.—44. That boy is better than this one, 259.—45. He studies better, 259.

TWENTY-NINTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingt-neuvième leçon.

“Quand donc te décideras-tu? Si tu
thyself wilt decide

avais du cœur, tu ne souffrirais pas que
nadst heart (spirit) wouldst suffer

ton père épuisât pour te faire vivre ce
exhausted (subj.) to live

qui lui reste de vigueur et de santé. Tu
to him remains vigor health

t'empresserais au contraire de le soulager
wouldst hasten contrary to relieve

dans tous les détails de ses travaux. Tu
particulars labors

n'attendrais pas qu'il t'en priât. Tu
wouldst wait till of it prayed (subj.)

serais heureux de diminuer ses fatigues
wouldst be happy to diminish fatigues

en en prenant ta part. Enfin, tu
in (by) of them taking share

aurais besoin de t'acquitter de ce que
wouldst have want thyself to acquit

tu lui dois. Allons, aie de la fermeté,
to him owest Let us go (come) have firmness

dégourdis - toi, et sois mon soutien,
 remove numbness from be support
au lieu d'être une charge pour moi."
 instead burden

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"But when will you have made up your mind? If you were a lad of any spirit, you would not suffer your father to exhaust the remainder of his health and vigor to sustain you. You would on the contrary have at heart to relieve him in the different branches of his business. You would not wait for his asking. You would be happy to lessen his fatigues by taking your share of them. In short, you would feel that you ought to repay the obligations you are under to him. Come, a little resolution, stir yourself, and be my support, instead of being a burden to me."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la vingt-neuvième.
Par quelle question cette leçon commence-t-elle ?	Quand donc te décideras-tu ?
A qui cette question est-elle faite ?	A Alexis.
Par qui est-elle faite ?	Par son père.
Si Alexis avait du cœur, qu'est-ce qu'il ne souffrirait pas ?	Que son père épuisât pour le faire vivre ce qui lui reste de vigueur et de santé.
En quoi s'empresserait-il de soulager son père ?	Dans tous les détails de ses travaux.
Que s'empresserait-il de faire ?	Il s'empresserait de soulager son père dans tous les détails de ses travaux.
Que n'attendrait-il pas ?	Il n'attendrait pas que son père l'en priât.
Que serait-il heureux de faire ?	De diminuer les fatigues de son père.

Comment diminuerait-il les fatigues de son père?	En en prenant sa part.
Quel besoin a-t-on quand on doit • quelque chose et qu'on a du cœur?	On a besoin de s'acquitter.
De quoi Alexis aurait-il besoin, s'il avait du cœur?	De s'acquitter de ce qu'il doit à son père.
Pour qui Alexis était-il une charge?	Pour son père.
Un fils doit il être une charge pour son père?	Non. Il doit être son soutien.
Par quelles exhortations le père finit-il?	"Allons, aie de la fermeté, dé-gourdis-toi, et sois mon soutien, au lieu d'être une charge pour moi."

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Quelle heure est-il?	What o'clock is it?
Il est quatre heures et demie.	It is half past four.
Nos amis arrivent à cinq heures, n'est-ce pas?	Our friends arrive at five o'clock, don't they?
Oui, et vous savez qu'ils sont très-ponctuels.	Yes, and you know they are very punctual.
Que ferons-nous en attendant?	What shall we do in the mean time?
Ce que vous voudrez.	What you please.
Voulez-vous faire une petite promenade?	Will you take a little walk?
Nous n'en aurions pas le temps; il est trop tard.	We should not have time; it is too late.
Jouons à quelque jeu.	Let us play at some game.
A quel jeu voulez-vous jouer?	At what game will you play?
Je n'en sais rien.	I don't know.
Voulez-vous un livre?	Will you have a book?
Il n'y en a pas.	There are none.
En voici un.	Here is one.
Je n'en veux pas.	Thank you, not for me.
Pourquoi bâillez-vous?	Why do you yawn?

C'est que je suis assoupi.	Because I am drowsy.
Mais d'où cela vient-il?	But what makes you so?
C'est ce livre qui me fait bâiller.	It is that book which makes me yawn.
Il s'y trouve une histoire ennuyeuse.	It contains a tedious story.
Quelle histoire?	What story?
Celle d'Alexis Delatour.	That of Alexis Delatour.
Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'Alexis Delatour?	Who is Alexis Delatour?
C'est un paresseux.	He is a lazy fellow.
Que fait-il?	What does he do?
Il ne fait rien.	He does nothing.
Un de ses amis lui fait un sermon.	One of his friends reads him a lecture.
Il le prie de le laisser tranquille.	He begs him to let him alone.
Son père lui fait un autre sermon.	His father reads him another lecture?
Cette histoire est-elle longue?	Is the story a long one?
Elle n'en finit pas.	It is endless.
Il est cinq heures.	It is five o'clock.
Nos amis ne sont pas loin.	Our friends are not far off.
Allons à leur rencontre.	Let us go and meet them.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

VINGT-NEUVIÈME, twenty-ninth, comes from *vingt-neuf*, twenty-nine.

Tu serais heureux de diminuer,
thou wouldst be happy to diminish.

262. Adjectives, as well as verbs, are often followed by certain prepositions, the use of which cannot always be determined by rules. The following list comprises the most necessary of such adjectives, with the prepositions they govern :

<i>Aveugle sur</i> , blind to.	<i>Conforme à</i> , consonant with.
<i>Complice de</i> , accessory to.	<i>Connu de</i> , known to.

<i>Consolant pour</i> , consolatory to.	<i>Insatiable de</i> , insatiable in.
<i>Constant dans, en</i> , constant to.	<i>Insensible à</i> , insensible of, to.
<i>Content de</i> , pleased with, to.	<i>Insolent avec</i> , insolent to.
<i>Esclave de</i> , slave to.	<i>Ivre de</i> , intoxicated with.
<i>Exact à</i> , exact in, to.	<i>Lent à</i> , slow in.
<i>Expert en</i> , expert in, at.	<i>Mécontent de</i> , dissatisfied with.
<i>Fâché de</i> , sorry for, to— <i>contre</i> , angry with.	<i>Officieux envers</i> , officious to.
<i>Fou de</i> , mad after ; doting on.	<i>Paresseux à</i> , slow in.
<i>Furieux de</i> , enraged at.	<i>Propre à</i> , proper, fit for, to.
<i>Habile à, en, dans</i> , skilful in, at.	<i>Reconnaissant de</i> , grateful for —à, <i>envers</i> , grateful to.
<i>Heureux de</i> , happy to.	<i>Redevable de</i> , indebted for—à, indebted to.
<i>Honteux de</i> , ashamed of, to.	<i>Responsable de, à</i> , accountable for, to.
<i>Ignorant en, sur, de</i> , ignorant in, of.	<i>Sensible à</i> , sensible of, to.
<i>Impatient de</i> , impatient at, for, of, under, to.	<i>Sévère, envers, à l'égard de</i> , se- vere to.
<i>Inconcevable à, pour</i> , incon- ceivable to.	<i>Surpris de</i> , surprised at, to.
<i>Inconsolable de</i> , inconsolable for.	<i>Tributaire de</i> , tributary to.
<i>Indépendant de</i> , independent of.	<i>Utile à</i> , useful for, to.
<i>Infatigable à</i> , indefatigable in.	<i>Vif à</i> , quick in, to.
<i>Ingénieux pour, à</i> , ingenious in, to.	<i>Voisin de</i> , neighboring to ; bor- dering on.

En *en prenant ta part*,
by taking thy share of them.

The word *en*, which is repeated in this phrase, has two different meanings. The first time it is a preposition, corresponding to *by*. The second time it is a pronoun, signifying *of them*, and already explained.

263. The preposition **BY**, used in English before the present participle, to denote the means or the manner of doing any thing, is rendered in French by **en**.

TU DOIS is the second person singular of the indicative present of *devoir*, to owe, ought, must,—one of the most important irregular French verbs.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Devoir**, TO OWE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Devoir, to owe.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Devant, owing.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Du, owed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je dois,</i>	I owe,	am owing, or do owe.
<i>Tu dois,</i>	thou owest,	art owing, or dost owe.
<i>Il doit,</i>	he owes,	is owing, or does owe.
<i>Nous devons,</i>	we owe,	are owing, or do owe.
<i>Vous devez,</i>	you owe,	are owing, or do owe.
<i>Ils doivent,</i>	they owe,	are owing, or do owe.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je devais,</i>	I owed,	or was owing.
<i>Tu devais,</i>	thou owedst,	or wast owing.
<i>Il devait,</i>	he owed,	or was owing.
<i>Nous devions,</i>	we owed,	or were owing.
<i>Vous deviez,</i>	you owed,	or were owing.
<i>Ils devaient,</i>	they owed,	or were owing.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je dus,</i>	I owed,	or did owe.
<i>Tu dus,</i>	thou owedst,	or didst owe.
<i>Il dut,</i>	he owed,	or did owe.
<i>Nous dûmes,</i>	we owed,	or did owe.
<i>Vous dûtes,</i>	you owed,	or did owe.
<i>Ils durent,</i>	they owed,	or did owe.

FUTURE.

<i>Je devrai,</i>	I shall owe,	or will owe.
<i>Tu devras,</i>	thou shalt owe,	or wilt owe.
<i>Il devra,</i>	he shall owe,	or will owe.
<i>Nous devrons,</i>	we shall owe,	or will owe.
<i>Vous devrez,</i>	you shall owe,	or will owe.
<i>Ils devront,</i>	they shall owe,	or will owe.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je devrais,</i>	I should owe,	or would owe.
<i>Tu devrais,</i>	thou shouldst owe,	or wouldst owe.
<i>Il devrait,</i>	he should owe,	or would owe.
<i>Nous devrions,</i>	we should owe,	or would owe.
<i>Vous devriez,</i>	you should owe,	or would owe.
<i>Ils devraient,</i>	they should owe,	or would owe.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Dois,</i>	owe (thou).
<i>Devons,</i>	let us owe.
<i>Devez,</i>	owe (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je doive,</i>	that I may owe.
<i>Que tu doives,</i>	that thou mayst owe.
<i>Qu'il doive,</i>	that he may owe.
<i>Que nous devions,</i>	that we may owe.
<i>Que vous deviez,</i>	that you may owe.
<i>Qu'ils doivent,</i>	that they may owe.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je dusse,</i>	that I might owe.
<i>Que tu dusses,</i>	that thou mightst owe.
<i>Qu'il dût,</i>	that he might owe.
<i>Que nous dussions,</i>	that we might owe.
<i>Que vous dussiez,</i>	that you might owe.
<i>Qu'ils dussent,</i>	that they might owe.

264. Thus are conjugated the seven verbs which usually make up the third conjugation with many grammarians in French. (87.) *Redevoir*, to owe again; *apercevoir*, to perceive; *recevoir*, to receive; *concevoir*, to conceive; *decevoir*, to deceive; *percevoir*, to collect.

Part, part, is feminine by exception. *Contraire*, contrary, is masculine, because it is an adjective used as a noun. (183.)

Décider, to decide; *épuiser*, to exhaust; *rester*, to remain; *s'empresser*, to hasten; *soulager*, to alleviate; *prier*, to pray; *diminuer*, to diminish; and *acquitter*, to acquit, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *dégourdir*, literally, to remove numbness, is of the second: and *attendre*, to wait, to expect, of the third. *Souffrir*, to suffer, and *vivre*, to live, are irregular verbs, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. I receive, 264. | 17. I perceive, 264. |
| 2. He receives. | 18. He perceives. |
| 3. We receive. | 19. We perceive. |
| 4. You receive. | 20. You perceive. |
| 5. They receive. | 21. They perceive. |
| 6. I was receiving. | 22. I was perceiving. |
| 7. I did receive. | 23. I did perceive. |
| 8. I shall receive. | 24. I shall perceive. |
| 9. I should receive. | 25. I should perceive. |
| 10. Let us receive. | 26. Let us perceive. |
| 11. Receive. | 27. Perceive. |
| 12. That I may receive. | 28. That I may perceive. |
| 13. That I might receive. | 29. That I might perceive. |
| 14. To receive. | 30. To perceive. |
| 15. Receiving. | 31. Perceiving. |
| 16. I have received. | 32. I have perceived. |

33. If you see your comrade, you will call him.—34. If you had several children, how would you feed them?—35. Encourage your workmen by your example.—36. Why would you not write to your mother?—37. You would understand, if you were attentive.—38. Let us eat some bread.—39. Let us play.—40. The one undoes what the other does.—41. Can this child understand us?—42. Are you ready to answer me?—43. It is useful to study, 262.—44. He is pleased with us, 262.—45. I am sorry to have been so negligent, 262.—46. I am happy to see you, 262.—47. Where is your father?—48. He is at home.

THIRTIETH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

*LITERAL TRANSLATION,***Trentième leçon.**

Thirtieth

Mais Alexis restait sourd à ces exhorta-
 remained deaf exhorta-
tions. “Mon père,” se disait-il, “est en
 tions to himself
ceci comme toutes les vieilles gens, qui ne
 this like old people
veulent pas qu’on se divertisse, parce
 will one’s self divert (subj.)
que rien ne les distrait, et qu’il leur est
 distracts to them
difficile de comprendre une manière de
 difficult to understand
voir différente de | la leur. | Il s’étonne
 different theirs wonders
que je sois comme tous les jeunes gens.
 be
Il ne se plaindrait pas tant s’il était
 would complain so much
moins âgé. Il sentirait lui-même le be-
 aged would feel
soin de distractions, et n’exigerait pas
 distractions would require
que je fusse plus rangé qu’il ne l’a peut-
 were (subj.) sedate

être été autrefois. Il se peut qu'il ait
 formerly It may (be) have (subj.)
raison au fond, quoiqu'il pousse trop loin
 bottom though push (subj.)
la rigidité. Mais, bah! qu'il attende.
 rigidity pshaw wait (subj.)
J'aurai bien le temps de piocher quand
 shall have to dig (to fag)
il le faudra absolument."
 must (in the future) absolutely

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

But Alexis turned a deaf ear to these expostulations. "My father," thought he, "is in this respect like all old people, who will not allow one to divert one's self, because nothing pleases them, and who can rarely enter into the views of other people. He wonders at my being like all young men. He would not complain so much if he were younger. He would feel the want of diversion himself, and would not expect me to be more steady than perhaps he was in his youth. He may be right upon the whole, though he carries his austerity too far. But, no matter, let him wait. I shall have plenty of time to fag, when it becomes absolutely necessary."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la trentième.
A quoi Alexis restait-il sourd ?	A ces exhortations.
Alexis était-il sensible aux exhortations de son père ?	Non. Il y restait sourd.
Que disait-il de son père ?	"Mon père est comme toutes les vieilles gens."
Qu'est-ce que les vieilles gens ne veulent pas ?	Ils ne veulent pas qu'on se divertisse.
Qu'est-ce qui les distrait ?	Rien ne les distrait.

Qu'est-ce qu'il leur est difficile de comprendre?	Une manière de voir différente de la leur.
De quoi s'étonne le père d'Alexis?	Il s'étonne que son fils soit comme tous les jeunes gens.
Qu'est-ce qu'il ne ferait pas s'il était moins âgé?	Il ne se plaindrait pas tant.
Que sentirait-il lui-même?	Il sentirait le besoin de distractions.
Qu'est-ce qu'il n'exigerait pas?	Il n'exigerait pas que son fils fût plus rangé qu'il ne l'a peut-être été autrefois.
Aux yeux d'Alexis, le père a-t-il tort?	Non. Il se peut qu'il ait raison au fond.
Que pousse-t-il trop loin?	La rigidité.
Alexis se décide-t-il à obéir à son père?	Non. Il s'écrie: "Bah qu'il attende."
Quand aura-t-il le temps de piocher?	Quand il le faudra absolument
Que fera-t-il quand il le faudra absolument?	Il piochera.
Dites-moi la même chose, en vous servant d'une autre expression.	Il travaillera.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Savez-vous votre leçon?
 Je crois la savoir assez bien.
 Combien y a-t-il de genres en français?
 Il y en a trois.
 Non, monsieur, il n'y en a que deux.
 Ah, oui, c'est vrai: le masculin et le féminin.
 De quel genre sont les mots qui ne finissent pas par un *e* muet?
 Ils sont du genre masculin.
 De quel genre sont ceux qui finissent par un *e* muet?

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

Do you know your lesson?
 I think I know it pretty well.
 How many genders are there in French?
 There are three.
 No, sir, there are but two.
 Oh, yes, that's true: the masculine and the feminine.
 Of what gender are the words that do not end in *e* mute?
 They are of the masculine gender.
 Of what gender are those which end in *e* mute?

Ils sont nécessairement féminins.
Pourquoi avez-vous dit nécessairement ?

Comme il n'y a que deux genres, tout mot qui n'est pas masculin est nécessairement féminin.

C'est juste.

Est-ce que tous les mots qui finissent par un *e* muet sont féminins ?

Non. Il y a beaucoup d'exceptions.

Quelles sont les principales exceptions ? Vous en souvenez-vous ?

Non. Je les oublie toujours. Soyez assez bon pour me les redire.

Les mots en *ice* sont masculins, comme *vice, service*.

Ceux en *age*, comme *village, courage*.

Ceux en *aire* sont masculins aussi.

Voulez-vous m'en donner des exemples ?

Vous ne répondez pas ?

Je vous demande pardon, je pensais à autre chose.

Il me semble que cette étude ne vous amuse pas beaucoup.

A vous parler franchement, je la trouve fort ennuyeuse.

Pourquoi donc prenez-vous des leçons ?

Parce que mes parents le veulent.

Alors il faut avoir du courage.

J'en aurai.

Vous en serez récompensé par le succès.

They are of course feminine.

Why do you say of course ?

As there are but two genders, every word that is not masculine is feminine of course.

Right.

Are all the words ending in *e* mute feminine ?

No. There are many exceptions.

What are the principal exceptions ? Do you remember ?

No. I always forget them. Be so kind as to repeat them to me.

Words in *ice* are masculine, as *vice, service*.

Those in *age*, as *village, courage*.

Again, those in *aire* are masculine.

Can you give me some examples ?

You do not answer ?

I beg your pardon ; I was thinking of something else.

I think this study does not amuse you very much.

To speak the truth, I find it very tedious.

Why then do you take lessons ?

Because my parents wish it.

Then you must have courage.

I will.

Success will be your reward.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

TRENTIÈME, thirtieth, comes from *trente*, thirty.

Est en ceci, is in this.

265. THIS is translated by **ceci**, and THAT, by **cela**, when they can be replaced by *this thing*, or *that thing*, without materially affecting the meaning of the sentence. (243.)

Toutes les vieilles gens.

Tous les jeunes gens.

266.—1. The substantive **gens** is masculine, but, by an arbitrary exception, the adjective which precedes it takes the feminine form when its termination is not *e* mute. And if this adjective is itself preceded by a definitive, as *un*, *tout*, or *certain*, the definitive also takes the feminine form. Thus, we say: “*Une de ces vieilles gens—Toutes ces bonnes gens—Certaines méchantes gens.*”

2. The adjective takes the feminine gender only when it precedes *gens*, and never when it follows it. Accordingly we say: “*Les vieilles gens sont SÉRIEUX,*” and not *SÉRIEUSES*.

3. When the adjective placed immediately before *gens* ends in *e* mute, and therefore presents no difference between the masculine and the feminine gender, the definitive which precedes it remains masculine, as in the phrase, “*Tous les jeunes gens.*”

Différente de la leur, different from theirs.

The personal pronoun **leur**, *to them*, and the possessive adjective **leur**, **leurs**, *their*, have already been seen.

267. **Le leur**, **la leur**, **les leurs**, is the possessive pronoun answering to the English word **THEIRS**. Alike for both genders in the plural, the rules which govern its use are the same as those of *le mien*, *le tien*, *le sien*, *le nôtre*, *le vôtre*. (60.) This concludes the study of the possessive pronouns in French.

Masc. sing.	Fem. sing.	Masc. plur.	Fem. plur.
Le mien,	la mienne,	les miens,	les miennes,
Le tien,	la tienne,	les tiens,	les tiennes,
Le sien,	la sienne,	les siens,	les siennes,
Le nôtre,	la nôtre,	les nôtres,	les nôtres,
Le vôtre,	la vôtre,	les vôtres,	les vôtres,
Le leur,	la leur,	les leurs,	les leurs,
			mine.
			thine.
			his, hers.
			ours.
			yours.
			theirs.

268. These pronouns agree in gender and number with the object possessed, and not with the possessor.

Ex. *Ce chapeau est le sien*, this hat is his or hers.

Il est difficile de comprendre,
it is difficult to understand.

269. In impersonal phrases, such as, *Il est difficile*, it is difficult; *il est nécessaire*, it is necessary: *il semble utile*, it seems useful; *il devient facile*, it becomes easy, etc., the adjective takes **de** before the infinitive that follows.

IL SENTIRAIT, he would feel, is the third person singular of the conditional mood of *sentir*, to feel or to smell, one of the most necessary irregular French verbs.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Sentir**, TO FEEL.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Sentir, to feel, or to smell.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Sentant, feeling.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Senti, felt.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je sens,</i>	I feel,	am feeling, or do feel.
<i>Tu sens,</i>	thou feelest,	art feeling, or dost feel.
<i>Il sent,</i>	he feels,	is feeling, or does feel.
<i>Nous sentons,</i>	we feel,	are feeling, or do feel.
<i>Vous sentez,</i>	you feel,	are feeling, or do feel.
<i>Ils sentent,</i>	they feel,	are feeling, or do feel.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je sentais,</i>	I felt,	or was feeling.
<i>Tu sentais,</i>	thou feltest,	or wast feeling.
<i>Il sentait,</i>	he felt,	or was feeling.
<i>Nous sentions,</i>	we felt,	or were feeling.
<i>Vous sentiez,</i>	you felt,	or were feeling.
<i>Ils sentaient,</i>	they felt,	or were feeling.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je sentis,</i>	I felt,	or did feel.
<i>Tu sentis,</i>	thou feltest,	or didst feel.
<i>Il sentit,</i>	he felt,	or did feel.
<i>Nous sentîmes,</i>	we felt,	or did feel.
<i>Vous sentîtes,</i>	you felt,	or did feel.
<i>Ils sentirent,</i>	they felt,	or did feel.

FUTURE.

<i>Je sentirai,</i>	I shall feel,	or will feel.
<i>Tu sentiras,</i>	thou shalt feel,	or wilt feel.
<i>Il sentira,</i>	he shall feel,	or will feel.
<i>Nous sentirons,</i>	we shall feel,	or will feel.
<i>Vous sentirez,</i>	you shall feel,	or will feel.
<i>Ils sentiront,</i>	they shall feel,	or will feel.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je sentirais,</i>	I should feel,	or would feel.
<i>Tu sentirais,</i>	thou shouldst feel,	or wouldst feel.
<i>Il sentirait,</i>	he should feel,	or would feel.
<i>Nous sentirions,</i>	we should feel,	or would feel.
<i>Vous sentiriez,</i>	you should feel,	or would feel.
<i>Ils sentiraient,</i>	they should feel,	or would feel.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sens,</i>	feel (thou).
<i>Sentons,</i>	let us feel.
<i>Sentez,</i>	feel (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je sente,</i>	that I may feel.
<i>Que tu sentes,</i>	that thou mayst feel.
<i>Qu'il sente,</i>	that he may feel.
<i>Que nous sentions,</i>	that we may feel.
<i>Que vous sentiez,</i>	that you may feel.
<i>Qu'ils sentent,</i>	that they may feel.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je sentisse,</i>	that I might feel.
<i>Que tu sentisses,</i>	that thou mightst feel.
<i>Qu'il sentît,</i>	that he might feel.
<i>Que nous sentissions,</i>	that we might feel.
<i>Que vous sentissiez,</i>	that you might feel.
<i>Qu'ils sentissent,</i>	that they might feel.

270. Thus are conjugated *consentir*, to consent; *pressentir*, to foresee; *ressentir*, to experience, etc.

Plus rangé qu'il ne l'a été.

271. § 1. After *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, *meilleur*, *autre*, and *autrement*, in comparative phrases, the word *que* must be followed by the negative **ne**, particularly when the principal proposition is affirmative; as, *Il exige que je sois plus rangé qu'il ne l'a été.*

§ 2. When the principal proposition is negative, the word **ne** is usually omitted after *que*, if the compared quality is not denied or doubtful; as, *Il a été rangé, et je ne le serai pas moins qu'il l'a été*; because here the quality of being sedate is not doubtful. But when the quality is not taken for granted, the negative **ne** is required in the second clause of the proposition, as in this example: *Il n'exigerait pas que je fusse plus rangé qu'il ne l'a peut-être été*, which implies a doubt of the father's steadiness.

272. In comparative phrases constructed with *aussi*, *autant*, *plus*, *moins*, and other similar adverbs, the verb which follows *que* must be preceded by the pronoun **le**.

Qu'il attende, let him wait.

273. It has been seen that the imperative mood is used only in the second person singular, and in the first and second person

plural; *Let him wait, let them wait*, are rendered by the subjunctive mood, thus: Let him speak, *qu'il parle*.

Raison, reason, is feminine by exception.

Rester, to remain; *étonner*, to astonish; *exiger*, to exact; *pousser*, to push; and *piocher*, to dig, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *divertir*, to divert, is of the second: and *attendre*, to wait, to expect, of the third. *Comprendre*, to comprehend, is conjugated like *prendre*, to take.

Distraindre, to distract, to amuse; and *se plaindre*, to complain, are irregular verbs, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. This book is mine, 267. | 13. These sleeves are mine, 267. |
| 2. That house is his. | 14. Those copy-books are his. |
| 3. This child is hers. | 15. These studies are hers. |
| 4. That thing is ours. | 16. Those boats are ours. |
| 5. This work is yours. | 17. These classes are yours. |
| 6. That shop is theirs. | 18. Those fish-hooks are theirs. |
| 7. This tool is mine. | 19. These lines are mine. |
| 8. That leaf is his. | 20. Those cakes are his. |
| 9. This paper is hers. | 21. These savings are hers. |
| 10. That grammar is ours. | 22. Those baskets are ours. |
| 11. This bench is yours. | 23. These saws are yours. |
| 12. That place is theirs. | 24. Those nets are theirs. |

25. What do you think of this? 265.—26. Leave that, and eat this, 265.—27. Do you believe that your friend betrays you?—28. We have our books, and you have yours, but our comrades have not found theirs, 267.—29. We have finished our task, but they have not finished theirs, 267.—30. He would write, if he had paper.—31. Would your horse drink, if I gave him some water?—32. Your mother would go to-morrow, if she had money.—33. He is not strong, though he eats much.—34. Let him sell his house, 273.—35. Let him defend himself, 273.—36. Let him follow us, 273.—37. One of those young men is my friend, 266.—38. It is useful to know the French language, 269.

THIRTY-FIRST LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

*LITERAL TRANSLATION.***Trente et unième leçon.**

L'honnête artisan mourut pauvre, ne
 honest mechanic died
laissant à son fils que la somme exigüe de
 leaving sum scanty
cinq cents francs, pour tout patrimoine.
 hundred francs patrimony
Après l'enterrement, et quand les pre-
 burial
miers transports de la douleur furent
 transports grief were
calmés, Alexis se demanda comment il
 calmed to himself asked
pourrait faire fructifier son faible capital.
 could to be fruitful feeble capital
“Me voilà livré à moi-même,” se dit-il.
 delivered up myself said
“Il faut que je gagne de quoi vivre, ou
 earn (subj.) wherewith
que je meure de faim. Il est grand temps
 die (subj.) hunger
que j'aie de la résolution et que j'agisse.
 have (subj.) resolution act (subj.)
Je fus insensible aux bonnes paroles de
 was insensible words

mon père, tant qu'il vécut. Je n'eus point
 so long as lived had
égard à ses prières, et je m'endurcis dans
 regard prayers myself hardened
mon égoïsme. Maintenant, je gémis de
 egotism Now groan
n'avoir pas tenu compte de ses avis, dont
 kept account advices of which
je sens la sagesse."
 feel wisdom

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

The honest mechanic died poor, leaving his son no other patrimony than a small sum of five hundred francs. After the burial, and when the first burst of grief had subsided, Alexis considered how he could make his little capital most productive. "Here I am," thought he, "left to my own resources. I must either earn a livelihood, or starve. It is high time for me to summon up resolution and to act. I was insensible to my father's kind words, so long as he lived. I disregarded his entreaties, and was obdurate in my selfishness. Now, I lament having slighted his advice, for I feel the wisdom of it."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la trente et unième.
Qui est-ce qui mourut pauvre ?	L'honnête artisan.
A qui laissa-t-il la somme de cinq cents francs ?	A son fils.
Que laissa-t-il à son fils ?	La somme exigüe de cinq cents francs.
Restait-il à Alexis autre chose que cette somme ?	Non. C'était tout son patrimoine.

Après quoi Alexis se demanda-t-il comment il pourrait faire fructifier son faible capital?	Après l'enterrement.
Est-ce que ce fut longtemps après l'enterrement?	Ce fut quand les premiers transports de la douleur furent calmés.
Que se demanda-t-il?	Comment il pourrait faire fructifier son faible capital.
Dans quelle position se trouvait-il?	Il se trouvait livré à lui-même.
Que fallait-il qu'il fit, s'il ne voulait pas mourir de faim?	Il fallait qu'il gagnât de quoi vivre.
A quoi était-il exposé, s'il ne gagnait pas de quoi vivre?	A mourir de faim.
Avait-il encore le temps d'être oisif et de flâner?	Non. Il était grand temps qu'il eût de la résolution et qu'il agît.
A quoi fut-il insensible, tant que son père vécut?	Aux bonnes paroles de son père.
Quand fut-il insensible aux bonnes paroles de son père?	Tant que son père vécut.
A quoi n'eut-il point égard?	Aux prières de son père.
Dans quelle disposition s'endurcit-il?	Dans son égoïsme.
De quoi gémit-il après avoir perdu son père?	De n'avoir pas tenu compte de ses avis—or, des avis de son père

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

D'où venez-vous, mon cher?

De chez votre créancier.

Ah!

Avant tout, je m'empresse de vous dire qu'il accepte votre proposition.

Cela me fait bien plaisir.

J'ai eu de la peine à trouver sa maison.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

Where do you come from, my dear fellow?

From your creditor's.

Oh!

First of all, I hasten to tell you that he accepts your proposal.

I am happy to hear it.

It was difficult for me to find his house.

Bah?

Oui, vous m'aviez bien dit que
c'était rue du Temple.

Eh bien?

Mais la rue du Temple est longue.
Je vous avais dit près du boulevard.

Je l'avais oublié.

Comment avez-vous fait?

J'ai demandé à un jeune homme,
dans une boutique.

Par un heureux hasard, il con-
naissait M. Leroux.

Il a eu la bonté de me conduire
jusqu'à sa maison.

M. Leroux est-il jeune ou vieux?

C'est un homme d'un certain âge.

Quel air a-t-il?

Il a l'air d'un fort brave homme.

Il était à écrire devant un bon
feu.

Il vous a bien reçu?

On ne peut mieux.

On m'avait dit qu'il était dur et
austère.

Pas le moins du monde.

Seulement, il est un peu sourd,
de sorte que j'ai été obligé de
parler très-haut.

Nous nous sommes entretenus de
votre affaire, et, comme je vous
l'ai dit, il n'a fait aucune diffi-
culté.

Vous êtes un excellent garçon, et
je vous suis bien obligé.

Indeed?

Yes, you told me it was in Temple
street.

Well?

But Temple street is long.

I told you near the boulevard.

That I forgot.

How did you manage?

I inquired of a young man, in a
shop.

Luckily, he happened to know
Mr. Leroux.

He had the kindness to show me
to his house.

Is Mr. Leroux young or old?

He is an elderly gentleman.

What sort of a looking man is he?

He looks like a very honest man.

He was writing before a good fire.

He gave you a good reception?

He could not give me a better.

I had been told he was hard-
hearted and austere.

Not in the least.

Only, he is rather deaf, so that I
was obliged to speak very loud.

We talked about your affair, and,
as I told you, he made no diffi-
culty.

You are an excellent fellow, and
I am much obliged to you.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

TRENTE ET UNIÈME, thirty-first, comes from *trente et un*, thirty-one.

EXIGUË, *scanty*.

274. The diæresis (¨) is placed over the letters *e, i, u*, to show that they are to be pronounced distinctly from the vowels by which they may be accompanied. In *exiguë* it indicates that the *u* has to be sounded.

Cinq cents francs, five hundred francs.

275. The numeral adjectives **cent** and **vingt** are the only ones that take the mark of the plural, and that only when preceded by another number which multiplies them; as when we say, *Deux cents*, 200; *trois cents*, 300; *quatre-vingts*, 80.

276. But when **cent** and **vingt** are followed by another number, they are invariable, thus: *Deux cent trente*, 230; *quatre-vingt-trois*, 83; *quatre-vingt-dix*, 90.

A franc is worth 20 sous, or 18 cents and 6 mills.

POURRAIT is the third person singular of the conditional mood of *pouvoir*, to be able, one of the most necessary irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Pouvoir**, TO BE ABLE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pouvoir, to be able.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Pouvant, being able.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Pu, been able.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Je peux, or *puis*, I can, or am able.

Tu peux, thou canst, or art able.

Il peut, he can, or is able.

Nous pouvons, we can, or are able.

Vous pouvez, you can, or are able.

Ils peuvent, they can, or are able.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je pouvais,</i>	I could,	or used to be able.
<i>Tu pouvais,</i>	thou couldst,	or usedst to be able.
<i>Il pouvait,</i>	he could,	or used to be able.
<i>Nous pouvions,</i>	we could,	or used to be able.
<i>Vous pouviez,</i>	you could,	or used to be able.
<i>Ils pouvaient,</i>	they could,	or used to be able.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je pus,</i>	I could,	or was able.
<i>Tu pus,</i>	thou couldst,	or wast able.
<i>Il put,</i>	he could,	or was able.
<i>Nous pûmes,</i>	we could,	or were able.
<i>Vous pûtes,</i>	you could,	or were able.
<i>Ils purent,</i>	they could,	or were able.

FUTURE.

<i>Je pourrai,</i>	I shall be able,	or will be able.
<i>Tu pourras,</i>	thou shalt be able,	or wilt be able.
<i>Il pourra,</i>	he shall be able,	or will be able.
<i>Nous pourrons,</i>	we shall be able,	or will be able.
<i>Vous pourrez,</i>	you shall be able,	or will be able.
<i>Ils pourront,</i>	they shall be able,	or will be able.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je pourrais,</i>	I should be able,	or would be able.
<i>Tu pourrais,</i>	thou shouldst be able,	or wouldst be able.
<i>Il pourrait,</i>	he should be able,	or would be able.
<i>Nous pourrions,</i>	we should be able,	or would be able.
<i>Vous pourriez,</i>	you should be able,	or would be able.
<i>Ils pourraient,</i>	they should be able,	or would be able.

This verb is not used in the imperative.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je puisse,</i>	that I may be able.
<i>Que tu puisses,</i>	that thou mayst be able.
<i>Qu'il puisse,</i>	that he may be able.
<i>Que nous puissions,</i>	that we may be able.
<i>Que vous puissiez,</i>	that you may be able.
<i>Qu'ils puissent,</i>	that they may be able.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je pusse,</i>	that I might be able.
<i>Que tu pusses,</i>	that thou mightst be able.
<i>Qu'il pût,</i>	that he might be able.
<i>Que nous pussions,</i>	that we might be able.
<i>Que vous pussiez,</i>	that you might be able.
<i>Qu'ils pussent,</i>	that they might be able.

Fructifier, to fructify.

277. The termination **fier** corresponds to the English termination *fy*: as in *justifier*, to justify; *fortifier*, to fortify; *signifier*, to signify, etc.

Insensible, insensible.

278. The termination **ible**, like *able*, denotes aptness or fitness. It serves to form adjectives, about half of which are the same in both languages; as, *sensible*, *insensible*, *possible*, *terrible*.

TANT QUE, when it refers to time, signifies, so long as, as long as.

TENIR COMPTE is an idiomatic locution, meaning to regard, to appreciate.

Dont *je sens la sagesse*.

279. When *of which* is used in the sense of *whose*, and rendered by **dont**, the construction is the same as that pointed out by rules 233 and 234, and this pronoun must never follow the substantive which it determines, as *of which* does when we say, "*The wisdom of which I feel.*"

Patrimoine, patrimony; *égoïsme*, egotism; and *compte*, account, are masculine; *faim*, hunger, is feminine, by exception.

Laisser, to leave; *calmer*, to calm; *demander*, to ask; *fructifier*, to fructify; *livrer*, to deliver, to surrender; and *gagner*, to gain, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *agir*, to act; *endurcir*, to harden; and *gémir*, to moan, are of the second. *Mourir*, to die; *vivre*, to live; and *tenir*, to hold, are irregular verbs, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Can I? | 14. Can I not? |
| 2. Can he? | 15. Can he not? |
| 3. Can we? | 16. Can we not? |
| 4. Can you? | 17. Can you not? |
| 5. Can they? | 18. Can they not? |
| 6. Could I? | 19. Could I not? |
| 7. Could he? | 20. Could he not? |
| 8. Could we? | 21. Could we not? |
| 9. Could you? | 22. Could you not? |
| 10. Could they? | 23. Could they not? |
| 11. Shall I be able? | 24. Shall I not be able? |
| 12. Should I be able? | 25. Should I not be able? |
| 13. Have I been able? | 26. Have I not been able? |

27. They wish to terrify you, 277.—28. The place was inaccessible, 278.—29. I filled my basket with provisions.—30. He had seven hundred francs, and he gave me three hundred and fifty, 275, 276.—31. He found eighty gudgeons in his net, 275.—32. You have made me lose my time.—33. The parents made their children play.—34. What do you say?—35. What does this word signify?—36. How do you say that in French?—37. How many books have you?—38. Where is your grammar?—39. Give me the dictionary.—40. I cannot find it.—41. Where is it?—42. I have forgotten it.—43. Look for it.—44. Here it is.—45. Do not be so negligent.

THIRTY-SECOND LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Trente-deuxième leçon.

“ Si nous écoutions ceux qui ont de l'ex-
 perience, que de regrets nous nous
 épargnerions ! Mais nous haïssons tout
 ce qui contrarie nos penchans ou nos
 goûts. Les conseils nous obsèdent, et
 nous les entendons avec ennui, sinon avec
 mépris. Et puis, quand viennent les ca-
 lamités que nous nous sommes attirées
 par notre propre faute, nous nous écrions :
 ‘ C'est bien dommage que nous n'ayons pas
 cru ce qu'on nous disait ! ’ Quoi qu'il en
 soit, il ne s'agit pas de se lamenter.

Soyons homme. Je vaincrai mon
 Let us be (Let me be) will conquer
naturel. J'essaierai de m'appliquer à
 nature will try myself apply
quelque chose de sérieux; je finirai par
 will finish
m' y accoutumer, et mes efforts me
 myself to it accustom efforts
mèneront à la fortune."
 will lead

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"Did we but listen to those who have had experience, what regrets we should spare ourselves! Yet we hate every thing that thwarts our inclinations or our tastes. Advice annoys us, and we receive it with reluctance, if not with contempt. And afterwards, when calamities befall us, that we have drawn upon ourselves by our own fault, we exclaim: 'It is a great pity I did not believe what I was told!' Be this as it may, it is of no use to lament. I must behave like a man. I will vanquish my nature. I will try to apply myself to something serious; I shall get into the habit of it with time, and my exertions will lead me to fortune."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la trente-deuxième.
Que nous épargnerions-nous, si nous écoutions ceux qui ont de l'expérience?	Nous nous épargnerions des regrets— <i>or</i> , beaucoup de regrets— <i>or</i> , bien des regrets.
Que faudrait-il faire pour nous épargner des regrets?	Il faudrait écouter ceux qui ont de l'expérience.
Que haïssons-nous?	Nous haïssons tout ce qui contrarie nos penchants ou nos goûts.

Qu'est-ce qui nous obsède?
Comment les entendons-nous?

Qu'est-ce que nous nous attirons
par notre propre faute?
Que disons-nous, quand viennent
ces calamités?

Quand nous écrivons-nous: "C'est
bien dommage?"

De quoi ne s'agit-il pas dans la
position d'Alexis?

Quelle exhortation Alexis se fait-
il à lui-même?

Que vaincra-t-il?

Qu'essaiera-t-il de faire?

S'y accoutumera-t-il?

A quoi ses efforts le mèneront-ils?
Qu'est-ce qui le mènera à la for-
tune?

Les conseils.

Nous les entendons avec ennui,
sinon avec mépris.

Nous nous attirons des calamités.

Nous nous écrivons: "C'est bien
dommage que nous n'ayons pas
cru ce qu'on nous disait."

Quand viennent les calamités que
nous nous sommes attirées par
notre propre faute.

Il ne s'agit pas de se lamenter

Il se dit: "Soyons homme."

Il vaincra son naturel.

Il essaiera de s'appliquer à quel-
que chose de sérieux.

Il dit qu'il finira par s'y accoutu-
mer.

Ils le mèneront à la fortune.

Ses efforts.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Croiriez-vous que je ne suis pas
encore bien accoutumé à la
monnaie de France?

C'est pourtant bien simple; nous
n'avons que des francs et des
centimes.

Je sais bien que vous m'avez dit
cela.

Eh bien?

Eh bien, j'entends parler tous les
jours de louis, de livres, de sous
et de liards.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

Would you believe it? I am not
yet well used to French money.

It is very simple, however; we
have only francs and centimes.

I know you told me so.

Well?

Well, I every day hear of louis,
of livres, sous, and farthings.

Ce sont de vieilles dénominations dont on se sert encore quelquefois.

Hier, un jeune homme m'a proposé de jouer vingt-cinq louis.

Que lui avez-vous répondu ?

Je lui ai répondu que je n'aimais pas le jeu. Mais qu'est-ce que c'est que vingt-cinq louis ?

Cela veut dire six cents francs, parce qu'autrefois un louis valait vingt-quatre livres, ou vingt-quatre francs.

Une autre personne me disait dernièrement qu'elle avait dix mille livres *de rente*.

Cela veut dire un revenu de dix mille francs par an.

Moi, j'avais compris *ten thousand pounds*.

C'est bien différent.

Comment rendriez-vous en français, *ten thousand a year* ?

Nous dirions, dix mille livres sterling de revenu, ou bien deux cent cinquante mille francs de rente.

Pourquoi dit-on quelquefois *un* livre, et quelquefois *une* livre ?

Ce sont deux mots tout à fait différents.

Ce dictionnaire est *un* livre.

Une livre est, comme je vous l'ai dit, un vieux mot pour un franc, ou bien encore pour la moitié d'un kilogramme.

Maintenant, qu'est-ce que c'est qu'une pièce de cent sous ?

They are old denominations which are still used now and then.

A young man proposed to me yesterday to stake twenty-five louis.

What did you answer him ?

I told him that I was not fond of gaming. But what is twenty-five louis ?

It means six hundred francs, because formerly a louis was twenty-four livres, or twenty-four francs.

Another person told me lately that he (*or* she) had ten thousand livres *de rente*.

It signifies ten thousand francs a year.

I understood it to be ten thousand pounds.

There is a wide difference.

How would you express in French, "ten thousand a year ?"

We should say "an income of ten thousand pounds sterling," or, "two hundred and fifty thousand francs a year."

Why do people say sometimes *un livre*, and sometimes *une livre* ?

They are two very different words.

This dictionary is *un livre*, a book.

A *livre* is, as I told you, an old word for a franc ; or for a pound (weight), the half of a kilogram.

Now, what is a piece of a hundred sous ?

C'est une pièce de cinq francs, qui équivaut au cinquième d'une livre sterling.	It is a piece of five francs, which is equal to the fifth part of one pound sterling.
Il me reste encore une question à vous faire.	I have one last question to ask you.
Voyons.	Let me hear it.
L'autre jour, j'ai entendu dire: "Ça ne vaut pas deux liards."	The other day, I heard, "It is not worth two farthings."
J'ai compris qu'on parlait avec mépris de quelque chose. Mais qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un liard?	I understood that something was spoken of with contempt. But what is a farthing?
C'était autrefois le quart d'un sou.	It was formerly the fourth part of one sou.
Je vous suis bien obligé.	I am much obliged to you.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

TRENTE-DEUXIÈME, thirty-second, comes from *trente-deux*, thirty-two.

Que *DE regrets!* what regrets!

280. **Que** is used for *combien* in exclamative phrases, and corresponds to *how*, *how much*, and *how many*. When placed before a substantive, it requires *de*, like all adverbs of quantity. (155.)

Nous haïssons, we hate.

281. HAÏSSONS is the first person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *haïr*, to hate. The only irregularity of this verb consists in suppressing the diæresis in the three persons singular of the present tense, and in the second person singular of the imperative mood, thus: *Je hais*, I hate; *tu hais*, thou hatest; *il hait*, he hates; *hais*, hate (thou).

Nous obsèdent, tease us.

OBSÈDENT is a form of the verb *obséder*, to beset. It must be observed that the acute accent over the first *e* in *obséder* is changed into a grave accent in *obsèdent*.

282. Verbs in **er** in which the final syllable of the infinitive mood is preceded by **e** with an acute accent, as *obséder, posséder, espérer*, change this accent into a grave one before a syllable containing an *e* mute, thus: *Ils obsèdent, je possède.*

283. Verbs in **éger**, as *protéger*, to protect, and in **éer**, as *créer*, to create, are excepted, and retain the acute accent in all their forms.

Quand viennent les calamités,
when the calamities come.

In this phrase, *les calamités*, which is the subject, follows the verb *viennent*: no direct regimen could be placed after it.

284. The subject, when it is a substantive, may follow the verb, if the sense excludes a direct regimen.

Les calamités que nous nous sommes attirées,
the calamities which we have drawn upon ourselves.

285. The compound tenses of pronominal verbs are invariably formed with the help of the auxiliary verb *être*. (129.)

286. Of the two pronouns which precede a pronominal verb, the second may be a direct or an indirect regimen. If indirect, as in the present instance, in which it means *upon ourselves*, the past participle, instead of agreeing with the subject, agrees with the direct regimen, provided that regimen precedes it, as it does in this example. And when the direct regimen follows, the participle remains invariable, thus: *Nous nous sommes ATTIRÉ les calamités.*

Nous nous sommes attirés,
we have attracted each other.

287. If the second of the two pronouns which precede a pronominal verb is a direct regimen, the past participle agrees with it. Admitting, therefore, that the pronoun *nous* in this phrase refers to men, or even to persons of both sexes, we write *attirés*. If *nous* should refer to women only, the participle should be spelled *attirées*.

288. In the verbs which are accidentally pronominal, the sense shows whether the second pronoun is a direct or an indirect regimen. In those that are essentially pronominal, of which

a list has been given (167), the pronoun is always a direct regimen; and accordingly the participle always agrees with it.

C'EST DOMMAGE is an idiom, signifying, *It is a pity.*

QUOI QU'IL EN SOIT, literally *whatever it may be of it*, is an idiomatic locution corresponding to *be it as it may, however, nevertheless.*

Soyons homme.

The literal translation of *soyons* is, *let us be*; but in this lesson it signifies, *let me be.*

289. The **imperative mood**, in French, having no special form for the first person singular, the deficiency is sometimes supplied by means of the first person plural; and, in addressing one's self, one says: *Allons, attendons, soyons, ayons*, for: *Let me go, let me wait, let me be, let me have.*

290. When the first person plural of the imperative mood is used in the sense of *let me*, the adjective, or the substantive used adjectively, which follows it, must of course be put in the singular.

VAINCRAI is the first person singular of the future tense of *vaincre*, to vanquish, to conquer, to overcome, one of the most important irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Vaincre**, TO CONQUER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Vaincre, to conquer, or to vanquish.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Vainquant, conquering.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Vaincu, conquered.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je vains,</i>	I conquer,	am conquering, or do conquer.
<i>Tu vains,</i>	thou conquerest,	art conquering, or dost conquer.
<i>Il vaint,</i>	he conquers,	is conquering, or does conquer.
<i>Nous vainquons,</i>	we conquer,	are conquering, or do conquer.
<i>Vous vainquez,</i>	you conquer,	are conquering, or do conquer.
<i>Ils vainquent,</i>	they conquer,	are conquering, or do conquer.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je vainquais,</i>	I conquered,	or was conquering.
<i>Tu vainquais,</i>	thou conqueredst,	or wast conquering.
<i>Il vainquait,</i>	he conquered,	or was conquering.
<i>Nous vainquions,</i>	we conquered,	or were conquering.
<i>Vous vainquiez,</i>	you conquered,	or were conquering.
<i>Ils vainquaient,</i>	they conquered,	or were conquering.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je vainquis,</i>	I conquered,	or did conquer.
<i>Tu vainquis,</i>	thou conqueredst,	or didst conquer.
<i>Il vainquit,</i>	he conquered,	or did conquer.
<i>Nous vainquîmes,</i>	we conquered,	or did conquer.
<i>Vous vainquîtes,</i>	you conquered,	or did conquer.
<i>Ils vainquirent,</i>	they conquered,	or did conquer.

FUTURE.

<i>Je vaincrai,</i>	I shall conquer,	or will conquer.
<i>Tu vaincras,</i>	thou shalt conquer,	or wilt conquer.
<i>Il vaincra</i>	he shall conquer,	or will conquer.
<i>Nous vaincrons,</i>	we shall conquer,	or will conquer.
<i>Vous vaincrez,</i>	you shall conquer,	or will conquer.
<i>Ils vaincront,</i>	they shall conquer,	or will conquer.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je vaincrais,</i>	I should conquer,	or would conquer.
<i>Tu vaincrais,</i>	thou shouldst conquer,	or wouldst conquer.
<i>Il vaincrait,</i>	he should conquer,	or would conquer.
<i>Nous vaincristions,</i>	we should conquer,	or would conquer.
<i>Vous vaincriez,</i>	you should conquer,	or would conquer.
<i>Ils vaincraient,</i>	they should conquer,	or would conquer.

IMPÉRATIVE MOOD.

<i>Vaincs,</i>	conquer (thou).
<i>Vainquons,</i>	let us conquer.
<i>Vainquez,</i>	conquer (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je vainque,</i>	that I may conquer.
<i>Que tu vainques,</i>	that thou mayst conquer.
<i>Qu'il vainque,</i>	that he may conquer.
<i>Que nous vainquions,</i>	that we may conquer.
<i>Que vous vainquiez,</i>	that you may conquer.
<i>Qu'ils vainquent,</i>	that they may conquer.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je vainquisse,</i>	that I might conquer.
<i>Que tu vainquisses,</i>	that thou mightst conquer.
<i>Qu'il vainquît,</i>	that he might conquer.
<i>Que nous vainquissions,</i>	that we might conquer.
<i>Que vous vainquissiez,</i>	that you might conquer.
<i>Qu'ils vainquissent,</i>	that they might conquer.

291. Thus is conjugated *convaincre*, to convince.

J'essaierai, I will try.

This is the first person singular of the future tense of *essayer*, to try, and should be spelled, according to analogy, *essayerai*.

292. Verbs ending in **yer**, as *essayer*, to try; *appuyer*, to lean; *payer*, to pay, change the vowel **y** into **i** before an *e* mute.

Ex. <i>J'appuie,</i>	I lean.
<i>Tu appuies,</i>	thou leanest.
<i>Il appuie,</i>	he leans.
<i>Nous appuyons,</i>	we lean.
<i>Vous appuyez,</i>	you lean.
<i>Ils appuient,</i>	they lean.

Domage, damage, pity, is masculine by exception.

Ecouter, to listen to; *épargner*, to spare; *contrarier*, to counteract; *obséder*, to beset, to tease; *attirer*, to attract; *s'écrier*, to exclaim; *lament*, to lament; *essayer*, to try; *appliquer*, to apply; *accoutumer*, to accustom; *mener*, to lead, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *agir*, to act, is of the second: and *entendre*, to hear, of the third.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. I try, 292. | 17. I pay, 292. |
| 2. He tries. | 18. He pays. |
| 3. We try. | 19. We pay. |
| 4. You try. | 20. You pay. |
| 5. They try. | 21. They pay. |
| 6. I was trying. | 22. I was paying. |
| 7. I did try. | 23. I did pay. |
| 8. I shall try. | 24. I shall pay. |
| 9. I should try. | 25. I should pay. |
| 10. Let us try. | 26. Let us pay. |
| 11. Try. | 27. Pay. |
| 12. That I may try. | 28. That I may pay. |
| 13. That I might try. | 29. That I might pay. |
| 14. To try. | 30. To pay. |
| 15. Trying. | 31. Paying. |
| 16. I have tried. | 32. I have paid. |

33. We were examining the tools of the workmen.—34. We hoped to have the pleasure of seeing you.—35. How much trouble you give yourself! 280.—36. How many persons come to your house! 280.—37. We should work, if we had tools.—38. We are finishing the thirty-second lesson.—39. We do not betray our friends.—40. I hope you will come to see me.—41. We expect several friends.—42. We lose a large sum of money.—43. He finishes his task to-day: let me finish mine.—44. Let me see what I have to do.—45. I think that I shall understand you easily.—46. Do you know where that child is going to?—47. Give me something good.—48. Do you know any thing new?—49. They hope to see you, 282.—50. He possesses a fine house, 282.—51. Listen to these observations.—52. He is accustomed to study.

THIRTY-THIRD LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

*LITERAL TRANSLATION.***Trente-troisième leçon.****“ Passons en revue les principales pro-**

Let us (me) pass review principal

fessions, et voyons si je n' en trouverai

let us see of them shall find

pas une que je puisse embrasser sans

may (subj.) embrace

m'assujétir à des devoirs trop pénibles.

to subject duties painful

“ Le dessin, la gravure, la peinture et

drawing engraving painting

la musique demanderaient des études que

music would demand

je ne me soucie pas d'entreprendre. Si

care to undertake

j'apprenais le droit, je pourrais devenir

learned law might

avoué, huissier, avocat ou notaire. Je

attorney bailiff barrister notary

serais peut-être un jour magistrat, juge,

should be magistrate judge

législateur.... Oui, mais il faudrait que

legislator must (conditional)

j' eusse de quoi subsister en attendant ;

had (subj.) to subsist in the mean time

et puis que je suivisse des cours, que
 followed (subj.) courses (of lectures)
 je passasse des examens, que je subisse
 passed (subj.) examinations underwent (subj.)
 des épreuves rigoureuses. Je sens bien
 trials rigorous
 que je ne réussirais pas.”
 should succeed

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

“Let us examine the principal professions, and see whether I cannot find one that I might follow without subjecting myself to arduous duties.

“Drawing, engraving, painting, and music would require studies which I am nowise inclined to undertake. If I should study the law, I might become an attorney, a bailiff, a barrister, or a notary. Perhaps I should one day be a magistrate, a judge, a legislator Yes, but I must have wherewith to subsist in the mean time ; and besides, I should be obliged to attend lectures, to pass examinations, and undergo the rudest trials. I feel I should never succeed.”

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la trente-troisième.
Qu'est-que le jeune homme va passer en revue ?	Les principales professions.
A quoi ne voudrait-il pas s'assujétir ?	A des devoirs trop pénibles.
Pourquoi veut-il passer en revue les principales professions ?	Pour voir s'il n'en trouvera pas une qu'il puisse embrasser sans s'assujétir à des devoirs trop pénibles.
Que fera-t-il s'il en trouve une ?	Il l'embrassera probablement.

Qu'est-ce qui demanderait des études qu'il ne se soucie pas d'entreprendre?	Le dessin, la gravure, la peinture et la musique.
Que demanderaient le dessin, la gravure, la peinture et la musique?	Des études qu'il ne se soucie pas d'entreprendre.
Que faudrait-il qu'il apprît pour devenir avoué, huissier, avocat ou notaire?	Il faudrait qu'il apprît le droit.
Que pourrait-il devenir s'il apprenait le droit?	Il pourrait devenir avoué, huissier, avocat ou notaire.
Que serait-il peut-être un jour?	Il serait peut-être magistrat, juge ou législateur.
Que faudrait-il qu'il eût pour cela?	Il faudrait qu'il eût de quoi subsister en attendant.
Que faudrait-il qu'il suivît?	Il faudrait qu'il suivît des cours.
Que faudrait-il qu'il passât?	Des examens.
Que faudrait-il qu'il subît?	Des épreuves rigoureuses.
Pense-t-il qu'il réussirait?	Non; il sent bien qu'il ne réussirait pas.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

J'ai à vous demander un service.
 De quoi s'agit-il?
 Pouvez-vous me prêter cent cinquante francs?
 Mon Dieu, non. Je suis absolument sans argent.
 N'importe.
 Je suis bien fâché de ne pouvoir vous obliger.
 Bien, bien, n'en parlons plus.
 Si vous voulez venir jusque chez mon frère, il pourra sans doute vous donner cette somme.
 Non. Je peux m'en passer.
 Venez avec moi, je vous en prie.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

I have a service to beg of you.
 What is the matter?
 Can you lend me a hundred and fifty francs?
 Dear me, no. I have no money at all.
 No matter.
 I am very sorry not to be able to oblige you.
 Well, well, say no more about it.
 If you will just come to my brother's, he will probably be able to give you that sum.
 No. I can do without it.
 Come with me, pray.

Je ne veux pas vous donner cette peine.	I will not give you that trouble.
Je vous assure que ce ne sera pas du tout une peine.	I assure you it will be no trouble at all.
Justement, le voici.	Positively, here he comes.
Bonjour, messieurs.	Good morning, gentlemen.
Bonjour, mon frère.	Good morning, brother.
Dis donc, as-tu cent cinquante francs à prêter à monsieur ?	I say, have you a hundred and fifty francs to lend to this gentleman ?
Je ne crois pas avoir tant que cela sur moi.	I don't think I have so much as that about me.
En vérité, monsieur, je suis désolé de mon indiscretion.	Indeed, sir, I deeply regret my indiscretion.
Attendez, voici quatre pièces de vingt francs, une de dix et trois pièces de cinq francs.	Stop, here are four pieces of twenty francs, one of ten francs, and three pieces of five francs.
Cela fait cent cinq francs.	It makes a hundred and five francs.
Ah ! j'ai encore vingt-cinq francs dans une autre poche.	Oh ! I have twenty-five francs more in another pocket.
Cela ne fait toujours que cent trente francs.	Still it makes only a hundred and thirty francs.
Croyez-vous que vous aurez assez de cela ?	Do you think that will be sufficient ?
Oui, cela me suffira. Je vous le rendrai dans quinze jours.	Yes, that will do. I will return it to you in a fortnight.
Quand vous voudrez.	When you please.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

TRENTE-TROISIÈME, thirty-third, comes from *trente-trois*, thirty-three.

Je n'en trouverai pas une.

The translation of this phrase is : *I shall not find one.*

The pronoun *EN*, referring here to *professions*, and signifying *of them*, is not rendered in English, being considered superfluous with the numeral adjective *une*, one.

The same omission would take place with an adverb of quantity, thus : “*J’EN trouverai beaucoup*, I shall find many.”

293. The pronoun **en**, signifying *of it, of that, of them*, is employed in French, with adjectives of number or adverbs of quantity, when there is an antecedent in the phrase.

Une que je puisse embrasser,
one that I may embrace.

Je puisse is the subjunctive mood. The indicative is *je puis* or *je peux*. The phrase expresses doubt.

294. When the subjoined phrase is connected with the principal one by a relative pronoun, as *qui, que, dont, où*, and denotes something doubtful or uncertain, the subjunctive mood is properly employed. But if the subjoined phrase admits of no doubt, the indicative mood must be employed.—Ex. *Il y a une profession que je peux embrasser*, there is a profession which I can undertake.

La peinture et la musique demanderaient,
painting and music would demand.

295. In French, as in English, when the verb has several subjects in the singular, either substantives or pronouns of the third person, joined by the conjunction *et*, expressed or understood, it takes the plural form.

DROIT, as a substantive, is derived from the adjective *droit*, straight, right, upright. The primary sense of the substantive *droit* is *right*. It is often used, as in this lesson, for *jurisprudence*. The literal translation of the English word *law* is *loi*.

SUIVISSE is the first person singular of the subjunctive past of *suivre*, to follow, one of the most important irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Suivre**, TO FOLLOW.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Suivre, to follow.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Suivant, following.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Suivi, followed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je suis,</i>	I follow,	am following, or do follow.
<i>Tu suis,</i>	thou followest,	art following, or dost follow.
<i>Il suit,</i>	he follows,	is following, or does follow.
<i>Nous suivons,</i>	we follow,	are following, or do follow.
<i>Vous suivez,</i>	you follow,	are following, or do follow.
<i>Ils suivent,</i>	they follow,	are following, or do follow.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je suivais,</i>	I followed,	or was following.
<i>Tu suivais,</i>	thou followedst,	or wast following.
<i>Il suivait,</i>	he followed,	or was following.
<i>Nous suivions,</i>	we followed,	or were following.
<i>Vous suiviez,</i>	you followed,	or were following.
<i>Ils suivaient,</i>	they followed,	or were following.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je suivis,</i>	I followed,	or did follow.
<i>Tu suivis,</i>	thou followedst,	or didst follow.
<i>Il suivit,</i>	he followed,	or did follow.
<i>Nous suivîmes,</i>	we followed,	or did follow.
<i>Vous suivîtes,</i>	you followed,	or did follow.
<i>Ils suivirent,</i>	they followed,	or did follow.

FUTURE.

<i>Je suivrai,</i>	I shall follow,	or will follow.
<i>Tu suivras,</i>	thou shalt follow,	or wilt follow.
<i>Il suivra,</i>	he shall follow,	or will follow.
<i>Nous suivrons,</i>	we shall follow,	or will follow.
<i>Vous suivrez,</i>	you shall follow,	or will follow.
<i>Ils suivront,</i>	they shall follow,	or will follow.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je suivrais,</i>	I should follow,	or would follow.
<i>Tu suivrais,</i>	thou shouldst follow,	or wouldst follow.
<i>Il suivrait,</i>	he should follow,	or would follow.
<i>Nous suivrions,</i>	we should follow,	or would follow.
<i>Vous suivriez,</i>	you should follow,	or would follow.
<i>Ils suivraient,</i>	they should follow,	or would follow.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Suis,</i>	follow (thou).
<i>Suivons,</i>	let us follow.
<i>Suivez,</i>	follow (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je suive,</i>	that I may follow.
<i>Que tu suives,</i>	that thou mayst follow.
<i>Qu'il suive,</i>	that he may follow.
<i>Que nous suivions,</i>	that we may follow.
<i>Que vous suiviez,</i>	that you may follow.
<i>Qu'ils suivent</i>	that they may follow.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je suivisse,</i>	that I might follow.
<i>Que tu suivisses,</i>	that thou mightst follow.
<i>Qu'il suivît,</i>	that he might follow.
<i>Que nous suivissions,</i>	that we might follow.
<i>Que vous suivissiez,</i>	that you might follow.
<i>Qu'ils suivissent,</i>	that they might follow.

296. Thus is conjugated *poursuivre*, to follow.

Passer, to pass; *trouver*, to find; *embrasser*, to embrace; *demande*r, to ask; *se soucie*r, to care; *subsiste*r, to subsist, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *assujéti*r, to subject; *subi*r, to underg^o ; *réuss*i, to succeed, are of the second.

Entreprendre, to undertake; *apprendre*, to learn, are conjugated like *prendre*, to take; *devenir*, to become, like *venir*, to come.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. I pursue, 296. | 17. I learn. |
| 2. He pursues. | 18. I learned. |
| 3. We pursue. | 19. I shall learn. |
| 4. You pursue. | 20. I should learn. |
| 5. They pursue. | 21. Let us learn. |
| 6. I was pursuing. | 22. Learn. |
| 7. I did pursue. | 23. Learning. |
| 8. I shall pursue. | 24. I have learned. |
| 9. I should pursue. | 25. I become. |
| 10. Let us pursue. | 26. I became. |
| 11. Pursue. | 27. I shall become. |
| 12. That I may pursue. | 28. I should become. |
| 13. That I might pursue. | 29. Let us become. |
| 14. To pursue. | 30. Become. |
| 15. Pursuing. | 31. Becoming. |
| 16. I have pursued. | 32. I have become. |

33. I should finish my task, if you were not here.—34. He has learned two lessons, and his brother has learned three, 293.—35. How many words do you know?—36. I have not counted them, but I know a great many, 293.—37. Do you like this fish?—38. Yes, madam; but you have given me too much, 293.—39. Tell me something that I can understand, 294.—40. You have pronounced several words that I can understand, 294.—41. I will give you a book that will amuse you.—42. I hope to find a friend who will not be ungrateful.—43. My father and mother are in the garden.—44. He and she will speak to you, 295.—45. The attorney, the counsel, and the judge, think that this man is innocent, 295.

THIRTY-FOURTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

*LITERAL TRANSLATION.***Trente-quatrième leçon.**

“ **D'ailleurs, j'ai horreur de la chicane.**

Besides

horror

chicanery

A chaque débat où je prendrais part, je

every

debate in which

should take

craindrais d'être réduit au silence par les

should fear

reduced

silence

subtilités de mes adversaires ; et jamais je

subtilities

adversaries

ne saurais prouver que le noir est blanc.

should know to prove

black

white

“ **J'aimerais assez les fonctions de mé-**

Should like

functions

phy-

decin. Celles-là ne doivent pas être bien

sician

Those

ought

fatigantes. Pour peu que vous ayez de

fatiguing

have (subj.)

la réputation, vous achetez une voiture et

reputation

buy

coach

des chevaux. Dès lors, tout le monde a

horses

From then

confiance en vous, et vous tâchez de

endeavor

mériter cette confiance.

to deserve

| **Vous vous**

You re-

rendez | chez vos malades en cabriolet ou
 pair patients cabriolet
en coupé. On vous reçoit avec autant
 chariot receives as much
d'empressement que si vous apportiez
 eagerness brought
infailliblement la guérison. On vous
 infallibly cure
écoute comme un oracle."
 listens oracle

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

" Besides, I abhor chicanery. In every argument I should be engaged in, I should fear to be nonplused by the subtilities of my adversaries; and I should never be able to prove that black is white.

" The practice of a physician would please me well enough. This cannot be very arduous. If you get into the least reputation, you buy a carriage and horses. From that instant every body has faith in you, and you do your best to deserve it. You repair in a cabriolet or a chariot to visit your patients. You are received with as much welcome as if you were the bearer of an infallible cure. You are listened to like an oracle."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la trente-quatrième.
De quoi Alexis a-t-il horreur?	De la chicane.
Alexis aime-t-il la chicane?	Non; il en a horreur.
Dans quelle circonstance crain-	A chaque débat où il prendrait
drait-il d'être réduit au silence?	part.
Par quoi craindrait-il d'être ré-	Par les subtilités de ses adver-
duit au silence?	saires.

Que craindrait-il à chaque débat où il prendrait part ?	D'être réduit au silence par les subtilités de ses adversaires.
Qu'est-ce qu'il ne saurait jamais prouver ?	Que le noir est blanc.
Quelles fonctions aimerait-il assez ?	Les fonctions de médecin.
Pourquoi les aimerait-il assez ?	Parce qu'il pense qu'elles ne doivent pas être bien fatigantes.
Que fait-on pour peu qu'on ait de la réputation dans cette profession ?	On achète une voiture et des chevaux— <i>or</i> , Vous achetez une voiture et des chevaux.
Qu'arrive-t-il dès lors ?	Que tout le monde a confiance en vous.
Que tâche-t-on de mériter ?	Cette confiance.
Comment le médecin se rend-il chez ses malades ?	En cabriolet ou en coupe.
Chez qui se rend-il en cabriolet ou en coupé ?	Chez ses malades.
Comment le reçoit-on ?	Avec autant d'empressement que s'il apportait infailliblement la guérison.
Comment l'écoute-t-on ?	Comme un oracle.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
J'ai besoin de toutes sortes de choses. Voulez-vous venir avec moi les acheter ?	I want a variety of things. Will you come with me to buy them?
Je le veux bien.	Willingly.
Vous m'obligerez beaucoup.	You will oblige me very much.
Quelles sont les choses dont vous avez besoin ?	What things do you want?
D'abord, des livres et du papier.	First, some books and paper.
Quels livres vous faut-il ?	What books do you want?
Des livres de droit et de médecine.	Books of law and physic.
Est-ce que vous avez le projet d'exercer deux professions à la fois ?	Do you intend to practise two professions at the same time?

Je n'ai pas cette prétention.	I have no such pretension.
Mon père veut que je sois avocat ; c'est pourquoi je fais mon droit.	My father wishes me to be a barrister ; I am therefore studying the law.
Bon.	Good.
Mais je ne suis pas fâché d'acquérir quelques notions de médecine pour ma propre satisfaction.	But I have a mind also to acquire some notions of physic for my own satisfaction.
J'entends. Que vous faut-il encore ?	I understand. What do you want next ?
Des outils de menuisier.	Some joiner's tools.
Pourquoi faire ?	What for ?
Pour en faire usage.	To use them.
Vous-même ?	Yourself ?
Oui. Pourquoi pas ?	Yes. Why not ?
Quelle occupation !	What an occupation !
Je vous assure que c'est une occupation très-attractive.	I assure you it is a very alluring occupation.
Est-ce tout ce qu'il vous faut ?	Is that all you want ?
Non. Je voudrais acheter aussi des lignes et des hameçons.	No. I want to buy some fishing-lines and hooks also.
Je comprends mieux ce goût-là.	I understand that fancy better.
C'est que vous le partagez, peut-être ?	Because you partake it, perhaps ?
Il y a sur les quais plusieurs boutiques où nous trouverons tout ce qu'il faut pour la pêche.	There are on the quays several shops in which we shall find all that is requisite for fishing.
Eh bien, commençons par là.	Well, let us go there first.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

TRENTE-QUATRIÈME, thirty-fourth, comes from *trente-quatre*, thirty-four.

J'ai horreur, I abhor—literally, I have a horror.

It has been said that, with few exceptions, all common nouns must be preceded, in French, by a determinative word. The above phrase presents one of these exceptions.

297. No determinative word is used when nouns are combined with certain verbs, as *avoir*, *faire*, *rendre*, *entendre*, and a few more, with which they express a single idea; as, *Avoir faim*, to be hungry; *avoir soif*, to be thirsty; *avoir peur*, to have fear, to be afraid; *faire mal*, to do harm, to hurt; *rendre hommage*, to do homage, to reverence; *entendre raison*, to hear reason, to be sensible; *avoir horreur*, to have a horror, to abhor; *prendre part*, to take a part, etc.

CHAQUE, every, each, is an indefinite adjective.

298. All the indefinite adjectives have now been seen. The most important are :

Aucun, aucune,	NOT ANY, NO ONE.	Plusieurs,	SEVERAL.
Chaque,	EVERY, EACH.	Quelques,	A FEW.
Nul, nulle,	NO.	Tout, toute.	ALL.

299. Such of these as are variable agree in gender and number with the word before which they stand.

JE CRAINDRAIS is the first person singular of the conditional mood of *craindre*, to fear, one of the most necessary irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Craindre**, TO FEAR.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Craindre, to fear.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Craignant, fearing.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Craint, feared.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je crains,</i>	I fear,	am fearing, or do fear.
<i>Tu crains,</i>	thou fearest,	art fearing, or dost fear.
<i>Il craint,</i>	he fears,	is fearing, or does fear.
<i>Nous craignons,</i>	we fear,	are fearing, or do fear.
<i>Vous craignez,</i>	you fear,	are fearing, or do fear.
<i>Ils craignent,</i>	they fear,	are fearing, or do fear.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je craignais,</i>	I feared,	or was fearing.
<i>Tu craignais,</i>	thou fearedst,	or wast fearing.
<i>Il craignait,</i>	he feared,	or was fearing.
<i>Nous craignions,</i>	we feared,	or were fearing.
<i>Vous craigniez,</i>	you feared,	or were fearing.
<i>Ils craignaient,</i>	they feared,	or were fearing.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je craignis,</i>	I feared,	or did fear.
<i>Tu craignis,</i>	thou fearedst,	or didst fear.
<i>Il craignit,</i>	he feared,	or did fear.
<i>Nous craignîmes,</i>	we feared,	or did fear.
<i>Vous craignîtes,</i>	you feared,	or did fear.
<i>Ils craignirent,</i>	they feared,	or did fear.

FUTURE.

<i>Je craindrai,</i>	I shall fear,	or will fear.
<i>Tu craindras,</i>	thou shalt fear,	or wilt fear.
<i>Il craindra,</i>	he shall fear,	or will fear.
<i>Nous craindrons,</i>	we shall fear,	or will fear.
<i>Vous craindrez,</i>	you shall fear,	or will fear.
<i>Ils craindront,</i>	they shall fear,	or will fear.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je craindrais,</i>	I should fear,	or would fear.
<i>Tu craindrais,</i>	thou shouldst fear,	or wouldst fear.
<i>Il craindrait,</i>	he should fear,	or would fear.
<i>Nous craindrions,</i>	we should fear,	or would fear.
<i>Vous craindriez,</i>	you should fear,	or would fear.
<i>Ils craindraient,</i>	they should fear,	or would fear.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Crains, fear (thou).
Craignons, let us fear.
Craignez, fear (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je craigne,</i>	that I may fear.
<i>Que tu craignes,</i>	that thou mayst fear.
<i>Qu'il craigne,</i>	that he may fear.
<i>Que nous craignons,</i>	that we may fear.
<i>Que vous craigniez,</i>	that you may fear.
<i>Qu'ils craignent,</i>	that they may fear.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je craignisse,</i>	that I might fear.
<i>Que tu craignisses,</i>	that thou mightst fear.
<i>Qu'il craignît,</i>	that he might fear.
<i>Que nous craignissions,</i>	that we might fear.
<i>Que vous craignissiez,</i>	that you might fear.
<i>Qu'ils craignissent,</i>	that they might fear.

300. There are in French about twenty-eight verbs ending with **a-indre**, **e-indre**, or **o-indre**, all of which are conjugated like *craindre*. Among the most important of these are : *Plaindre*, to pity ; *peindre*, to paint ; *joindre*, to join ; *teindre*, to dye ; *atteindre*, to attain, to reach ; *éteindre*, to extinguish, etc.

301. It will be well to observe that all the verbs ending in **indre** undergo a change of the letters **ND** into **GN** : 1st, in the three persons plural of the present tense of the indicative mood ; 2dly, throughout the imperfect tense ; 3dly, throughout the past tense definite ; 4thly, in the first and second persons plural of the imperative mood ; 5thly, throughout the subjunctive mood, present and past ; 6thly, in the present participle.

TOUT LE MONDE—literally, *all the world*—is often used for *everybody*.

REÇOIT is the third person singular of the indicative mood, present tense, of *recevoir*, to receive, one of the seven verbs which are conjugated like *devoir*. There is a cedilla under the **c**.

302. Any verb ending in the infinitive with **cer**, or whose root ends with **c**, takes a cedilla under the **c** before **a**, **o**, or **u**, in order that the **c** may preserve the sound of *s*.

Ex. *Exerçait*, exercised ; *reçoit*, receives, etc.

Silence, silence; *oracle*, oracle, are masculine, and *guérison*, cure, is feminine, by exception. The feminine of *blanc*, white, is *blanche*.

Prouver, to prove; *aimer*, to like, to love; *acheter*, to buy; *tâcher*, to endeavor; *mériter*, to merit; *apporter*, to bring; and *écouter*, to listen to, are regular verbs of the first conjugation.

Réduire, to reduce, is conjugated like *conduire*, to conduct; and *recevoir*, to receive, like *devoir*, to owe, ought.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. I paint, 300, 301. | 15. I join, 300, 301. |
| 2. He paints. | 16. He joins. |
| 3. We paint. | 17. We join. |
| 4. You paint. | 18. You join. |
| 5. They paint. | 19. They join. |
| 6. I was painting. | 20. I was joining. |
| 7. I did paint. | 21. I did join. |
| 8. I shall paint. | 22. I shall join. |
| 9. I should paint. | 23. I should join. |
| 10. Let us paint. | 24. Let us join. |
| 11. Paint. | 25. Join. |
| 12. To paint. | 26. To join. |
| 13. Painting. | 27. Joining. |
| 14. I have painted. | 28. I have joined. |

29. I should be happy in this house.—30. I would follow you with pleasure.—31. If I had any fish, I would eat some.—32. Why do you not follow your comrades?—33. If you hear him, why do you not answer him?—34. I have as much patience as you.—35. My physician has as many patients as yours.—36. You have not as many tools as the joiner.—37. Have you as many horses as your friend?—38. You do not eat as much as your brother.—39. There is the man of whom you were speaking.—40. Are you hungry? 297.—41. I am hungry, 297.—42. Is he thirsty? 297.—43. He is not thirsty, 297.—44. Every man, 298.—45. Every lady, 299.—46. Several children.

tisane, enfin le remède qui vous paraît le
 ptisan in short remedy appears
plus convenable. Et vous guérissez quel-
 fit cure
quefois. Malheureusement, pour en ar-
 Unfortunately ar-
river là, il faut encore étudier. Il faut
 rive
connaître l'anatomie, la physiologie, la
 know anatomy physiology
thérapeutique.... que sais-je ? ”
 therapeutics what know

*THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.**

“You are scarcely shown in when the patient finds himself better. Drawing a second-watch from your fob, you feel his pulse, you desire him next to show you his tongue. You ask him where his pain is, how he sleeps, whether he has any appetite. You put a few more questions to him; after which you take up a pen. You prescribe, according as the case may be, strict diet, bleeding, leeches; or a poultice, a blister, a plaster; or perhaps an emetic, a diet-drink, in short the remedy which you judge fittest. And you may happen to cure him. Unfortunately, to arrive at all this, it is still necessary to study. One must know anatomy, physiology, therapeutics, and I know not what.”

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la trente-cinquième.
Comment le malade se sent-il quand le médecin est à peine entré?	Il se sent mieux.
Quand le malade se sent-il mieux?	Quand le médecin est à peine entré.

Que fait le médecin?	Il lui tâte le pouls—or, Il tâte le pouls du malade.
Que fait-il en même temps	Il tire une montre à secondes de son gousset.
Que fait-il ensuite?	Il prie le malade de lui montrer sa langue.
Que lui demande-t-il après cela?	Il lui demande où il souffre, comment il dort, et s'il a de l'appétit.
Est-ce tout ce qu'il lui demande?	Il lui fait quelques autres questions.
Que fait-il après cela?	Il prend la plume.
Que prescrit-il selon le cas?	La diète, la saignée, ou les sangsues.
Peut-il prescrire autre chose?	Oui: un cataplasme, un vésicatoire ou un emplâtre.
Que peut-il prescrire encore?	De l'émétique ou une tisane.
Lequel de ces remèdes prescrit-il de préférence?	Celui qui lui paraît le plus convenable.
Le médecin guérit-il toujours?	Il guérit quelquefois.
Que faut-il faire, pour en arriver là?	Il faut étudier.
Que faut-il connaître?	Il faut connaître l'anatomie, la physiologie, la thérapeutique, et beaucoup d'autres choses.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Comment vous trouvez-vous aujourd'hui?	How do you feel to-day?
Mal, docteur; je n'ai pas dormi de la nuit.	But poorly, doctor; I had not a wink of sleep all night.
Avez-vous pris votre potion?	Did you take your draught?
Oui, mais cela ne m'a pas calmé.	Yes, but it did not compose me.
Où souffrez-vous?	Where do you suffer?
J'ai des douleurs dans tous les membres.	All my limbs ache.
Voyons votre langue.	Let me see your tongue.

Vous la trouvez bien blanche, n'est-ce pas ?	You find it very white, don't you ?
Non, pas trop.	No, not very.
Je me sens bien faible.	I feel very weak.
C'est le résultat de la saignée d'hier.	It is owing to the bleeding of yesterday.
Il me semble que si je mangeais, cela me ferait du bien.	It seems to me that if I ate, it would do me good.
Cela vous ferait beaucoup de mal, au contraire.	It would, on the contrary, do you a great deal of harm.
La diète la plus sévère est indispensable.	The strictest diet is indispensable.
Vous me trouvez donc bien malade, docteur ?	Do you then think I am very ill, doctor ?
Je ne vous dis pas cela. Je dis seulement qu'il ne faut pas faire d'imprudence.	I do not say so. I only say you must not act imprudently.
Je trouve ma tisane bien amère.	I find my ptisan very bitter.
Dans deux ou trois jours, je vous en donnerai une autre.	In two or three days, I will give you another.
Faudra-t-il prendre encore une potion ce soir ?	Must I take another draught to-night ?
Oui. Et cette fois, je pense que vous dormirez bien.	Yes. And this time, I think you will sleep well.
Croyez-vous que cette maladie sera longue ?	Do you believe this illness will last long ?
Non. Je vous réponds que vous serez bientôt guéri.	No. I warrant you will soon be cured.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

TRENTE-CINQUIÈME, thirty-fifth, comes from *trente-cinq*, thirty-five.

Vous lui tâtez le pouls, you feel his pulse.

303. It has been seen (25) that the article *le*, *la*, *les*, may be substituted for a possessive adjective before a regimen. This substitution is particularly proper before the name of a part of the body, or of a mental faculty ; but, in order to avoid ambiguity, care must be taken to make use of a pronoun showing who the possessor is.

304. This pronoun is an indirect regimen when the substantive is a direct one, as in the phrase, "*Vous* **LUI** tâtez **LE** pouls;" and a direct regimen when the substantive is an indirect one, thus: "*Vous* **LE** prenez par **LA** main, you take him by the hand,"—just as in English.

305. The necessity of employing a pronoun denoting who the possessor is, often gives the verb the form of a reflective verb, thus: "*Je* **ME** tâte **LE** pouls, I feel my pulse; *Je* **ME** suis mordu **LA** langue, I have bit my tongue."

306. The pronoun showing who the possessor is may be the subject, thus: "*J'ai* mal **AU** bras, I have a pain in my arm."

Montre à secondes, a second-watch.

307. In English, a substantive which qualifies another substantive is generally placed first, as, *second-watch*, *steamboat*, etc. In French, the qualifying substantive follows the name of the qualified object, and the two nouns are connected by means of a preposition, generally *à* or *de*, or of a compound article, thus: *Montre à secondes*, second-watch; *bateau à vapeur*, steamboat; *pot au lait*, milk-pot; *chemin de fer*, railway; *poisson de rivière*, river-fish; *vent du nord*, north wind.

SOUFFRE is the third person singular of the indicative mood, present tense, of *souffrir*, to suffer, one of the most important irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Souffrir**, TO SUFFER.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Souffrir, to suffer.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Souffrant, suffering.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Souffert, suffered.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je souffre,</i>	I suffer,	am suffering, or do suffer.
<i>Tu souffres,</i>	thou sufferest,	art suffering, or dost suffer.
<i>Il souffre,</i>	he suffers,	is suffering, or does suffer.
<i>Nous souffrons,</i>	we suffer,	are suffering, or do suffer.
<i>Vous souffrez,</i>	you suffer,	are suffering, or do suffer.
<i>Ils souffrent,</i>	they suffer,	are suffering, or do suffer.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je souffrais,</i>	I suffered,	or was suffering.
<i>Tu souffrais,</i>	thou sufferedst,	or wast suffering.
<i>Il souffrait,</i>	he suffered,	or was suffering.
<i>Nous souffrions,</i>	we suffered,	or were suffering.
<i>Vous souffriez,</i>	you suffered,	or were suffering.
<i>Ils souffraient,</i>	they suffered,	or were suffering.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je souffris,</i>	I suffered,	or did suffer.
<i>Tu souffris,</i>	thou sufferedst,	or didst suffer.
<i>Il souffrit,</i>	he suffered,	or did suffer.
<i>Nous souffrîmes,</i>	we suffered,	or did suffer.
<i>Vous souffrîtes,</i>	you suffered,	or did suffer.
<i>Ils souffrirent,</i>	they suffered,	or did suffer.

FUTURE.

<i>Je souffrirai,</i>	I shall suffer,	or will suffer.
<i>Tu souffriras,</i>	thou shalt suffer,	or wilt suffer.
<i>Il souffrira,</i>	he shall suffer,	or will suffer.
<i>Nous souffrirons,</i>	we shall suffer,	or will suffer.
<i>Vous souffrirez,</i>	you shall suffer,	or will suffer.
<i>Ils souffriront,</i>	they shall suffer,	or will suffer.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je souffrirais,</i>	I should suffer,	or would suffer.
<i>Tu souffrirais,</i>	thou shouldst suffer,	or wouldst suffer.
<i>Il souffrirait,</i>	he should suffer,	or would suffer.
<i>Nous souffririons,</i>	we should suffer,	or would suffer.
<i>Vous souffririez,</i>	you should suffer,	or would suffer.
<i>Ils souffriraient,</i>	they should suffer,	or would suffer.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Souffre,</i>	suffer (thou).
<i>Souffrons,</i>	let us suffer.
<i>Souffrez,</i>	suffer (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je souffre,</i>	that I may suffer.
<i>Que tu souffres,</i>	that thou mayst suffer.
<i>Qu'il souffre,</i>	that he may suffer.
<i>Que nous souffrions,</i>	that we may suffer.
<i>Que vous souffriez,</i>	that you may suffer.
<i>Qu'ils souffrent,</i>	that they may suffer.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je souffrisse,</i>	that I might suffer.
<i>Que tu souffrisses,</i>	that thou mightst suffer.
<i>Qu'il souffrît,</i>	that he might suffer.
<i>Que nous souffrissions,</i>	that we might suffer.
<i>Que vous souffrissiez,</i>	that you might suffer.
<i>Qu'ils souffrissent,</i>	that they might suffer.

Pour en arriver là, in order to come to that.

308. The pronoun **en** is sometimes employed without reference to any thing clearly defined, and is, in fact, a mere expletive. The English expressions, *To make a night of it*, *To have the worst of it*, may serve to explain this redundancy.

Que sais-je ?

309. It is often improper, in interrogative phrases, to place the pronoun **je** after the verb, particularly when this verb has but one syllable, or when its termination combined with *je* would offend a delicate ear. For instance, a correct speaker would not say : *Dors-je, mords-je, perds-je, agis-je, réfléchis-je*. This is avoided by changing the construction, thus : *Est-ce que je dors, est-ce que je mords*, etc.

The following combinations, however, are authorized : *Suis-je*, am I ; *ai-je*, have I ; *fais-je*, do I ; *dis-je*, say I ; *dois-je*, must I ; *sais-je*, do I know ; *vais-je*, do I go.

Cataplasme, cataplasm, poultice ; *vésicatoire*, blister ; *emplâtre*, plaster ; *émétique*, emetic ; and *remède*, remedy, are masculine by exception.

Entrer, to enter; *tâter*, to feel; *tirer*, to draw, to pull; *prier*, to pray; *montrer*, to show; *demander*, to ask; *arriver*, to arrive; and *étudier*, to study, are regular verbs of the first conjugation. *Prescrire*, to prescribe, is conjugated like *écrire*, to write.

Dormir, to sleep; *paraître*, to appear; and *connaître*, to be acquainted with, are irregular verbs, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Am I? 309. | 17. I prescribe. |
| 2. Is he? | 18. He prescribes. |
| 3. Are we? | 19. We prescribe. |
| 4. Are you? | 20. You prescribe. |
| 5. Are they? | 21. They prescribe. |
| 6. Was I? | 22. I was prescribing. |
| 7. Shall I be? | 23. I did prescribe. |
| 8. Should I be? | 24. I shall prescribe. |
| 9. Do I enter? | 25. I should prescribe. |
| 10. Do I show? | 26. Let us prescribe. |
| 11. Do I pull? | 27. Prescribe. |
| 12. Do I collect? | 28. That I may prescribe. |
| 13. Do I pretend? | 29. That I might prescribe. |
| 14. Do I suffer? | 30. To prescribe. |
| 15. Am I going to suffer? | 31. Prescribing. |
| 16. Have I suffered? | 32. I have prescribed. |

33. Do I learn easily? 309.—34. You surprise me.—35. You do not write enough.—36. You never finish what you begin.—37. You take his hand, 304.—38. You take him by the hand, 304.—39. You have opened their eyes, 304.—40. I have blackened my hands, 305.—41. He feels his pulse, in order to know whether he is sick, 305.—42. What sort of paper will you have?—43. Some letter-paper.—44. Our old schoolmaster was an excellent man.—45. Do I lose my time?—46. You do not lose it.—47. Do I study well?—48. You study pretty well.

servir à propos de l'oxygène, de l'azote et
to serve opportunely oxygen azote

to serve opportunely

oxygen

azote

des autres gaz ? gases	qu'il emploie employ (subj.)	avec dis- dis-
---------------------------	---------------------------------	-------------------

gases

employ (subj.)

dis-

cernement un acide, un alcali, un sel, un
cernment acid alkali salt

cernment

acid

alkali

salt

sulfite, un chlorure ou un carbonate?
sulphite chloride carbonate

sulphite

chloride

carbonate

Comment se rappeler tant de choses ?
to one's self to recall so many

to one's self to recall so many

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

“I recollect that one day I attended a lecture of Doctor Auzoux. He took to pieces the mechanical figure of a man, and showed us in succession each of the viscera: the brain, the lungs, the heart, the stomach, the liver, the spleen, the intestines. He told us the names of the bones, the muscles, the veins, the arteries, and the nerves. I never saw any thing so complicated as the interior of the human body.

“ Besides, must not a physician be versed in chemistry? Must he not know the proper use of oxygen, azote, and the other gases? and be thoroughly acquainted with the properties of an acid, an alkali, a salt, a sulphite, a chloride, or a carbonate? How is it possible to remember so many things?”

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon ?

C'est la trente-sixième.

A quoi Alexis assista-t-il un jour ?

A une leçon du docteur Auzoux.

De quoi Alexis se souvient-il ?

D'avoir assisté un jour à une
leçon du docteur Auzoux.

Qu'est-ce que le docteur démontra
pièce à pièce ?

Un homme artificiel.

Comment le démontra-t-il?

Pièce à pièce.

Que fit-il voir successivement ?	Chacun des viscères.
Quels sont les principaux viscères ?	Le cerveau, les poumons, le cœur, l'estomac, le foie, la rate, les intestins.
De quelles choses dit-il le nom ?	Des os, des muscles, des veines, des artères et des nerfs.
Que dit Alexis de l'intérieur du corps humain ?	Il dit qu'il n'a jamais rien vu d'aussi compliqué.
Qu'est-ce qui lui semble compliqué ?	L'intérieur du corps humain.
Quelle science faut-il qu'un médecin connaisse en outre ?	La chimie.
De quoi faut-il qu'il sache se servir à propos ?	De l'oxygène, de l'azote et des autres gaz.
Que faut-il qu'il emploie avec discernement ?	Un acide, un alcali, un sel, un sulfite, un chlorure ou un carbonate.
Que dit Alexis de toutes les choses qu'un médecin doit savoir ?	Il dit : "Comment se rappeler tant de choses ?"

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Avez-vous étudié la chimie ?	Have you studied chemistry ?
J'en ai quelques notions superficielles.	I have some superficial notions of it.
Pourquoi me faites-vous cette question ?	Why do you ask me this question ?
Parce qu'il y a dans la leçon d'aujourd'hui plusieurs mots que je ne comprends pas.	Because, in the lesson of this day, there are several words which I do not understand.
Quels sont ces mots ?	Which are those words ?
D'abord, l'oxygène. Qu'est ce que c'est ?	First, oxygen. What is it ?
C'est un gaz.	It is a gas.
Qu'est-ce qu'un gaz ?	What is a gas ?
C'est un corps qui n'est ni solide, ni liquide.	It is a body which is neither solid nor liquid.
L'air est donc un gaz ?	Air is a gas then ?

C'est la réunion de deux gaz :
l'oxygène et l'azote.

Maintenant, qu'est-ce qu'un alkali ?

Vous ne savez pas encore les mots qui me seraient nécessaires pour vous en donner la définition.

Eh bien, alors, un sulfite ?

C'est un sel composé d'acide sulfureux et d'une autre substance qu'on appelle généralement une base.

Et un carbonate ?

C'est un sel composé d'acide carbonique et d'une base.

Vous dites qu'un sulfite est un sel, et qu'un carbonate est un sel : les noms de sels finissent donc en *ite* et en *ate* ?

Oui, selon le nom de l'acide qui entre dans leur composition.

Je ne comprends pas bien.

Par exemple, le nom d'un sel où il entre de l'acide sulfureux finit en *ite*.

Et celui d'un sel où il entre de l'acide sulfurique finit en *ate*.

Et quelle différence y a-t-il entre l'acide sulfureux et l'acide sulfurique ?

Le premier contient moins d'oxygène que le second.

Ainsi, les noms d'acides finissent en *ique* ou en *eux*, selon qu'ils contiennent plus ou moins d'oxygène ?

Oui, ordinairement.

J'allais oublier le mot *chlorure*, que je n'ai pas compris.

It is the combination of two gases : oxygen and azote.

Now, what is an alkali ?

You have not yet learned the words which would be requisite for me to give you a definition of it.

Well, then, a sulphite ?

It is a salt composed of sulphurous acid and another substance which is generally called a base.

And a carbonate ?

It is a salt composed of carbonic acid and a base.

You say that a sulphite is a salt, and that a carbonate is a salt : do the names of salts end in *ite* and in *ate* ?

Yes, according to the name of the acid which enters into their composition.

I do not understand very well.

For instance, the name of a salt containing sulphurous acid ends in *ite*.

And that of a salt containing sulphuric acid ends in *ate*.

And what difference is there between sulphurous and sulphuric acid ?

The first contains less oxygen than the second.

So, the names of acids end in *ic* or in *ous*, according as they contain more or less oxygen ?

Yes, generally.

I was going to forget the word *chlorure*, which I have not understood.

O'est la réunion du chlore, qui est un gaz, avec un autre corps.	It is the combination of chlorine, which is a gas, with another substance.
Dans quel cas se sert-on de la désinence <i>ure</i> ?	In what case is the termination <i>ure</i> employed?
On s'en sert pour désigner la combinaison des corps non métalliques entre eux, ou avec les métaux.	It is employed to designate the combination of non-metallic substances between themselves, or with metals.
Pouvez-vous m'en donner un exemple?	Can you give me an example?
Le chlore, en se combinant avec un métal appelé sodium, forme le chlorure de sodium, qui n'est autre chose que le sel que vous mangez avec votre viande.	Chlorine, combined with a metal called sodium, forms chloride of sodium, which is nothing else than the salt which you eat with your meat.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

TRENTE-SIXIÈME, thirty-sixth, comes from *trente-six*, thirty-six.

Le docteur Auzoux.

310. The article, which is generally omitted in English before a title adjoined to a proper name, must not be suppressed in French.

Chacun *des viscères*, each of the viscera.

311. **Chacun**, formed of *chaque*, every, and *un*, one, is an indefinite pronoun, signifying *each*, *every one*, *everybody*. Its feminine is *chacune*. It has no plural. When used in a general sense, it refers only to persons, and is always masculine. When it relates to some determined object, it takes either of the genders, and is used in speaking of things as well as of persons. Before a substantive or a pronoun, it is followed by *de*.

The pronoun *chacun* must not be confounded with the adjective *chaque*, seen in the thirty-fourth lesson. *Chaque* cannot be employed without a substantive in the singular, which it precedes.

312. We have now seen the most important indefinite pronouns; which are:

Autrui,	OTHERS. Applied only to persons.
Chacun, chacune,	EVERY ONE.
On,	ONE, PEOPLE, THEY. Requires the verb in the third person singular.
Quelqu'un,	SOME ONE, SOMEBODY.
Personne,	NOBODY. Requires <i>ne</i> put before the verb
Quelques-uns,	A FEW.
Plusieurs,	SEVERAL.
Tel, telle,	SUCH.
Tout,	EVERY THING, etc.

Je n'ai jamais vu, I have never seen.

313. When a verb is in a compound tense, the adverb is generally placed between the auxiliary and the participle. But this rule is not absolute.

Humain, human.

314. The termination **ain** belongs to a small class of adjectives differing slightly from the English; as, *Humain*, human, or humane; *Américain*, American; *mondain*, mundane; *contemporain*, contemporaneous.

CONNAISSE is the third person singular of the subjunctive mood, present tense, of the verb *connaître*, to know, to be acquainted with, one of the most necessary irregular verbs in French. (261.)

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Connaître**, TO KNOW.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Connaître, to know.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Connaissant, knowing.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Connu, known.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je connais,</i>	I know,	am knowing, or do know.
<i>Tu connais,</i>	thou knowest,	art knowing, or dost know.
<i>Il connaît,</i>	he knows,	is knowing, or does know.
<i>Nous connaissons,</i>	we know,	are knowing, or do know.
<i>Vous connaissez,</i>	you know,	are knowing, or do know.
<i>Ils connaissent,</i>	they know,	are knowing, or do know.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je connaissais,</i>	I knew,	or was knowing.
<i>Tu connaissais,</i>	thou knewest,	or wast knowing.
<i>Il connaissait,</i>	he knew,	or was knowing.
<i>Nous connaissions,</i>	we knew,	or were knowing.
<i>Vous connaissiez,</i>	you knew,	or were knowing.
<i>Ils connaissaient,</i>	they knew,	or were knowing.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je connus,</i>	I knew,	or did know.
<i>Tu connus,</i>	thou knewest,	or didst know.
<i>Il connut,</i>	he knew,	or did know.
<i>Nous connûmes,</i>	we knew,	or did know.
<i>Vous connûtes,</i>	you knew,	or did know.
<i>Ils connurent,</i>	they knew,	or did know.

FUTURE.

<i>Je connaîtrai,</i>	I shall know,	or will know.
<i>Tu connaîtras,</i>	thou shalt know,	or wilt know.
<i>Il connaîtra,</i>	he shall know,	or will know.
<i>Nous connaîtrons,</i>	we shall know,	or will know.
<i>Vous connaîtrez,</i>	you shall know,	or will know.
<i>Ils connaîtront,</i>	they shall know,	or will know.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je connaîtrais,</i>	I should know,	or would know.
<i>Tu connaîtrais,</i>	thou shouldst know,	or wouldst know.
<i>Il connaîtrait,</i>	he should know,	or would know.
<i>Nous connaîtrions,</i>	we should know,	or would know.
<i>Vous connaîtriez,</i>	you should know,	or would know.
<i>Ils connaîtraient,</i>	they should know,	or would know.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Connais,</i>	know (thou).
<i>Connaissions,</i>	let us know.
<i>Connaissez,</i>	know (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je connaisse,</i>	that I may know.
<i>Que tu connaisses,</i>	that thou mayst know.
<i>Qu'il connaisse,</i>	that he may know.
<i>Que nous connaissions,</i>	that we may know.
<i>Que vous connaissiez,</i>	that you may know.
<i>Qu'ils connaissent,</i>	that they may know.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je connusse,</i>	that I might know.
<i>Que tu connusses,</i>	that thou mightst know.
<i>Qu'il connût,</i>	that he might know.
<i>Que nous connussions,</i>	that we might know.
<i>Que vous connussiez,</i>	that you might know.
<i>Qu'ils connussent,</i>	that they might know.

UN *acide*, UN *alkali*, UN *sel*, UN *sulfite*.

315. All the names of simple bodies or chemical elements, and most of the salts, are masculine.

316. Some end in *e* mute, and accordingly form exceptions to the general rule. The principal are: *Oxygène*, oxygen; *hydrogène*, hydrogen; *azote* or *nitrogène*, nitrogen; *sulfite* or

soufre, sulphur; *chlore*, chlorine; *iode*, iodine; *phosphore*, phosphorus; *chrôme*, chromium; *cuiivre*, copper; *mercure*, mercury or quicksilver; *antimoine*, antimony; *platine*, platinum, etc.

Foie, liver; *muscle*, muscle; and *artère*, artery, are masculine by exception.

Assister, to assist; *démonter*, to disjoint; *employer*, to employ; and *rappeler*, to recall, are regular verbs of the first conjugation.

Se souvenir, to remember, is conjugated like *venir*, to come.

Servir, to serve, is an irregular verb, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Every one gives, 312. | 13. A few pretend, 312. |
| 2. Every one thinks. | 14. A few eat. |
| 3. Every one hears. | 15. A few drink. |
| 4. One answers. | 16. Several write. |
| 5. One collects. | 17. Several examine. |
| 6. One wishes. | 18. Several know. |
| 7. Somebody can. | 19. Every thing goes. |
| 8. Some one proposes. | 20. Every thing becomes. |
| 9. Somebody refuses. | 21. Every thing languishes. |
| 10. Nobody does. | 22. People learn. |
| 11. Nobody likes. | 23. People believe. |
| 12. Nobody says. | 24. People speak. |

25. I showed this book to several friends, 312.—26. The baskets were weighed: each weighed fifteen pounds, 312.—27. You will examine each of these sheets of paper, 312.—28. Here are three students: each of them will answer well. 312.—29. This action is inhuman, 314.—30. You are studying the Roman history, 314.—31. Our comrades are generous.—32. General William has been killed, 310.—33. Professor Auzoux is a man of talent, 310.—34. They have not studied much, 313.—35. They have never assisted at a lesson, 313.—36. Good day, Sir.—37. I am very glad to see you.—38. Let us study.

THIRTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Trente-septième leçon.

“ Ensuite, comment reconnaître toutes
 Then to recognize
les maladies, depuis le simple mal de tête
 maladies simple ache head
ou la migraine jusqu'à l'apoplexie fou-
 megrim apoplexy ful-
droyante ? Si j'allais prendre la coque-
 ininant went to take hooping-
luche pour une fluxion de poitrine, un
 cough inflammation breast
rhume pour un asthme ou pour un ca-
 cold asthma ca-
tarrhe, la rougeole pour la petite vérole,
 tarrh measles small pox
une engelure pour un ulcère, une fièvre
 chilblain ulcer fever
maligne pour une fièvre tierce, ou la
 malignant tertian
jaunisse pour la peste, il en pourrait
 jaundice plague from it
résulter de fatals accidents.
 to result fatal accidents

“ **A supposer que tous les obstacles**
to suppose obstacles
s'aplanissent et que je fusse certain de ne
levelled (subj. past) certain

pas me tromper, aurais-je au moins
 deceive (mistake) should have at least
atteint mon but ? Me voilà médecin...
 reached aim
bon. Je rentre chez moi, après avoir fait
 re-enter
mes visites. Un bon dîner m'attend
 visits dinner awaits
auprès d'un bon feu. Je me mets à table,
 near put table
mourant de faim."
 dying

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"Besides, how can one distinguish the different diseases from one another, from a mere headache or a megrim to fulminant apoplexy? If I should mistake the whooping-cough for an inflammation on the chest, a cold for an asthma or a catarrh, the measles for the small-pox, a chilblain for an ulcer, a malignant fever for a tertian fever, or the jaundice for the plague, fatal accidents might result from it.

"Even supposing that all obstacles were removed, and I were certain not to mistake, should I at least have attained my end? Let us say that I am a doctor:—Well and good. I return home after visiting my patients. A nice dinner is ready for me, before a comfortable fire. I sit down to it, with a ravenous appetite."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la trente-septième.
Que faut-il qu'un médecin reconnaisse ?	Toutes les maladies.
Quel mal Alexis semble-t-il regarder comme peu de chose ?	Le simple mal de tête, ou la migraine.

Quelle maladie semble-t-il regarder comme la plus terrible ?	L'apoplexie foudroyante.
Quelle maladie craindrait-il de prendre pour une fluxion de poitrine ?	La coqueluche.
Que craindrait-il de prendre pour un asthme ou pour un catarrhe ?	Un rhume.
Que craindrait-il de prendre pour la petite vérole ?	La rougeole.
Que craindrait-il de prendre pour un ulcère ?	Une engelure.
Que craindrait-il de prendre pour une fièvre tierce ?	Une fièvre maligne.
Que craindrait-il de prendre pour la peste ?	La jaunisse.
Pour quelle maladie pourrait-il prendre la coqueluche ?	Pour une fluxion de poitrine.
Pour quoi prendrait-il un rhume ?	Pour un asthme ou pour un catarrhe.
Pour quoi prendrait-il la rougeole ?	Pour la petite vérole.
Pour quoi prendrait-il une engelure ?	Pour un ulcère.
Pour quoi prendrait-il une fièvre maligne ?	Pour une fièvre tierce.
Pour quoi prendrait-il la jaunisse ?	Pour la peste.
Que pourrait-il résulter de pareilles erreurs ?	Il en pourrait résulter de fatals accidents.
Que suppose-t-il pour un moment ?	Que tous les obstacles s'aplanissent.
De quoi serait-il certain alors ?	De ne pas se tromper.
Quelle question se fait-il, en supposant les obstacles aplanis ?	Aurais-je au moins atteint mon but ?
Que s'imagine-t-il être ?	Il s'imagine être médecin.
Où rentre-t-il ?	Il rentre chez lui.
Après quoi rentre-t-il chez lui ?	Après avoir fait ses visites.
Qu'est-ce qui l'attend ?	Un bon dîner.
Auprès de quoi est le bon dîner ?	Auprès d'un bon feu.
Que fait-il ?	Il se met à table.
Dans quelle disposition se met-il à table ?	Mourant de faim.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Il y a bien longtemps que je ne vous ai vu, mon cher ami.

C'est vrai, mon cher. Comment va la santé?

Pas trop mal, comme vous voyez.

Et vous, comment allez-vous?

Tout doucement. J'ai été bien malade.

Bah! Qu'avez-vous eu?

J'ai eu une fluxion de poitrine.

Comment cela vous est-il venu?

Cela a commencé par un rhume.

Ensuite j'ai eu une grande oppression et une fièvre violente.

Avez-vous un bon médecin?

Oui, je le pense. Il a de la réputation.

Que vous a-t-il prescrit?

D'abord des sangsues; puis un vésicatoire.

Etes-vous complètement guéri?

Je ne sais pas. Je suis encore faible et j'ai quelquefois des maux d'estomac.

En avez-vous parlé au docteur?

Oui; il prétend que cela tient à une maladie de foie.

Mangez-vous avec appétit?

Oui, j'ai toujours faim.

Alors, vous serez bientôt guéri.

Je l'espère.

J'allais oublier de vous demander des nouvelles de monsieur votre père.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

It is very long since I saw you, my dear friend.

True, my dear fellow. How is your health?

Pretty good, as you see. And how are you?

So, so. I have been very ill.

You don't say so! What was the matter with you?

I had an inflammation on the chest.

How did it come?

It began with a cold.

Then I had a strong oppression and a violent fever.

Have you a good physician?

Yes, I think so. He has some reputation.

What did he prescribe?

Leeches at first; and then a blister.

Are you completely cured?

I do not know. I am weak still, and have sometimes a pain in my stomach.

Have you spoken to the doctor about it?

Yes: he says it proceeds from a liver complaint.

Do you eat with appetite?

Yes, I am always hungry.

Then, you will soon be cured.

I hope so.

I was going to forget to inquire about your father's health.

Il a un catarrhe.

Et vos trois petits garçons?

Le plus âgé a la rougeole; le second a la coqueluche, et le plus jeune, la petite vérole.

Mon Dieu! que de maux à la fois!

Oui. Nous avons du malheur.

Allons, prenez courage.

Quand viendrez-vous nous voir?

Plus tard. Quand vos enfants jouiront d'une meilleure santé.

He has a catarrh.

And your three little boys?

The eldest has the measles, the second has the whooping-cough, and the youngest the small-pox.

Dear me! how many evils at once!

Yes. We are unlucky.

Well, you must have courage.

When will you come and see us?

Later. When your children are in better health.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

TRENTE-SEPTIÈME, thirty-seventh, comes from *trente-sept*, thirty-seven.

J'allais prendre, I was going to take.

317. In French, as in English, to go is sometimes used as an auxiliary, being joined to another verb in the infinitive mood, and forming with it a particular future.

Ex. <i>Je vais prendre</i> ,	I am going to take.
<i>Tu vas prendre</i> ,	thou art going to take.
<i>Il va prendre</i> ,	he is going to take.
<i>Nous allons prendre</i> ,	we are going to take.
<i>Vous allez prendre</i> ,	you are going to take.
<i>Ils vont prendre</i> ,	they are going to take.
<i>J'allais prendre</i> , etc.,	I was going to take, etc.

318. A corresponding past tense is formed with *venir*, to come

Ex. <i>Je viens de prendre</i> ,	I have just taken.
<i>Tu viens de prendre</i> ,	thou hast just taken.
<i>Il vient de prendre</i> ,	he has just taken.
<i>Nous venons de prendre</i> ,	we have just taken.
<i>Vous venez de prendre</i> ,	you have just taken.
<i>Ils viennent de prendre</i> ,	they have just taken.
<i>Je venais de prendre</i> ,	I had just taken.

Il en pourrait résulter—Il pourrait en résulter,
there might result from it.

319. The pronoun, when a regimen, is placed before its verb ; but when an infinitive is governed by another verb, the pronoun referring to this infinitive may be placed before either verb. However, it is more conformable to general custom to place the pronoun regimen before the verb that governs it.

Après avoir fait, after making.

320. It has been said (57) that the French prepositions govern the infinitive mood : accordingly, “*after HAVING made*” must be rendered by “*après AVOIR fait.*” But, in English, the auxiliary *having* is sometimes suppressed, and the principal verb is governed directly by the preposition, thus : *After making.* This abbreviation would not be correct in French.

Auprès d'un bon feu, near a good fire.

321. **Auprès** is in turn an adverb and a preposition ; but as a preposition it has invariably to be followed by **DE**. The most important adverbs are :

<i>Ailleurs</i> ,	elsewhere.	<i>Exprès</i> ,	on purpose.
<i>Alors</i> ,	then.	<i>Lentement</i> ,	slowly.
<i>Autrefois</i> ,	formerly.	<i>Loin</i> ,	far.
<i>Autrement</i> ,	otherwise.	<i>Mal</i> ,	badly.
<i>D'abord</i> ,	at first.	<i>Mieux</i> ,	better.
<i>Debout</i> ,	standing up.	<i>Partout</i> ,	everywhere.
<i>Déjà</i> ,	already.	<i>Souvent</i> ,	often.
<i>Dehors</i> ,	outside.	<i>Surtout</i> ,	above all.
<i>En arrière</i> ,	backward.	<i>Tard</i> ,	late.
<i>En avant</i> ,	forward.	<i>Tôt</i> ,	soon.
<i>Enfin</i> ,	finally.	<i>Toujours</i> ,	always.
<i>En bas</i> ,	below.	<i>Tout à coup</i> ,	all at once.
<i>En haut</i> ,	above.	<i>Tout à fait</i> ,	quite.
<i>Ensemble</i> ,	together.	<i>Vîte</i> ,	fast.
<i>Ensuite</i> ,	afterwards.	<i>Volontiers</i> ,	willingly.

MOURANT is the present participle of *mourir*, to die, one of the most necessary irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Mourir**, TO DIE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Mourir, to die.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Mourant, dying.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Mort, died.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je meurs</i> ,	I die,	am dying,	or do die.
<i>Tu meurs</i> ,	thou diest,	art dying,	or dost die.
<i>Il meurt</i> ,	he dies,	is dying,	or does die.
<i>Nous mourons</i> ,	we die,	are dying,	or do die.
<i>Vous mourez</i> ,	you die,	are dying,	or do die.
<i>Ils meurent</i> ,	they die,	are dying,	or do die.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je mourais</i> ,	I died,	or was dying.
<i>Tu mourais</i> ,	thou diedst,	or wast dying.
<i>Il mourait</i> ,	he died,	or was dying.
<i>Nous mourions</i> ,	we died,	or were dying.
<i>Vous mouriez</i> ,	you died,	or were dying.
<i>Ils mouraient</i> ,	they died,	or were dying.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je mourus</i> ,	I died,	or did die.
<i>Tu mourus</i> ,	thou diedst,	or didst die.
<i>Il mourut</i> ,	he died,	or did die.
<i>Nous mourûmes</i> ,	we died,	or did die.
<i>Vous mourûtes</i> .	you died,	or did die.
<i>Ils moururent</i> ,	they died,	or did die.

FUTURE.

<i>Je mourrai</i> ,	I shall die,	or will die.
<i>Tu mourras</i> ,	thou shalt die,	or wilt die.
<i>Il mourra</i> ,	he shall die,	or will die.
<i>Nous mourrons</i> ,	we shall die,	or will die.
<i>Vous mourrez</i> ,	you shall die,	or will die.
<i>Ils mourront</i> ,	they shall die,	or will die.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je mourrais,</i>	I should die,	or would die.
<i>Tu mourrais,</i>	thou shouldst die,	or wouldst die.
<i>Il mourrait,</i>	he should die,	or would die.
<i>Nous mourrions,</i>	we should die,	or would die.
<i>Vous mourriez,</i>	you should die,	or would die.
<i>Ils mourraient,</i>	they should die,	or would die.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Meurs,</i>	die (thou).
<i>Mourons,</i>	let us die.
<i>Mourez,</i>	die (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je meure,</i>	that I may die.
<i>Que tu meures,</i>	that thou mayst die.
<i>Qu'il meure,</i>	that he may die.
<i>Que nous mourions,</i>	that we may die.
<i>Que vous mouriez,</i>	that you may die.
<i>Qu'ils meurent,</i>	that they may die.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je mourusse,</i>	that I might die.
<i>Que tu mourusses,</i>	that thou mightst die.
<i>Qu'il mourût,</i>	that he might die.
<i>Que nous mourussions,</i>	that we might die.
<i>Que vous mourussiez,</i>	that you might die.
<i>Qu'ils mourussent,</i>	that they might die.

322. This verb takes *être*, instead of *avoir*, in its compound tenses.—Ex. *Je suis mort*, I have died. *JE SUIS MORT* means also sometimes, *I am dead*, but then *mort* is used as an adjective.

Rhume, cold; *asthme*, asthma; *catarrhe*, catarrh; *ulcère*, ulcer; and *obstacle*, obstacle, are masculine by exception.

Maligne, malignant; and *tierce*, tertian, are two adjectives whose feminine is formed irregularly. The masculine of *maligne* is *malin*, and of *tierce*, *tiers*.

Résulter, to result; *supposer*, to suppose; *tromper*, to deceive;

and *rentrer*, to re-enter, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *aplanir*, to level, to smooth, to plane, is of the second.

Reconnaître, to recognize, is conjugated like *connaître*, to be acquainted with; and *atteindre*, like *craindre*, to fear.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. I have just spoken, 318. | 21. I have just finished, 318. |
| 2. He has just spoken. | 22. He has just finished. |
| 3. We have just spoken. | 23. We have just finished. |
| 4. You have just spoken. | 24. You have just finished. |
| 5. They have just spoken. | 25. They have just finished. |
| 6. I had just spoken. | 26. I had just finished. |
| 7. He had just spoken. | 27. He had just finished. |
| 8. We had just spoken. | 28. We had just finished. |
| 9. You had just spoken. | 29. You had just finished. |
| 10. They had just spoken. | 30. They had just finished. |
| 11. I am going to speak, 317. | 31. I am going to finish, 317. |
| 12. He is going to speak. | 32. He is going to finish. |
| 13. We are going to speak. | 33. We are going to finish. |
| 14. You are going to speak. | 34. You are going to finish. |
| 15. They are going to speak. | 35. They are going to finish. |
| 16. I was going to speak. | 36. I was going to finish. |
| 17. He was going to speak. | 37. He was going to finish. |
| 18. We were going to speak. | 38. We were going to finish. |
| 19. You were going to speak. | 39. You were going to finish. |
| 20. They were going to speak. | 40. They were going to finish. |
41. He is feared, but he is not loved.—42. He hears, but he does not answer.—43. I am sure that he understands you.—44. Come near me, 321.—45. Come nearer.—46. You are too near now.—47. I know something, but I will not tell it.—48. He played two hours after finishing his task, 320.—49. Let us go elsewhere.—50. It was then ten o'clock.—51. Do this now.—52. He studied well at first.—53. Is he far?—54. Let us learn together.—55. Do not work so slowly.—56. Is it late? It is early.—57. Will he come to-day?—58. He will be here to-morrow.

THIRTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

*LITERAL TRANSLATION.***Trente-huitième leçon.**

“A la première cuillerée de soupe que
 spoonful soup
 j'avale, on sonne. Monsieur le comte
 swallow rings count
 | un tel | , saisi d'un accès de goutte ou
 such a one seized fit gout
 d'une toux violente, me fait supplier de
 cough violent to entreat
 tout quitter pour apaiser ses souffrances.
 leave to appease sufferings
 Une autre fois, c'est madame la baronne
 Mylady (Mrs.) baroness
 une telle qui a une attaque de nerfs, ou
 attack (fit)
 mademoiselle sa sœur qui s' est donné
 miss sister to herself given
 une entorse, et dont la famille inquiète
 sprain uneasy
 demande que je | me rende | auprès
 asks repair (subj.)
 d'elle à la minute même.
 her minute even
 “Ou bien encore, au milieu de la nuit,
 midst

qui sait si l'on ne viendrait pas m'éveiller
 knows would come to wake

(moi qui dors d'un sommeil si profond !)
 sleep sleep profound

soit pour une opération, soit pour le
 either operation or

pansement d'une blessure ? Tous mes
 dressing wound

instants seraient pris, et les soins que je
 instants would be taken cares

prodiguerais à la santé d'autrui finiraient
 should lavish other people would finish-

par m'ôter la mienne. Décidément,
 to take away mine Decidedly

je ne me ferai pas médecin."
 will make

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"I have but just swallowed a spoonful of soup when the bell rings. Count such a one, seized with a fit of the gout, or a violent cough, sends to beseech me to leave every thing else, and come and relieve his sufferings. Another time, Baroness such a one is in a fit of hysterics, or her sister has sprained her ankle, and her anxious family beg I will come to her on that very minute.

"Or else, who knows but I may be waked up in the middle of the night (I who am such a sound sleeper !) either for an operation or to dress a wound ? Every moment of my time would be taken up, and the care I should bestow on the health of other people, would in the end ruin my own. Decidedly, I will not be a physician."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la trente-huitième.
A quel moment Alexis suppose-t-il qu'on sonne ?	A la première cuillerée de soupe qu'il avale.
Qu'arrive-t-il à la première cuillerée de soupe qu'il avale ?	On sonne.
Qui est-ce qui est saisi d'un accès de goutte ou d'une toux violente ?	Monsieur le comte un tel.
De quoi monsieur le comte un tel est-il saisi ?	D'un accès de goutte ou d'une toux violente.
Pourquoi fait-il supplier le docteur de tout quitter ?	Pour apaiser ses souffrances.
Qu'est-ce que le comte fait demander au docteur ?	De tout quitter pour apaiser ses souffrances.
Qu'arrive-t-il une autre fois à madame la baronne une telle ?	Elle a une attaque de nerfs.
Qui a une attaque de nerfs ?	Madame la baronne une telle.
Qui est-ce qui s'est donné une entorse ?	Mademoiselle sa sœur.
Qu'est-il arrivé à mademoiselle sa sœur ?	Elle s'est donné une entorse.
Qui demande que le docteur se rende auprès d'elle ?	Sa famille inquiète.
Que demande sa famille inquiète ?	Que le docteur se rende auprès d'elle, à la minute même.
Quand viendrait-on peut-être éveiller le docteur ?	Au milieu de la nuit.
Que pourrait-il arriver au milieu de la nuit ?	Qu'on viendrait l'éveiller.
Pourquoi viendrait-on l'éveiller ?	Pour une opération ou pour le pansement d'une blessure.
Comment Alexis dort-il ?	Il dort d'un sommeil profond— or, il dort profondément.
Croit-il qu'il pourrait disposer de quelques instants, s'il était docteur ?	Non ; il dit que tous ses instants seraient pris.
Qu'est-ce qui finirait par lui ôter la santé ?	Les soins qu'il prodiguerait à celle d'autrui.

Quel serait le résultat des soins qu'il prodiguerait à la santé d'autrui?

Quelle décision prend-il?

Ces soins finiraient par lui ôter la sienne.

Il prend la décision de ne pas se faire médecin—*or*, Il dit: "Décidément, je ne me ferai pas médecin."

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Monsieur le comte est-il chez lui?

Oui, monsieur; mais il dort encore.

Je croyais qu'il s'éveillait tous les jours de bonne heure.

Oui, monsieur; mais il est rentré fort tard hier au soir.

Et puis il a travaillé jusqu'à deux heures du matin.

Savez-vous s'il a reçu la visite de son avocat?

Je ne sais pas, monsieur. Mais son avoué est venu hier.

Madame la comtesse est-elle visible?

Non, monsieur. Elle a sa migraine.

Et madame la baronne, sa sœur?

Elle est partie ce matin avec ses enfants.

Il n'y a donc personne de la famille à qui je puisse parler?

Le père de monsieur le comte est chez lui; mais il est très-souffrant.

Qu'a-t-il donc?

Il a la goutte.

Allez lui demander s'il peut me recevoir.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

Is the count at home?

Yes, sir; but he is still asleep.

I thought he used to awake early.

Yes, sir; but he returned home very late last night.

And then he wrote till two o'clock in the morning.

Do you know whether he has seen his counsel?

I don't know, sir. But his attorney called yesterday.

Is the countess visible?

No, sir. She has a sick headache.

And the baroness, her sister?

She started this morning with her children.

So, there is no one of the family that I can speak to?

The count's father is at home; but he is very poorly.

What is the matter with him?

He has the gout.

Go and ask him whether he can receive me.

A l'instant, monsieur.	Directly, sir.
Eh bien, que vous a-t-il dit?	Well, what does he say?
Il dit qu'il aura le plaisir de recevoir monsieur.	He says he shall be happy to see you.
Bien.	Well.
Si monsieur veut bien me suivre, je lui montrerai le chemin.	If you will be pleased to follow me, I will show you the way.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

TRENTE-HUITIÈME, thirty-eighth, comes from *trente-huit*, thirty-eight.

*Monsieur le comte—Madame la baronne—
Mademoiselle sa sœur.*

323. Titles are preceded by *Monsieur*, *Madame*, or *Mademoiselle*, and the article, in ceremonious language. The possessive adjective, before names of kindred, is preceded by the same epithets.

Saisi d'un accès de goutte, seized with a fit of the gout.

We have already seen that **de** means OF or FROM, and that TO is often translated by DE (209). This preposition has also frequently to be rendered by WITH, as in the above example.

324. The most necessary prepositions are :

<i>A</i> ,	to, at.	<i>Entre</i> ,	between.
<i>Après</i> ,	after.	<i>Excepté</i> ,	except.
<i>Avant</i> ,	before.	<i>Par</i> ,	by.
<i>Avec</i> ,	with.	<i>Parmi</i> ,	among.
<i>Chez</i> ,	at or in the house of.	<i>Pendant</i> ,	during.
<i>Contre</i> ,	against.	<i>Pour</i> ,	for.
<i>Dans</i> ,	in, into, within.	<i>Sans</i> ,	without.
<i>De</i> ,	of or from.	<i>Selon</i> ,	according to.
<i>Depuis</i> ,	since.	<i>Sous</i> ,	under.
<i>Derrière</i> ,	behind.	<i>Sur</i> ,	upon.
<i>Devant</i> ,	before.	<i>Vers</i> ,	towards.
<i>En</i> ,	in.	<i>Vis-à-vis</i> ,	opposite.

Il me fait supplier.

325. Various examples have been seen already of *faire* followed by an infinitive. One of the most frequent meanings of such combinations is, *To cause something to be done*, *To have*,

or *To get it done*, as in the above example, *Il me fait supplier*; that is, He causes me to be entreated.

Il me fait supplier de tout quitter.

326. When **tout**, all, every thing, any thing, is a direct regimen, it generally precedes the verb in the infinitive mood; and in the compound tenses it is placed between the auxiliary and the participle; as, *J'ai tout quitté*, I have left all. But it follows the verb in the simple tenses; as, *Je quitte tout*, I leave all. The same observations are applicable to **rien**.

327. MADAME is formed of *ma*, my, and *dame*, lady. It corresponds to *Mrs.* and to *Lady*, before a proper name; and to *Madame*, or *My lady*, in addressing a woman. The plural is MESDAMES.

328. Though the possessive adjective is inseparable in *monsieur* and *messieurs*, it is not so in *madame* and *mesdames*; accordingly, *a lady*, *some ladies*, should be rendered by *une dame*, *des dames*, and not by *une madame*, *des mesdames*; though we say, *un monsieur*, *des messieurs*.

BARONNE is the feminine of *baron*, a baron.

329. Substantives denoting titles, qualities, or professions, which may belong to either sex, often produce feminine derivatives, by means of the same terminations that adjectives take to form their feminine; as, *Baron*, *baronne*; *marquis*, *marquise*; *musicien*, *musicienne*, etc.

330. MADEMOISELLE is formed of the possessive adjective *ma*, and *demoiselle*, young lady. It corresponds to *Miss*, before a proper name; and to *Miss* or *Madam*, in addressing a girl or an unmarried woman. The plural is MESDEMOISELLES.

331. Without the possessive adjective, DEMOISELLE signifies *girl*, *young lady* (unmarried), *single woman*, *spinster*.

La famille demande.

This might be translated by *The family asks*, or by *The family ask*, according to the rule of English grammar, that a noun of multitude may have a verb or pronoun agreeing with it, either of the singular or plural number, according to its sense of unity or plurality; but in French it would not be correct to say, *La famille demandent*.

332. A **noun of multitude** in the singular number requires that the verb or pronoun should agree with it in the singular number, unless it be employed as a partitive collective noun.

A la minute même, at the **VERY** minute.

333. The word **VERY**, when it precedes an adjective or an adverb, is rendered by *très*, *bien*, or *fort*, as has been seen in the following examples: *Très-agréable*, *bien fous*, *fort peu*; but when it precedes a substantive, it is generally rendered by **MÊME**, placed after the substantive.

DORS is the first person singular of the indicative mood, present tense, of *dormir*, to sleep, one of the most important irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Dormir**, TO SLEEP.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Dormir, to sleep.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Dormant, sleeping.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Dormi, slept.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je dors,</i>	I sleep,	am sleeping, or do sleep.
<i>Tu dors,</i>	thou sleepest,	art sleeping, or dost sleep.
<i>Il dort,</i>	he sleeps,	is sleeping, or does sleep.
<i>Nous dormons,</i>	we sleep,	are sleeping, or do sleep.
<i>Vous dormez,</i>	you sleep,	are sleeping, or do sleep.
<i>Ils dorment,</i>	they sleep,	are sleeping, or do sleep.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je dormais,</i>	I slept,	or was sleeping.
<i>Tu dormais,</i>	thou sleptst,	or wast sleeping.
<i>Il dormait,</i>	he slept,	or was sleeping.
<i>Nous dormions,</i>	we slept,	or were sleeping.
<i>Vous dormiez,</i>	you slept,	or were sleeping.
<i>Ils dormaient,</i>	they slept,	or were sleeping.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je dormis,</i>	I slept,	or did sleep.
<i>Tu dormis,</i>	thou sleptst,	or didst sleep.
<i>Il dormit,</i>	he slept,	or did sleep.
<i>Nous dormîmes,</i>	we slept,	or did sleep.
<i>Vous dormîtes,</i>	you slept,	or did sleep.
<i>Ils dormirent,</i>	they slept,	or did sleep.

FUTURE.

<i>Je dormirai,</i>	I shall sleep,	or will sleep.
<i>Tu dormiras,</i>	thou shalt sleep,	or wilt sleep.
<i>Il dormira,</i>	he shall sleep,	or will sleep.
<i>Nous dormirons,</i>	we shall sleep,	or will sleep.
<i>Vous dormirez,</i>	you shall sleep,	or will sleep.
<i>Ils dormiront,</i>	they shall sleep,	or will sleep.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je dormirais,</i>	I should sleep,	or would sleep.
<i>Tu dormirais,</i>	thou shouldst sleep,	or wouldst sleep.
<i>Il dormirait,</i>	he should sleep,	or would sleep.
<i>Nous dormirions,</i>	we should sleep,	or would sleep.
<i>Vous dormiriez,</i>	you should sleep,	or would sleep.
<i>Ils dormiraient,</i>	they should sleep,	or would sleep.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Dors,</i>	sleep (thou).
<i>Dormons,</i>	let us sleep.
<i>Dormez,</i>	sleep (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je dorme,</i>	that I may sleep.
<i>Que tu dormes,</i>	that thou mayst sleep.
<i>Qu'il dorme,</i>	that he may sleep.
<i>Que nous dormions,</i>	that we may sleep.
<i>Que vous dormiez,</i>	that you may sleep.
<i>Qu'ils dorment,</i>	that they may sleep.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je dormisse,</i>	that I might sleep.
<i>Que tu dormisses,</i>	that thou mightst sleep.
<i>Qu'il dormît,</i>	that he might sleep.
<i>Que nous dormissions,</i>	that we might sleep.
<i>Que vous dormissiez,</i>	that you might sleep.
<i>Qu'ils dormissent,</i>	that they might sleep.

Toux, cough, is feminine by exception.

Avaler, to swallow; *sonner*, to ring; *supplier*, to entreat; *quitter*, to quit; *apaiser*, to appease; *donner*, to give; *demander*, to ask; *éveiller*, to wake; *prodiguer*, to lavish; and *ôter*, to take, to take off, to take away, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *saisir*, to seize, is of the second.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. After me, 324. | 9. Between us, 324. |
| 2. Before him. | 10. For you. |
| 3. With her. | 11. Without them. |
| 4. Do I sleep? | 12. I take off. |
| 5. Was I sleeping? | 13. I shall take off. |
| 6. Did I sleep? | 14. I should take off. |
| 7. Shall I sleep? | 15. Take off. |
| 8. Should I sleep? | 16. I have taken off. |

17. Are you Mrs. Delatour? 327.—18. No, madam; I am her sister, 323.—19. Ladies, if you will follow me, I will show you the way, 327.—20. Is your father at home, Miss? 323, 330.—21. Where is Miss Charlotte? 330.—22. She is in the garden with another young lady, 331.—23. They would sleep till tomorrow morning.—24. Can I see your father?—25. Shall I have the pleasure of seeing your sister? 323.—26. He knows every thing.—27. They have eaten all.—28. We have seen every thing.—29. They have learned nothing.—30. He knows nothing.—31. The very person, 333.—32. The very instant, 333.—33. The very name, 333.—34. The very man, 333.

THIRTY-NINTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Trente-neuvième leçon.

“ Si je m’ engageais ? On vit bien dans
 engaged (enlisted) lives
une bonne garnison ; et l’on n’a pas be-
 garrison
soin d’être savant pour se faire soldat.
 learned soldier
Toutefois, sachant déjà lire, écrire et
 Nevertheless knowing already to read
compter, j’aurais plus de chances d’avan-
 calculate chances pro-
cement que bien d’autres. Je pourrais
 motion many
parvenir au grade de général. Cela se
 attain grade general
voit en France, où quiconque sert la
 sees France whoever serves
patrie porte dans sa giberne le bâton
 country bears cartridge-box stick (truncheon)
de maréchal et la croix d’honneur. C’est
 field-marshal cross
dommage qu’il faille se battre. Cette
 must (subj.) to fight
obligation ne me plairait pas ; car je
 obligation would please
suis d’humeur bénigne et pacifique.
 humor benign pacific

“ Je n'aimerais pas non plus les
neither
corvées, ni les marches forcées, ni
drudgeries (extra-duty) marches forced
tous les désagréments qui les accompa-
unpleasantness accom-
gnent. Tantôt vous grelottez par un froid
pany Sometimes shiver cold
de dix degrés au-dessous de zéro ; tantôt,
ten degrees below zero
écrasé sous le poids de votre équipement,
crushed accoutrement
vous vous traînez, le sac sur le dos et le
drag knapsack back
fusil sur l'épaule, par une chaleur étouf-
musket shoulder heat suffo-
fante ; ou bien vous enfoncez jusqu'à
cating sink
mi-jambe dans des marais fangeux.”
mid-leg marshes miry

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

“Supposing I was to enlist? A garrison life is very agreeable, and it is not necessary to be learned to become a soldier. However, as I know how to read and write and cast accounts, I should have more chances of promotion than many others. I might rise to the rank of a general. Such things are seen in France, where every man who serves his country has the truncheon of a field-marshal and the cross of the legion of honor within his grasp. Only it is a pity one is obliged to fight. I should not like this obligation, for I am of a mild and peaceful disposition.

“Neither should I like extra-duty, nor forced marches, nor all the disagreeable accompaniments which attend them. Some-

times shivering in the cold ten degrees below the freezing-point; sometimes, crushed with the weight of your accoutrements, you drag yourself along, with your knapsack on your back and your musket on your shoulder, in a suffocating heat, or else sunk up to the middle of your legs in miry marshes."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la trente-neuvième.
Que dit Alexis au commencement de cette leçon ?	" Si je m'engageais ? "
Selon lui, comment vit-on dans une bonne garnison	On vit bien.
Où vit-on bien ?	Dans une bonne garnison.
Pour quoi n'a-t-on pas besoin d'être savant ?	Pour se faire soldat.
De quoi n'a-t-on pas besoin pour se faire soldat ?	On n'a pas besoin d'être savant.
Que sait-il déjà, toutefois ?	Il sait lire, écrire et compter.
Quelles chances aurait-il ?	Il aurait plus de chances d'avancement que bien d'autres.
Pourquoi aurait-il plus de chances d'avancement que bien d'autres ?	Parce qu'il sait lire, écrire et compter.
A quel grade pourrait-il parvenir ?	Au grade de général.
Où cela se voit-il ?	En France.
Que porte dans sa giberne qui-conque sert la patrie ?	Le bâton de maréchal et la croix d'honneur.
Quelle est l'obligation qui ne plairait pas à Alexis ?	L'obligation de se battre.
Pourquoi cette obligation ne lui plairait-elle pas ?	Parce qu'il est d'humeur bénigne et pacifique.
Qu'est-ce qu'il n'aimerait pas non plus ?	Les corvées, ni les marches forcées, ni tous les désagréments qui les accompagnent.
Que fait un soldat par un froid de dix degrés ?	Il grelotte.

Par quel froid grelotte-t-il quelquefois ?	Par un froid de dix degrés au-dessous de zéro.
Sous quel poids se trouve-t-il quelquefois écrasé ?	Sous le poids de son équipement.
Qu'a-t-il sur le dos ?	Le sac— <i>or</i> , Son sac.
Qu'a-t-il sur l'épaule ?	Le fusil— <i>or</i> , Son fusil.
Comment porte-t-il le sac ?	Sur le dos.
Comment porte-t-il le fusil ?	Sur l'épaule.
Que fait-il quelquefois par une chaleur étouffante ?	Il se traîne, le sac sur le dos et le fusil sur l'épaule.
Par quelle température se traîne-t-il ainsi ?	Par une chaleur étouffante.
Jusqu'où enfonce-t-il dans des marais fangeux ?	Jusqu'à mi-jambe.
Dans quoi enfonce-t-il jusqu'à mi-jambe ?	Dans des marais fangeux.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Il fait bien beau aujourd'hui.
 Vous trouvez ? Pour moi, la chaleur me semble étouffante.
 Il n'y a pourtant que vingt-deux degrés.
 Je ne comprends rien à votre thermomètre. Je ne connais que celui de Fahrenheit.
 Le nôtre me paraît plus simple.
 C'est peut-être parce que vous y êtes accoutumé.
 C'est bien possible.
 Nous autres, par vingt-deux degrés, nous entendrions une température très-froide.
 Et nous aussi, si nous disions vingt-deux degrés au-dessous de zéro.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

It is very fine weather to-day.
 Do you think so? I find the heat sultry.
 We have however but twenty-two degrees.
 I do not understand your thermometer. I know but Fahrenheit's.
 Ours seems to me to be more simple.
 It is perhaps because you are used to it.
 May be.
 For us, twenty-two degrees would be a very cold temperature.
 And for us too, if we said twenty-two degrees below zero.

Quelle température entendez-vous donc par zéro ?

Celle de la congélation de l'eau.

Bien.

L'espace entre ce point et celui de l'ébullition de l'eau est gradué en cent divisions ou parties égales.

Je comprends maintenant pourquoi vous appelez votre thermomètre *centigrade*. Mais n'en avez-vous pas encore un autre ?

Oui ; celui de Réaumur, dans lequel le même espace est gradué en quatre-vingts divisions, au lieu de cent.

Duquel se sert-on le plus ?

Du thermomètre centigrade. On n'emploie guère l'autre aujourd'hui.

Quelle est la plus haute température que vous ayez à Paris ?

Dans les grandes chaleurs, nous avons quelquefois plus de trente degrés.

A combien de degrés de Fahrenheit cela équivaut-il ?

A environ quatre-vingt-dix.

Ce doit être insupportable.

Je vois que vous n'aimez pas la chaleur.

Non, j'y suis plus sensible qu'au froid.

What temperature, then, do you mean by zero ?

Freezing-point.

I understand.

The space between that and the degree at which water boils is graduated into a hundred divisions or equal parts.

Now I understand why you give the name of *centigrade* to your thermometer. But have you not another ?

Yes ; Reaumur's, in which the same space is graduated into eighty divisions, instead of a hundred.

Which is most commonly used ?

The centigrade thermometer. The other is scarcely employed now.

What is the highest temperature that you have in Paris ?

In the hottest days, we have sometimes more than thirty degrees.

How many degrees of Fahrenheit would that make ?

About ninety.

It must be intolerable.

I see you do not like the heat.

No, I don't ; it affects me more than cold.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

TRENTE-NEUVIÈME, thirty-ninth, comes from *trente-neuf*, thirty-nine.

VIT is the third person singular, of the indicative mood, present tense, of *vivre*, to live, one of the most important irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Vivre**, TO LIVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Vivre, to live.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Vivant, living.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Vécu, lived.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je vis,</i>	I live,	am living, or do live.
<i>Tu vis,</i>	thou livest,	art living, or dost live.
<i>Il vit,</i>	he lives,	is living, or does live.
<i>Nous vivons,</i>	we live,	are living, or do live.
<i>Vous vivez,</i>	you live,	are living, or do live.
<i>Ils vivent,</i>	they live,	are living, or do live.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je vivais,</i>	I lived,	or was living.
<i>Tu vivais,</i>	thou livedst,	or wast living.
<i>Il vivait,</i>	he lived,	or was living.
<i>Nous vivions,</i>	we lived,	or were living.
<i>Vous viviez,</i>	you lived,	or were living.
<i>Ils vivaient,</i>	they lived,	or were living.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je vécus,</i>	I lived,	or did live.
<i>Tu vécus,</i>	thou livedst,	or didst live.
<i>Il vécut,</i>	he lived,	or did live.
<i>Nous vécûmes,</i>	we lived,	or did live.
<i>Vous vécûtes,</i>	you lived,	or did live.
<i>Ils vécurent,</i>	they lived,	or did live.

FUTURE.

<i>Je vivrai,</i>	I shall live,	or will live.
<i>Tu vivras,</i>	thou shalt live,	or wilt live.
<i>Il vivra,</i>	he shall live,	or will live.
<i>Nous vivrons,</i>	we shall live,	or will live.
<i>Vous vivrez,</i>	you shall live,	or will live.
<i>Ils vivront,</i>	they shall live,	or will live.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je vivrais,</i>	I should live,	or would live.
<i>Tu vivrais,</i>	thou shouldst live,	or wouldst live.
<i>Il vivrait,</i>	he should live.	or would live.
<i>Nous vivrions,</i>	we should live,	or would live.
<i>Vous vivriez,</i>	you should live,	or would live.
<i>Ils vivraient,</i>	they should live,	or would live.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Vis,</i>	live (thou).
<i>Vivons,</i>	let us live.
<i>Vivez,</i>	live (you).

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je vive,</i>	that I may live.
<i>Que tu vives,</i>	that thou mayst live.
<i>Qu'il vive,</i>	that he may live.
<i>Que nous vivions,</i>	that we may live.
<i>Que vous viviez,</i>	that you may live.
<i>Qu'ils vivent,</i>	that they may live.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je récusse,</i>	that I might live.
<i>Que tu récusses,</i>	that thou mightst live.
<i>Qu'il recût,</i>	that he might live.
<i>Que nous récuissions,</i>	that we might live.
<i>Que vous récuissiez,</i>	that you might live.
<i>Qu'ils recussent,</i>	that they might live.

Cela se voit, that is seen.

334. The passive form is less frequently used in French than in English; and verbs, which should be passive according to the sense, often take the reflective or pronominal form in French, as in the above example. This idiomatic construction will not surprise an English student, if he consider that in his own language an equivalent impropriety exists, when we say, *The door opens*, for, *The door is opened*; *The books never sold*, for, *The books were never sold*. These phrases would be rendered by, *La porte s'ouvre*; *Les livres ne se vendirent jamais*.

Il porte dans sa giberne le bâton de maréchal,
he carries in his cartridge-box the truncheon of a field-marshal.

335. When a verb has two substantives for regimens, the one direct and the other indirect, it is usually followed by both; and if they are of the same length, the direct one is placed first—if not, the shorter precedes the longer.

Je n'aimerais pas non plus, neither would I like.

336. **Non plus** is opposed to *aussi*, also, likewise; being used in the negative, when *aussi* is employed in the corresponding affirmative sentences; as, *Cette obligation me plairait*; *j'aimerais AUSSI les corvées*, etc.

337. It is often difficult to translate properly the word MORE into French. Used in turn to indicate quantity and time, it has to be rendered by **plus**, whenever it can be replaced by *a greater quantity* or *a greater number*; and by **encore**, when *still* or *yet* would be more appropriate, taking care to transpose all the words of the sentence in accordance with this substitution.

Ex. More bread than meat, *plus de pain que de viande*—
literally, a greater quantity of bread than of meat.

Have you any more bread? *Avez-vous encore du pain?*—
literally, Have you still some bread?

But NO MORE, NOT MORE, NOT ANY MORE, are always translated by **plus**, with *ne* put before the verb.

Ex. I have no more bread, *Je n'ai plus de pain*.

338. We have now seen all the words which require **ne** put before the verb. The most important are:

Pas,	when used in the sense of	NO, OR NOT.
Personne,	“ “ “	NOBODY.
Rien,	“ “ “	NOTHING.
Plus,	“ NO MORE, NOT MORE, OR NOT ANY MORE.	
Que,	“ “ “	BUT, ONLY.
Nul,	“ “ “	NO.
Ni,	“ “ “	NEITHER.

339.—§ 1. **TANTÔT**, formed of *tant* and *tôt*, generally denotes an indefinite time, either past or future, and corresponds to, *in the course of the day, by and by, soon, sometimes, and now.*

§ 2. When **tôt** is joined to the adverbs *aussi, bien, si*, it forms a single word with them, thus: *Aussitôt*, as soon, immediately; *bientôt*, soon; *sitôt*, so soon.

§ 3. It forms a similar combination with *tant* and *plus*, thus: *Tantôt, plutôt.* But *plutôt* is only employed in the sense of *rather*, denoting preference, and must not be confounded with *plus tôt*, sooner, earlier.

340. **Dessous**, already seen in the eleventh lesson, is either an adverb signifying *under* or *below*, or a substantive signifying *under part*. It is seldom used as a preposition. *Au-dessous*, under, beneath, below, is always an adverb, unless it be followed by *de*, in which case it becomes a preposition, and requires a regimen. The same observations are applicable to **dessus**, *au-dessus*, and *au-dessus de*, seen in the twenty-sixth lesson.

Le sac sur le dos, *Le fusil sur l'épaule,*
the knapsack on the back. the gun on the shoulder.

341. The preposition **AVEC**, with, is here understood, and its ellipsis is common to all similar phrases.

342. **Mi** is an inseparable syllable, denoting the division of a thing into two equal parts. It is joined to the principal word by a hyphen, except in *midi*, mid-day, and *minuit*, midnight.

343. The most necessary conjunctions are :

<i>Afin que,</i>	in order that.	<i>Comme,</i>	as, like, how.
<i>Ainsi que,</i>	as well as.	<i>Donc,</i>	then.
<i>A moins que,</i>	unless.	<i>Et,</i>	and.
<i>Car,</i>	for, because.	<i>Lorsque,</i>	when.

<i>Mais,</i>	but.	<i>Quand,</i>	when.
<i>Ni,</i>	neither, nor.	<i>Que,</i>	that.
<i>Or,</i>	now.	<i>Quoique,</i>	although.
<i>Ou,</i>	or.	<i>Si,</i>	if, whether.
<i>Pourvu que,</i>	provided.	<i>Si non,</i>	if not.
<i>Parce que,</i>	because.	<i>Tandis que,</i>	while.

Grade, grade, is masculine; *garnison*, garrison; and *croix*, cross, are feminine, by exception.

Engager, to engage; *compter*, to count, to rely; *porter*, to carry; *aimer*, to like, to love; *accompagner*, to accompany; *grelotter*, to shiver; *écraser*, to crush; *traîner*, to drag; and *enfoncer*, to sink, are regular verbs of the first conjugation.

Parvenir, to attain, is conjugated like *venir*, to come.

Lire, to read, and *plaire*, to please, are irregular verbs, which will be explained later.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. That is said, 334. | 7. I do not say, 338. |
| 2. That is eaten. | 8. Nobody eats. |
| 3. That is sold. | 9. We sell nothing. |
| 4. That is lost. | 10. Lose no more. |
| 5. That is understood. | 11. They understand but little. |
| 6. That is drunk. | 12. Neither you nor I. |

13. I hope you will come soon.—14. I will come as soon as I am free.—15. The bread was not on the table.—16. His grief cannot be appeased.—17. You will read a very extraordinary story in this book.—18. He always sleeps with his mouth open.—19. He is waiting, with his elbows on the table.—20. Have you any more wine? 337.—21. I have some more, 337.—22. I have no more, 337.—23. Have you any more paper? 337.—24. I have some more, 337.—25. I have no more, 337.—26. Have you any more fish? 337.—27. I have some more, 337.—28. I have no more, 337.—29. When did you come? 343.—30. While you were writing, 343.—31. But I did not see you enter.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Fortieth

“Il quitta le pays il y a six ans, pour
left country
courir les aventures. Il s’enrôla à Cons-
to run adventures enlisted Con-

stantine, et il y avait dix-huit mois qu'il
 stantine
était dans l'armée, chéri de ses camarades
 army beloved
et estimé de ses chefs, quand il eut la
 esteemed chiefs
cuisse traversée par une balle et le crâne
 thigh traversed ball (bullet) skull
fendu d'un coup de sabre. Je tiens ces
 cleft stroke sabre hold
détails de quelqu'un de véridique et de
 somebody veracious
bien informé."
 informed

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"In faith, I confess that, without being a coward, I have not the warlike spirit of my cousin John Peter, who served in the war of Africa, and was killed in a battle fought against a tribe of Arabs. Poor John Peter! He has been dead these two years. Although he could have led such a peaceable life among his friends and relations, he preferred trying his luck elsewhere.

"He left the country six years ago to seek for adventures. He enlisted at Constantine, and had been eighteen months in the army, beloved by his comrades and esteemed by his chiefs, when he had his thigh shot through with a bullet and his skull laid open with the cut of a sabre. I received these particulars from a credible person well acquainted with the facts."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la quarantième.
Comment s'appelait le cousin d'Alexis?	Il s'appelait Jean-Pierre.
Qui s'appelait Jean-Pierre?	Le cousin d'Alexis.
Quel esprit avait-il?	Un esprit belliqueux.
Qu'est-ce qu'Alexis avoue?	Il avoue que, sans être poltron, il n'a pas l'esprit belliqueux de son cousin Jean-Pierre.
Où son cousin Jean-Pierre servait-il?	Il servait dans la guerre d'Afrique.
Où fut-il tué?	Dans une bataille.
A qui cette bataille fut-elle livrée?	A une tribu d'Arabes.
Au moment où Alexis parle, combien y a-t-il que son cousin est mort?	Il y a deux ans.
Où aurait-il pu mener une existence paisible?	Au milieu des siens.
Qu'aurait-il pu mener au milieu des siens?	Une existence paisible.
Qu'aima-t-il mieux faire?	Il aimait mieux chercher fortune ailleurs.
Au moment où Alexis parle, combien y a-t-il que son cousin quitta le pays?	Il y a six ans.
Que fit-il il y a six ans?	Il quitta le pays.
Pourquoi quitta-t-il le pays?	Pour courir les aventures.
Où s'enrôla-t-il?	A Constantine.
Que fit-il à Constantine?	Il s'enrôla.
Combien y avait-il qu'il était dans l'armée, quand il fut tué?	Il y avait dix-huit mois.
De qui était-il chéri?	De ses camarades.
De qui était-il estimé?	De ses chefs.
De quelle manière périt-il?	Il eut la cuisse traversée par une balle et le crâne fendu d'un coup de sabre.
De qui Alexis tient-il ces détails?	De quelqu'un de véridique et de bien informé.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.

Est-il vrai que votre cousin se soit engagé ?

Oui, il s'est fait soldat.

Y a-t-il longtemps ?

Il y a trois ans.

Où est-il maintenant ?

Il est en Afrique.

Comment ses parents ont-ils pu le laisser partir ?

Il a quitté la maison paternelle sans rien dire à personne.

Que ces jeunes gens sont étourdis !

Il n'est pas si jeune que vous le croyez.

Quel âge a-t-il donc ?

Il a vingt-huit ans.

Je croyais qu'il n'avait pas vingt ans.

Vous vous trompiez.

A-t-il du goût pour l'état militaire ?

Oui, beaucoup. Il est d'un caractère très-belliqueux.

S'est-il déjà battu depuis qu'il est en Afrique ?

Oh ! bien des fois.

Vraiment ?

Il a commencé par se battre avec plusieurs de ses camarades.

Bah !

Ensuite il a tué beaucoup d'Arabes.

Quelle belle chose que la guerre !

Vous trouvez ?

Ma foi, oui. J'aime la gloire.

TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.

Is it true that your cousin has enlisted ?

Yes, he has turned soldier.

Is it a long time since ?

Three years.

Where is he now ?

He is in Africa.

How could his parents let him depart ?

He left his paternal roof without saying a word to anybody.

How thoughtless those young people are !

He is not so young as you believe.

How old is he, then ?

He is twenty-eight years old.

I thought he was not twenty.

You were mistaken.

Has he any taste for a military life ?

Yes, indeed. He is of a very warlike disposition.

Has he fought yet, since he has been in Africa ?

Oh ! many times.

Indeed ?

First of all, he fought with several of his comrades.

You don't say so !

Then, he has killed many Arabs.

What a fine thing war is !

Do you think so ?

Faith, I do. I am fond of glory.

C'est donc bien glorieux de tuer beaucoup d'hommes?	Is it so very glorious to slay a great many men?
Il faut bien le croire, car c'est l'opinion de tout le monde.	We must believe so; for it is the opinion of everybody.
Si vous étiez dans une maison de fous, vous vous croiriez donc obligé de devenir fou vous-même?	If you were in a mad-house, then you would think yourself obliged to go mad also?
Allez, vous êtes un original.	Well, really, you are an eccentric fellow.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

QUARANTIÈME, fortieth, comes from *quarante*, forty.

This completes the study of the numeral adjectives in French.

344. The cardinal numbers are :

1. Un, une.	19. Dix-neuf.
2. Deux.	20. Vingt.
3. Trois.	21. Vingt-et-un.
4. Quatre.	22. Vingt-deux.
5. Cinq.	30. Trente.
6. Six.	31. Trente-et-un.
7. Sept.	32. Trente-deux.
8. Huit.	40. Quarante.
9. Neuf.	41. Quarante-et-un.
10. Dix.	42. Quarante-deux.
11. Onze.	50. Cinquante.
12. Douze.	51. Cinquante-et-un.
13. Treize.	52. Cinquante-deux.
14. Quatorze.	60. Soixante.
15. Quinze.	61. Soixante-et-un.
16. Seize.	62. Soixante-deux.
17. Dix-sept.	70. Soixante-dix.
18. Dix-huit.	71. Soixante-et-onze.

72. Soixante-douze.	82. Quatre-vingt-deux.
73. Soixante-treize.	90. Quatre-vingt-dix.
74. Soixante-quatorze.	91. Quatre-vingt-onze.
75. Soixante-quinze.	92. Quatre-vingt-douze.
76. Soixante-seize.	100. Cent.
77. Soixante-dix-sept.	101. Cent-un.
78. Soixante-dix-huit.	102. Cent-deux.
79. Soixante-dix-neuf.	200. Deux-cents.
80. Quatre-vingts.	1000. Mille.
81. Quatre-vingt-un.	1,000,000. Un million.

345. The ordinal numbers are formed from the cardinal by adding the termination *ième*.

1st. Premier.	16th. Seizième.
2d. Second, or deuxième.	17th. Dix-septième.
3d. Troisième.	18th. Dix-huitième.
4th. Quatrième.	19th. Dix-neuvième.
5th. Cinquième.	20th. Vingtième.
6th. Sixième.	21st. Vingt-et-unième.
7th. Septième.	22d. Vingt-deuxième.
8th. Huitième.	30th. Trentième.
9th. Neuvième.	40th. Quarantième.
10th. Dixième.	50th. Cinquantième.
11th. Onzième.	60th. Soixantième.
12th. Douzième.	70th. Soixante-dixième.
13th. Treizième.	80th. Quatre-vingtième.
14th. Quatorzième.	90th. Quatre-vingt-dixième.
15th. Quinzième.	100th. Centième, etc.

346. The cardinal numbers are used instead of the ordinal in speaking of the days of the months, except the first, and of sovereigns and princes.

Ex. <i>Le quatre Juillet,</i>	The fourth of July.
<i>Le premier Janvier,</i>	January the first.
<i>Henri quatre,</i>	Henry the fourth.
<i>Napoléon trois,</i>	Napoleon the third.

MA FOI is a familiar expression for "By my faith," "Upon my faith," "In faith." It is sometimes used as an interjection.

347. The principal interjections are :

<i>Ah!</i>	ah!	<i>Hé bien!</i>	now then!
<i>Aie !</i>	eigh!	<i>Hélas!</i>	alas!
<i>Chut!</i>	silence! hush!	<i>Holà!</i>	holla!
<i>Fi!</i>	fy!	<i>Oh!</i>	ho!
<i>Ha!</i>	ha!	<i>Paix!</i>	silence!

SERVIT is the third per. sing. of the past tense definite of *servir*, to serve, one of the most important irregular verbs in French.

CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Servir**, TO SERVE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Servir, to serve.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Servant, serving.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Servi, served.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Je sers,</i>	I serve,	am serving, or do serve.
<i>Tu sers,</i>	thou servest,	art serving, or dost serve.
<i>Il sert,</i>	he serves,	is serving, or does serve.
<i>Nous servons,</i>	we serve,	are serving, or do serve.
<i>Vous servez,</i>	you serve,	are serving, or do serve.
<i>Ils servent,</i>	they serve,	are serving, or do serve.

IMPERFECT.

<i>Je servais,</i>	I served,	or was serving.
<i>Tu servais,</i>	thou servedst,	or wast serving.
<i>Il servait,</i>	he served,	or was serving.
<i>Nous servions,</i>	we served,	or were serving.
<i>Vous serviez,</i>	you served,	or were serving.
<i>Ils servaient,</i>	they served,	or were serving.

PAST TENSE DEFINITE.

<i>Je servis,</i>	I served,	or did serve.
<i>Tu servis,</i>	thou servedst,	or didst serve.
<i>Il servit,</i>	he served,	or did serve.
<i>Nous servîmes,</i>	we served,	or did serve.
<i>Vous servîtes,</i>	you served,	or did serve.
<i>Ils servirent,</i>	they served,	or did serve.

FUTURE.

<i>Je servirai,</i>	I shall serve,	or will serve.
<i>Tu serviras,</i>	thou shalt serve,	or wilt serve.
<i>Il servira,</i>	he shall serve,	or will serve.
<i>Nous servirons,</i>	we shall serve,	or will serve.
<i>Vous servirez,</i>	you shall serve,	or will serve.
<i>Ils serviront,</i>	they shall serve,	or will serve.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Je servirais,</i>	I should serve,	or would serve.
<i>Tu servirais,</i>	thou shouldst serve,	or wouldst serve.
<i>Il servirait,</i>	he should serve,	or would serve.
<i>Nous servirions,</i>	we should serve,	or would serve.
<i>Vous serviriez,</i>	you should serve,	or would serve.
<i>Ils serviraient,</i>	they should serve,	or would serve.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sers,</i>	serve (thou).
<i>Servons,</i>	let us serve.
<i>Servez,</i>	serve (you):

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Que je serve,</i>	that I may serve.
<i>Que tu serves,</i>	that thou mayst serve.
<i>Qu'il serve,</i>	that he may serve.
<i>Que nous servions,</i>	that we may serve.
<i>Que vous serviez,</i>	that you may serve.
<i>Qu'ils servent,</i>	that they may serve.

SUBJUNCTIVE PAST.

<i>Que je servisse,</i>	that I might serve.
<i>Que tu servisses,</i>	that thou mightst serve.
<i>Qu'il servît,</i>	that he might serve.
<i>Que nous servissions,</i>	that we might serve.
<i>Que vous servissiez,</i>	that you might serve.
<i>Qu'ils servissent,</i>	that they might serve.

348. This completes the study of the most necessary radical irregular French verbs, except *partir*, to go off, to leave, and *sortir*, to go out, both of which are conjugated like *servir*. The others will be found explained in the Index.

Partir and *sortir* take *être*, instead of *avoir*, in their compound tenses.

Guerre, war.

349. A number of words beginning with *w* in English, begin with *g* in French; as, *Guerre*, war; *garde-robe*, wardrobe; *gager*, to wager, etc.

Il y a deux ans qu'il est mort.

Il y avait dix-huit mois qu'il était dans l'armée.

350. The verb **y avoir**, there to be, is frequently used before words denoting the time elapsed since an event took place, or the time during which a state or an action has been continued. The **que** which follows, signifies *since*; thus, the literal translation of the above examples is: *There are two years since he is dead; There were eighteen months since he was in the army.*

The preposition **DEPUIS**, since, may often be employed instead of **y avoir**, in similar phrases, thus: *Il est mort DEPUIS deux ans*, he is dead these two years; *Il était dans l'armée DEPUIS dix-huit mois*, he was in the army these two years.

Il est mort,

he HAS BEEN dead.

351. The compound tense *to have been*, or *to have been doing*, when it denotes that a state or an action continues, must be rendered by the present tense in French. We should accordingly translate, *We HAVE BEEN here this hour*, by, *Il y a une heure que nous SOMMES ici*, and, *We HAVE BEEN WAITING for you these two hours*, by, *Il y a deux heures que nous vous ATTENDONS.*

In the phrase, *Il est mort*, he is dead, we consider the verb as in the present tense, because *mort*, dead, is used as an adjective.

The literal translation of, *He HAS BEEN dead*, by, *Il a ÉTÉ*

mort, would seem absurd in French, as meaning, *He was dead, and is alive again.*

352. As a consequence of the preceding observation, when the pluperfect tense denotes that a state or an action was continuing, it is rendered by the imperfect tense in French: *Il était dans l'armée*, he HAD BEEN in the army.

Il aurait pu mourir,
he could have died.

353. Among the irregular verbs already seen, there are three, the English equivalents of which are defective and have no past participle, viz., *devoir*, *pouvoir*, and *vouloir*. The past participles of these verbs are, *dû*, *pu*, and *voulu*. The absence of equivalent forms in English gives rise to different constructions, which may all be reduced to a single one in French: the above verbs forming a compound tense with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, and being followed by an infinitive, as the following examples will show.

He could have led.

Il AURAIT PU mener.

He ought to have lived; or,
should have lived.

Il AURAIT DÛ vivre.

He would have gone.

Il AURAIT VOULU aller.

You may have heard.

Vous AVEZ PU entendre.

He must have seen.

Il A DÛ voir.

I wish I had been there; or,
I should have liked to have
been there.

J'AURAI VOULU être là.

We have been able to speak
to him.

Nous AVONS PU lui parler.

You should not have done
that.

*Vous n'AURIEZ pas DÛ faire
cela.*

SIENS is the plural of *sien*. It has been used in this lesson for *his family*, *his relations*, or *his friends*.

354. The possessive pronouns are sometimes used as substantives, to denote our relations, friends, or dependents, but only in the masculine gender and in the plural number: *Les miens*, *les tiens*, *les siens*, *les nôtres*, *les vôtres*, *les leurs*.

Il quitta le pays il y a six ans,
he left the country six years ago.

355. When **il y a**, denoting time elapsed, precedes the principal verb, the word **que**, signifying *since*, is required; but when the principal verb is placed first, **QUE** is, of course, unnecessary.

Estimé de ses chefs,
esteemed by his chiefs.

It would not sound so well, but still it would be correct, to say, *Chéri PAR ses camarades et estimé PAR ses chefs*. The choice between **DE** and **PAR**, after a passive verb, is sometimes a cause of doubt, even for the French.

356. In general, **de** is preferable between a passive verb and the name of the agent, when the verb expresses a feeling, as *chéri, estimé*; and **par** is more properly employed, when the verb expresses an action; as, "*Il était battu PAR ses camarades et puni PAR ses chefs*, he was beaten by his comrades, and punished by his chiefs."

357. **Quelqu'un**, formed of *quelque* and *un*, both of which have been seen, is an indefinite pronoun. When used in an absolute sense, that is, without any reference to a substantive, it corresponds to *some one, somebody, any one, anybody*. In this sense it is used only in speaking of persons, and is always masculine. It may take the plural form, **quelques-uns**, but only when it is a subject.

358. When it is not absolute, and refers to a substantive, it corresponds to *some* and *any*, may relate to things as well as to persons, and takes the feminine and plural forms, *quelqu'une, quelques-unes, quelques-unes*.

Crâne, skull; *sabre*, sword, are masculine; and *foi*, faith; *tribu*, tribe, are feminine, by exception.

Avouer, to own, to admit; *tuer*, to kill; *chercher*, to look for; *quitter*, to quit; *s'enrôler*, to enlist; *estimer*, to esteem; and *traverser*, to traverse, are regular verbs of the first conjugation: *chérir*, to cherish, is of the second: and *fendre*, to split, of the third. *Tenir*, to hold, is conjugated like *venir*, to come.

EXERCISES,

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. I go out, 348. | 13. I hold. |
| 2. He goes out. | 14. He holds. |
| 3. We go out. | 15. We hold. |
| 4. You go out. | 16. You hold. |
| 5. They go out. | 17. They hold. |
| 6. I went out. | 18. I held. |
| 7. I shall go out. | 19. I shall hold. |
| 8. I should go out. | 20. I should hold. |
| 9. Let us go out. | 21. Let us hold. |
| 10. Go out. | 22. Hold. |
| 11. To go out. | 23. To hold. |
| 12. I have gone out. | 24. I have held. |

25. Somebody wishes to speak to you, 357.—26. Have you seen any one? 357.—27. Do you expect anybody? 357.—28. Yes, madam; I expect somebody, 357.—29. My pens are very good: will you have one?—30. I have seen some of your comrades, 357.—31. He came, for the first time, a month ago, 350.—32. I spoke to him a few days ago, 350.—33. We saw him six months ago, 350.—34. He has been sleeping these two hours, 350.—35. He has been a soldier these three years, 350.—36. Your sister is loved by all those who know her, 356.—37. What day of the month is it?—38. It is the tenth, 346.—39. It is the twelfth, 346.—40. It is the thirteenth, 346.—41. Is it not the first? 346.—42. It is the twenty-ninth.—43. How many days has this month?—44. It has thirty.

CONCLUDING LESSONS,

TO BE TRANSLATED ALTERNATELY FROM FRENCH INTO ENGLISH,
AND FROM ENGLISH INTO FRENCH.

Explanation of the Abbreviations used in the notes below.

adj.	stands for	Adjective.	masc.	stands for	Masculine.
adv.	"	Adverb.	past part.	"	Past participle.
art.	"	Article.	pl.	"	Plural.
conj.	"	Conjunction.	pres. part.	"	Present participle.
ex.	"	Example.	prep.	"	Preposition.
exc.	"	Exception.	pron.	"	Pronoun.
fem.	"	Feminine.	sing.	"	Singular.
irr. v	"	Irregular verb.	subst.	"	Substantive.
lit.	"	Literally, in a strict sense.	v.	"	Verb.

The small figures refer to the rules already seen, but the large ones indicate that something new is under consideration.

QUARANTE ET UNIÈME LEÇON.—*Forty-first Lesson.*

La vie d'un matelot a aussi ses fatigues et ses dangers. Combien de vaisseaux, battus par la tempête, portés par des vagues enflées, avec leurs voiles déchirées par le vent, se sont brisés sur des rochers, ou ont fait naufrage sur des rivages éloignés et inconnus, ou ont été surpris entre les montagnes de glace de la mer polaire, et y sont restés attachés pour

A sailor's life has also its fatigues and dangers. How many vessels, beaten by the storm, borne on swelling waves, with their sails shred by the wind, have split on rocks, or have been wrecked on distant and unknown shores, or have been caught among the icy mountains of the polar sea; and stuck there forever! No, it shall never

Battu is the past part. of the irr. v. *battre*.—*Fait* is the past part. of the irr. v. *faire*.—*Naufrage* is masc. by exc.—*Rivage* is masc. by exc.—*Surpris* is the past part. of the irr. v. *surprendre*, which is conjugated like *prendre*.—*Puis* is a form of the irr. v. *pouvoir*.—*Mer* is fem. by exc.—*POLAIRE*, polar.
359. The termination *aire* is common to nouns and adjectives, many of

toujours ! Non, ce ne sera jamais mon sort d'être marin, si je puis l'éviter. Que ceux qui aiment la gloire se précipitent dans le péril, et qu'ils épuisent leur force par les fatigues. Quant à moi, je préfère une vie tranquille. Après tout, je crois que le commerce est la chose qui me convient le mieux.

Il avait à peine pris son parti qu'il s'élança de sa chaise, brossa son humble et unique redingote, la boutonna, mit son chapeau et sortit précipitamment, à la recherche d'une petite boutique qui pût convenir à son dessein. Enfin il en trouva une très-petite, qui excita son attention. Elle était presque carrée, ayant douze pieds de long sur onze de large, avec une petite arrière-boutique.

be my lot to be a seaman, if I can help it. Let such as love glory rush into peril, and exhaust their strength with fatigues. As for me, I prefer a quiet life. Upon the whole, I think that trade is the thing that suits me best.

He had scarcely made up his mind, when he sprang from his chair, brushed his humble and only frock-coat, buttoned it, put his hat on, and sallied forth in search of a little shop that might suit his purpose. At length he found a very small one, that hit his fancy. It was almost square, being twelve feet long by eleven wide, with a little back shop. "This is the very thing I want,"

which end in English with *ary* or *ar* ; as, *Contraire*, contrary ; *salair*e, salary ; *grammaire*, grammar, etc.—*Quant* must not be confounded with *quand*, when, or though. *Quant* is always followed by *à*, with which it signifies, as for, in regard to, with respect to.—*Commerce* is masc. by exc.—*La chose qui me convient* LE mieux. **360.** Before *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, used in the superlative of comparison, the article *le*, *la*, *les* agrees in gender and number with the substantive which is the object of comparison. In the superlative absolute, however, that is to say, when no comparison is expressed, the article *le* remains invariable, thus : *La chose qui me convient le mieux*, the thing that suits me best.—*Convient* is a form of the irr. v. *convenir*, which is conjugated like *venir*.

Pris is the past part. of the irr. v. *prendre*.—*Son humble et unique redingote*. **361.** When two or more adjectives qualify the same subst., the determinative word is not repeated before each adj. It would, however, be wrong to say, *Une grande et petite redingote*, for in this example the adj. *grande* and *petite* evidently refer to different coats. That *redingote* does not take the plural form in such a case, is because the subst. gives the law to the adj., but never receives it from it.—*Sortit* is a form of the irr. v. *sortir*.—*Pût* is a form of the irr. v. *pouvoir*.—*ARRIÈRE-BOUTIQUE* is a compound of *arrière*, a preposition, and *boutique*, a substantive. Its plural is *arrière-boutiques*.—**362.** In compound words, those component parts which are neither subst. nor adj. are always invariable. This rule is subject to the following excep-

"C'est exactement ce qu'il me faut," se dit-il à lui-même. Il entra dans la boutique contiguë, qui était occupée par un coiffeur, homme grand, maigre, à la tête chauve, à la physionomie rusée, et au regard curieux; et demanda l'adresse du propriétaire de la maison.

Le coiffeur ne la lui donna pas avant de lui avoir fait beaucoup de questions, et de lui avoir raconté quelques détails touchant le dernier locataire de la boutique. Enfin il lui donna l'adresse du propriétaire, M. Mathieu: Rue Bellechasse, numéro deux cent, près de la place Louis XV.; et, pour conclure, il demanda la permission d'assurer à son jeune voisin futur que son peigne et son rasoir étaient toujours à son service.

said he to himself. He entered the adjoining shop, which was occupied by a hair-dresser,—a tall, lean, bald-headed man, with a shrewd countenance and a prying look,—and begged to be directed to the owner of the house.

This the hair-dresser did not do before he had asked him a great many questions, and related to him a few particulars about the last tenant of the shop. At length he gave him the landlord's address: Mr. Matthew, Bellechasse-street, No. two hundred, near the Place Louis XV.; and, in conclusion, begged leave to assure his future young neighbor that his comb and razor were always at his service.

tion: If one of the component parts is a word that has ceased to be used alone, as *boutant* in *arc-boutant*, which is formed of *arc*, arch, bow, and the pres. part. of the old v. *bouter*, to put, to push, it is considered as an adj., and takes the plural when the sense requires it.—*Faut* is a form of the irr. v. *falluir*.—*Dit* is a form of the irr. v. *dire*.—*Qui était occupée*. 363. The past participle agrees, like the adjective, in gender and number with the object that undergoes the action expressed, provided that object is mentioned or represented by a pronoun placed before it in French.—Ex. *L'homme battu*, the man beaten; *la femme battue*, the woman beaten. *J'ai battu la femme*, I have beaten the woman; *la femme que j'ai battue*, the woman I have beaten; *elle a été battue*, she has been beaten.

Fait is the past part. of the irr. v. *faire*.—*Au numéro deux cent*. 364. The adjectives *cent* and *vingt* are invariable, when they stand for the ordinal adjectives *centième* and *vingtième*.—*Louis quinze*. 365. The cardinal numbers stand for the ordinal ones, for the sake of brevity,—1st, after the names of sovereigns;—2dly, after certain words denoting the divisions or subdivisions of a work, as *chapitre*, *page*, etc.;—3dly, before the names of the months, without the prep. *de*; as, *Le deux septembre*, the second of September. *Premier*, however, cannot be replaced by *un*. We say, *Charles premier*, *chapitre premier*, *le premier septembre*, and not, *Charles un*, etc.—*Peigne* is masc. by exc.—*Service* is masc. by exc.

QUARANTE-DEUXIÈME LEÇON.—*Forty-second Lesson.*

Aussitôt qu'Alexis put se débarrasser de ce bavard, il se rendit en hâte à la maison du propriétaire. Il frappa à la porte, qui fut ouverte par une jolie servante. "M. Mathieu est-il chez lui?" lui demanda-t-il. "Oui, monsieur; veuillez entrer." Et, passant la première dans un étroit corridor, elle gagna la porte d'une salle basse, qu'elle entr'ouvrit; et, avançant la tête dans l'intérieur, elle dit: "Il y a un monsieur dehors, qui veut vous parler, monsieur." "Qu'il entre," dit une voix enrouée et dure; et Alexis fut introduit dans la chambre, où un vieillard était assis au coin du feu, en bonnet de nuit et en pantoufles.

Le vieux monsieur dirigea un regard irrité sur Alexis, et dit en fronçant le sourcil: "Eh bien, monsieur, que voulez-vous?" Ce dernier, un peu intimidé par cette réception peu aimable, dit en balbutiant: "Monsieur, vous avez une boutique à louer?" "Oui, vraiment," dit le propriétaire, d'un air radouci. "Je viens de la voir, elle me convient, et je voudrais savoir quelles sont vos conditions." "Oh! asseyez-vous,"

As soon as Alexis could get rid of this talkative fellow, he repaired in haste to the house of the landlord. He knocked at the door, which was opened by a pretty maid-servant. "Is Mr. Matthew at home?" he inquired of her. "Yes, sir. Please to walk in." And, leading the way through a narrow passage, she came to a parlor-door, which she half opened; and, peeping in, she said: "There is a gentleman without, who wants to speak to you, sir." "Let him come in," said a hoarse, rough voice; and Alexis was ushered into the room, where an old man sat by the fireside, in his night-cap and slippers.

The old gentleman bent an angry look on Alexis, and said with a frown: "Well, sir, what do you want?" The latter, somewhat startled at this ungentle reception, stammered out: "Sir, you have a shop to let?" "I have indeed," said the landlord, smoothing his brow. "I have just seen it, it suits me, and I should like to know what your terms are." "Oh! sit down, young man—pray sit down by

Put is a form of the irr. v. *pouvoir*.—*Ouverte*, fem. of *ouvert*, is the past part. of the irr. v. *ouvrir*.—*Veuillez* is a form of the irr. v. *vouloir*.—*Veut* is a form of the irr. v. *vouloir*.—*Introduit* is the past part. of the irr. v. *introduire*.—*Assis* is the past part. of the irr. v. *s'asseoir*.

Dit is a form of the irr. v. *dire*.—*Voulez* is a form of the irr. v. *vouloir*.—*Viens* is a form of the irr. v. *venir*.—*Convient* is a form of the irr. v. *convenir*, which is conjugated like *venir*.—*Asseyez* is a form of the irr. v. *s'asseoir*.—

jeune homme, je vous en prie, asseyez-vous près du feu, il fait froid aujourd'hui. Nous disons donc que ma boutique vous a convenu, et que vous désirez la prendre?" "Oui, monsieur, si le loyer n'en est pas trop cher." "Elle ne coûte que cinq cents francs par an. Ce n'est pas un prix trop élevé, n'est-ce pas?" "Mais je ne trouve pas que ce soit très-bon marché," dit Alexis; "cependant je la prendrai." "Alors, il faut que le premier quartier soit payé d'avance, car je n'ai pas le plaisir de vous connaître." "C'est trop juste," dit Alexis, en l'interrompant et en tirant de son porte-feuille son billet de cinq cents francs qu'il posa sur la table. "Veuillez vous payer et me donner ma monnaie."

the fire—it is cold to-day. And so you say that my shop suits you—that you wish to take it?" "Yes, sir, if the rent is not too high." "It is only five hundred francs a year. That's not too high a price, is it?" "Why, I don't think it is very cheap," said Alexis; "however, I will take it." "But then, the first quarter must be paid in advance, as I have not the pleasure of knowing you." "It is perfectly right," said Alexis, interrupting him, and drawing from his pocket-book his five hundred franc note, which he laid on the table. "Please to pay yourself, and to return me my change."

QUARANTE-TROISIÈME LEÇON.—*Forty-third Lesson.*

M. Mathieu, voyant qu'il se rendait si facilement à sa demande, aurait voulu en avoir exigé davantage. Il dit qu'il avait à louer, dans la même maison, deux chambres bien meublées, dont il pourrait disposer à des

Mr. Matthew, seeing him comply so readily with his demand, wished he had exacted more. He said that he had two nicely-furnished rooms to let, in the same house, that he could dispose of on moderate terms, and

IL FAIT *froid*. 366. *Faire* is used impersonally, or rather in the third person singular, instead of *to be*, in speaking of the weather or of the temperature, thus: *Il fait beau temps*, it is fine weather; *il fait chaud*, it is warm; *il fait froid*, it is cold, etc.—*Ma boutique vous a convenu*. 367. The verb *convenir*, when it signifies, to suit, to be becoming, takes *avoir* in its compound tenses. It takes *être*, when used in the sense of to agree, or to acknowledge.—*Prendrai* is a form of the irr. v. *prendre*.—*Faut* is a form of the irr. v. *falloir*.—*Veuillez* is a form of the irr. v. *vouloir*.

Voyant is a form of the irr. v. *voir*.—*Voulu* is the past part. of the irr. v. *vouloir*.—*Pourrait* is a form of the irr. v. *pouvoir*.—*Ni l'une ni l'autre ne*

conditions modérées, et qu'il serait bien aise si Alexis voulait louer l'une ou l'autre, ou toutes les deux. "Ni l'une ni l'autre, à présent ne m'est nécessaire," dit Alexis, "mais plus tard je compte pouvoir les prendre. En attendant, ne puis-je pas me mettre en pension chez vous?" "Assurément, vous le pouvez," répondit M. Mathieu. "Cela vous coûtera mille francs par an, cela fait quatre-vingt-trois francs et trente-cinq centimes par mois, payables de mois en mois et d'avance." "C'est une affaire conclue," dit Alexis. "Nous allons, s'il vous plaît, régler ce compte à l'instant."

Le propriétaire, après avoir bien palpé le billet, rendit la monnaie, et dit: "Commencerez-vous aujourd'hui?" "Oui. A quelle heure dînez-vous?" "A cinq heures, mon cher monsieur; et nous sommes si ponctuels, qu'au moment où l'heure sonne, le dîner est servi." "Très-bien, je reviendrai à quatre heures et demie." "Faites," dit le vieillard, "j'informerais madame Mathieu de votre venue. Nous devons avoir du bœuf rôti, un pâté

he should be glad if he would hire either, or both. "Neither, at present," said Alexis; "but later, I trust, I shall be able to take them. In the mean time, can I not board in your house?" "To be sure you can," answered Mr. Matthew. "It will cost you a thousand francs a year; that makes eighty-three francs and thirty-five centimes a month, payable monthly and in advance." "It is a bargain," said Alexis. "We will, if you please, settle this account immediately."

The landlord, after having felt and examined scrupulously the bill, returned the change, and said: "Will you begin to-day?" "I will. At what o'clock do you dine?" "At five o'clock, my dear sir; and we are so punctual, that the moment the clock strikes, the dinner is served up." "Very well, I shall come back at half-past four." "Do," said the old man; "I shall surprise Mrs. Matthew of your coming. We are to have roast-beef,

m'EST nécessaire; or, *Ni l'une ni l'autre ne me sont nécessaires*. **368.** When two or more subjects in the singular number are joined by the conjunction *ni*, the verb may be made to agree with the last subject only, or may be put in the plural. The best writers have given numerous examples of both forms.—*Centime* is masc. by exe.—*Conclu*, fem. *conclue*, is the past part. of the irr. v. *conclure*.—*Compte* is masc. by exe.

Servi is the past part. of the irr. v. *servir*.—*Reviendrait* is a form of the irr. v. *revenir*, which is conjugated like *venir*.—*L'heure sonne*, lit. the hour rings, for, the clock strikes. **A QUATRE HEURES ET DEMIE.** **369.** In speaking of time, as measured by the clock, the number of hours is mentioned first,

de veau et de jambon, les restes d'un gigot de mouton, avec des pommes de terre et des épinards, et une tête de mouton bouillie. Aimez-vous la tête de mouton?" "Pas beaucoup," répondit Alexis, "ni les épinards non plus; mais n'importe; j'aime le bœuf et les pommes de terre, ainsi cela fera compensation. Je me réjouis de voir que je ne mourrai vraisemblablement pas de faim chez vous, si vous me faites faire la même bonne chère tous les jours. Au revoir, monsieur."

a veal and ham pie, the remains of a leg of mutton, with potatoes and spinage, and a boiled sheep's head. Do you like sheep's head?" "Not very much," returned Alexis, "nor spinage neither: but no matter; I like beef and potatoes, so it will make amends. I rejoice to see that I am not likely to starve in your house, if you give me the same good fare every day. Good-by, sir."

QUARANTE-QUATRIÈME LEÇON.—*Forty-fourth Lesson.*

Il restait alors à Alexis deux cent quatre-vingt-onze francs soixante-cinq centimes, pour garnir sa boutique. C'est pourquoi sa première démarche, en quittant M. Mathieu fut de dépenser cet argent en verres, en bouteilles, en théyères, en pots au lait, en sucriers, en tasses, en soucoupes, et en autre poterie fine. Il empila ces choses dans un large panier ouvert, mettant la poterie par-dessous et les verres par-dessus. Puis il retourna à son petit magasin, plaça le panier à ses pieds,

Alexis had now two hundred and ninety-one francs, sixty-five centimes left, to fit up his shop with. His next step, therefore, on leaving Mr. Matthew, was to lay it out in glasses, bottles, teapots, milk-pots, sugar-basins, cups, saucers, and other fine earthenware. These he piled up in a wide, open basket, putting the crockery undermost and the glasses uppermost. He then placed the basket at his feet, sat down on a stool, thrust his hands into his pockets, and

and followed by the fraction denoting the portion of time which precedes or follows the full number, thus: *Quatre heures cinq minutes*, five minutes past four; *quatre heures et un quart*, or more commonly, *quatre heures un quart*, a quarter past four; *cinq heures moins un quart*, a quarter to five; *cinq heures moins dix minutes*, ten minutes to five. The last examples show that the portion of time wanting to make up the full number is preceded by *moins*, less.—*Fera* is a form of the irr. v. *faire*.—*Mourrai* is a form of the irr. v. *mourir*.—*Faim* is fem. by exe.

Verre is masc. by exe.—*Ouvert* is the past part. of the irr. v. *ouvrir*.—

s'assit sur un tabouret, enfonça ses mains dans ses poches, et s'appuya le dos contre le mur, en attendant les chalands. Comme il était assis dans cette posture, les yeux sur le panier, il tomba dans une de ces rêveries qui lui étaient familières, et pendant lesquelles il lui arrivait souvent de se livrer à des soliloques prolongés; car l'esprit des paresseux ne participe pas toujours de l'engourdissement de leurs membres.

Or, la cloison qui séparait Alexis de son voisin était peu épaisse. A l'aide d'une vrille, l'indiscret barbier y avait pratiqué plusieurs ouvertures. Se glissant tout contre la paroi, il se tint coi, prêta l'oreille, et recueillit ce qui suit.

"Voilà un assortiment qui me coûte deux cent quatre-vingt-onze francs. Je n'ai plus le sou. Mais qu'est-ce que cela me fait? Ne suis-je pas sûr d'être hébergé pendant un mois? Avant que la quinzaine soit expirée, j'aurai fait six cents francs de cette marchandise en la vendant en détail. C'est tout simple: un objet qui est coté à trois francs sur le tarif de la fabrique finit souvent par en coûter trente et plus en passant par les mains des débitants. Tout

leaned his back against the wall, in expectation of customers. As he sat in this posture, with his eyes on the basket, he fell into one of those reveries which were familiar to him, and during which he was wont to abandon himself to long soliloquies; for the mind of the idle does not always partake of the drowsiness of their limbs.

Now, the partition which separated Alexis from his neighbor was not thick. By means of a gimlet, the prying barber had made several holes in it. Creeping close to the wall, he stood still, lent an ear, and heard what follows:

"Here is an assortment that costs me two hundred and ninety-one francs. I have not a penny left. But what is that to me? Am I not sure to be boarded and lodged for a month? Before a fortnight has elapsed, I shall have made six hundred francs of these wares, by selling them at retail. It is very simple: an article which is quoted three francs in the list of prices of the manufactory, often costs thirty and upwards, after passing through the hands of re-

Mettant is a form of the irr. v. *mettre*.—*Assit* is a form of the irr. v. *s'asseoir*.—*Main* is fem. by exc.—*Soliloque* is masc. by exc.—*Membre* is masc. by exc.—*Cloison* is fem. by exc.—*Epaisse* is the fem. of *épais*, an adjective which forms its feminine irregularly.—*Paroi* is fem. by exc.—*Coi* is only used in the phrase, *se tenir coi*, or *demeurer coi*.—*Recueillit* is a form of the irr. v. *recueillir*, to gather, to collect, which is conjugated like *cueillir*. See Index.

Héberger. The *h* is mute. *Avant que la quinzaine soit expirée*. 370. Tho

le sortilège du commerce consiste à acheter à bas prix, à profiter des bonnes aubaines, et à vendre aussi cher que possible."

tailers. The whole secret of commerce consists in buying cheap, profiting by good occasions, and selling as dear as possible."

QUARANTE-CINQUIÈME LEÇON.—*Forty-fifth Lesson.*

"Mes six cents francs s'élèveront aisément à douze cents, qui, avec le temps, en produiront douze mille. Une fois possesseur de douze mille francs, je mettrai de côté mon métier de marchand de verres, et je me ferai mercier. Je prendrai naturellement une plus grande boutique, et je m'éloignerai de ce vilain barbier, qui me semble être le plus grand babillard que j'aie jamais connu, et qu'on pourrait surnommer le Figaro de Paris. Je n'entendrai plus alors ni cet ennuyeux personnage, ni l'avare et bourru M. Mathieu; double plaisir que de s'éloigner à la fois d'un voisinage et d'un propriétaire, qui sont également désagréables; car je hais les faiseurs de commérages et les avares autant que je les méprise. Je vendrai alors des aiguilles, des épingles, du fil, du coton, du ruban de fil, des dés, des ciseaux, des gants, et cætera, jusqu'à ce que j'aie gagné assez d'argent pour devenir joaillier et

"My six hundred francs will easily rise to twelve hundred, which, in time, will produce twelve thousand. When I am master of twelve thousand francs, I shall lay aside my trade of a glassman, and turn haberdasher. I shall, of course, take a larger shop, and remove from that ugly barber, who seems to me to be the greatest babbler that I ever knew, and who might be surnamed the Figaro of Paris. I shall then no longer hear either that tedious fellow, or the peevish and covetous Mr. Matthew: a double pleasure, to get away at once from a neighborhood and a landlord that are alike disagreeable; for I hate as much as I despise, gossips and misers. I shall now sell needles, pins, thread, cotton, tape, thimbles, scissors, gloves, and so forth, until I have got cash enough to become a jeweller, and deal in diamonds, pearls, gold and silver trinkets,

v. *expirer* takes the auxil. v. *avoir*, in speaking of persons and animals; and the v. *être*, in speaking of things.—*Sortilège*, sorcery, is masc. by exe.

Produiront is a form of the irr. v. *produire*.—*Fois* is fem. by exe.—*Mettrai* is a form of the irr. v. *mettre*.—*Ferai* is a form of the irr. v. *faire*.—*Prendrai* is a form of the irr. v. *prendre*.—*Pourrait* is a form of the irr. v. *pouvoir*.—*Voisinage* is masc. by exe.—*Hais* is a form of the irr. v. *haïr*.—*Commérage* is masc. by exe.—*Bijoux* is the plural form of *bijou*. 371. The follow-

faire le commerce de diamants, de perles, de bijoux d'or et d'argent, et de pierres précieuses de toute espèce.

“Ceci me fera faire connaissance avec des personnes du plus haut rang et de la plus haute condition dans le monde, que j'attirerai en n'ayant que des articles précieux et à la mode. Quand je serai parvenu à ce degré de prospérité, je commencerai à mener une heureuse vie et à faire du bruit dans le royaume. La France, l'Espagne et le Portugal me fourniront leurs vins; la Russie ses fourrures. Bien plus, des navires, chargés des trésors des Indes, m'apporteront leurs tributs.

“Dussé-je passer pour fat, je donnerai tous mes soins à ma toilette, et je serai difficile sur le choix de mon tailleur, de mon bottier, de mon chapelier et de mon bonnetier; car il y a dans le faste un prestige qui tient lieu du vrai mérite. Celui qui est bien mis, fût-il un sot impose au vul-

and precious stones of every species.

“This will make me acquainted with people of the highest rank and standing in the world, to attract whom I shall have no other articles than valuable and fashionable ones. When I have thriven thus far, I shall begin to lead a happy life, and make a noise in the kingdom. France, Spain, and Portugal will furnish me with their wines; Russia with her furs. Nay, ships, laden with the treasures of the Indies, will bring me their tributes.

“At the risk of passing for a coxcomb, I shall be very careful about my dress, and be particular in the choice of my tailor, boot-maker, hatter, and hosier; for there is a fascination in display, which makes up for real merit. He who is well dressed, though he were a fool, overawes

ing nouns ending with *ou* form their plural with *x* instead of *s*: *Bijou*, jewel; *caillou*, pebble; *chou*, cabbage, *genou*, knee; *hibou*, owl; *joujou*, plaything. (8.)

Monde is masc. by exc.—*Parvenu* is the past part. of *parvenir*, which is conjugated like *venir*.—*Royaume* is masc. by exc.—*L'Angleterre*, *l'Espagne*, etc. **372.** Proper names of countries, kingdoms, etc., take the article.—*Navire* is masc. by exe.

Dussé is the subjunctive past of *devoir*. This tense of *devoir* is sometimes used for *though*, or *though even*; as, *Dussé-je passer*, though even I were to pass. **373.** In interrogative phrases, and others in which the pron. *je* follows a verb ending in *e* mute, this *e* takes the acute accent before *je*.—*Fat*, foppish. This adj. has no fem.—*Faste*, pomp, ostentation, display, is masc. by exe.—*Prestige* is masc. by exe.—*Tient* is a form of the irr. v. *tenir*.—*Mérite* is masc. by exc.—*Mis*, past part. of *mettre*, is used for dressed; and *mise*, subst., for dress, toilet.—*Imposer*, when used absolutely, signifies, to awe,

gaire et souvent même à des gens qui valent mieux que lui. Le moyen d'être bien reçu partout, c'est d'avoir un costume recherché."

the common herd, and sometimes even people more worthy than himself. The way to be well received everywhere, is to be elegantly dressed."

QUARANTE-SIXIÈME LEÇON.—*Forty-sixth Lesson.*

"Je continuerai cependant à faire le commerce sans aucun relâche, jusqu'à ce que je sois devenu archimillionnaire. Alors je réaliserai le rêve de toute ma vie. Je ferai l'acquisition de la plus belle maison que je pourrai trouver; avec des terres et des fermes, un parc et un verger. Enfin, je me mettrai sur le pied d'un seigneur. Et qui sait si je n'en deviendrai pas un? Je veux que, dans un espace de dix lieues à la ronde, il n'y ait pas une acre, pas un pouce de terrain qui ne fasse partie de mon domaine.

"Je veux qu'un étranger ne puisse demander: 'A qui sont ces près verdoyants?' sans qu'on lui réponde: 'Au marquis Delatour.'

"I shall go on, however, with my trade, without any intermission, until I am worth many millions. Then will I realize the dream of my whole life. I shall make a purchase of the finest house I shall be able to find; with lands and farms, a park, and an orchard. In short, I shall set myself on the footing of a lord. And who knows but I may become one? I am determined that, within a space of ten leagues round, there shall not be an acre, not an inch of ground but what belongs to my estate.

"I am determined that when a stranger asks, 'Whose verdant meadows are these?' no other answer shall be made but, 'Marquis Delatour's.'

to overawe; and *en imposer*, to impose upon, to deceive.—*Valent* is a form of the irr. v. *valoir*.—*Costume* is masc. by exc.

Relâche, intermission, relaxation, is masc. by exc.; *relâche*, putting into a port, calling, touching at a port, is fem.—*Devenu* is the past part. of the irr. v. *devenir*, which is conjugated like *venir*.—*Archimillionnaire*. *Archi*, when arbitrarily employed, as in this instance, is a familiar way of expressing the highest degree that can be attained. It is a sort of superlative form, as arch-fiend, arch-enemy, in English.—*Rêve* is masc. by exc.—*Ferai* is a form of the irr. v. *faire*.—*Pourrai* is a form of the irr. v. *pouvoir*.—*Mettrai* is a form of the irr. v. *mettre*.—*Sait* is a form of the irr. v. *savoir*.—*Deviendrait* is a form of the irr. v. *devenir*, which is conjugated like *venir*.—*Veux* is a form of the irr. v. *vouloir*.—*Espace* is masc. by exc.; however, in typographical language, it is feminine.—*Pouce*, inch, and thumb, is masc. by exc.—*Fasse* is a form of the irr. v. *faire*.—*Domaine* is masc. by exc.

ON lui réponde. 374. The pron. *on* is generally masculine and singular.

“ ‘A qui ces champs si bien cultivés?’ ‘Au marquis Delatour.’

“ ‘A qui ces vignobles chargés de pampres verts?’ ‘Au marquis Delatour.’

“ ‘A qui ces belles génisses et tout le bétail épars dans ces gras pâturages?’ ‘Au marquis Delatour.’ Toujours ‘au marquis Delatour,’ à l’instar de ce que j’ai lu dans l’histoire du Chat botté.

“ ‘Peu de maisons seront mieux meublées que la mienne. Je ferai décorer mes appartements avec la splendeur des sérails de l’Orient ou des palais enchantés si bien décrits dans les contes de fées. Les parquets, les vantaux des portes, les jalousies, les persiennes et les volets seront faits

“ ‘Who possesses those fields so well tilled?’ ‘Marquis Delatour.’

“ ‘Whose vineyards are these, that are loaded with green vine-branches?’ ‘Marquis Delatour’s.’

“ ‘Whose beautiful heifers are those, and all the cattle dispersed over those fat pastures?’ ‘Marquis Delatour’s.’ Always ‘Marquis Delatour’s,’ like what I have read in the story of Puss in Boots.

“ ‘Few houses shall be better furnished than mine. I shall have my apartments fitted up with the splendor of eastern seraglios, or of the enchanted palaces so well described in fairy tales. The floors, the leaves of the folding-doors, the Venetian blinds and shutters, will

However, when the sense clearly shows that it refers to a woman, or to certain persons, it is followed by adjectives, participles, or substantives, either feminine or plural, according to the sense. Ex. *Quand on est JEUNE et JOLIE comme vous, madame*, when one is young and beautiful as you are, madam.

Vignoble is masc. by exc.—*Pampre* is masc. by exc.

The plural of *bétail* is *bestiaux*.—The fem. of *gras* is *grasse*.—*Pâturage* is masc. by exc.

PEU de maisons seront mieux meublées. 375. § 1. When adverbs of quantity, such as *peu*, *beaucoup*, *assez*, are employed as collective nouns, the verb agrees with the subst. that follows them. § 2. When the subst. is understood, the v. agrees with it nevertheless. Ex. *Beaucoup le seront moins bien*, many shall be less so.—*Décrit* is the past part. of the irr. v. *décrire*, which is conjugated like *écrire*.—*Vantaux* is the plural of *vantail*.—*Jalousies* and *persiennes* are both called Venetian blinds in English, but the former are drawn up by means of cords and pulleys, while the latter open and shut like shutters. *Les persiennes et les volets seront faits.* 376. § 1. When a participle or an adjective refers to two or more substantives or pronouns, either singular or plural and of different genders, it takes the plural form and the masculine gender. § 2. If the substantives are of different genders, for the sake of euphony, the masculine one ought to be placed last, if possible. This rule should, however, not be construed so as to interfere with the following: 377. When an adjective or a verb is preceded by two or more substantives

de bois précieux, tels que l'acajou, le palissandre, le citronnier et l'ébène. Les gonds et les verrous seront faits d'acier cimenté, incrusté d'or. L'ivoire et le marbre seront prodigués de tous côtés; et la mousseline, le satin et le velours, artistement entremêlés, éblouiront l'œil par les teintes les plus brillantes. Je m'entendrai à ce sujet avec mon tapissier."

be made of precious wood, such as mahogany, rosewood, citronwood, and ebony. The hinges and bolts will be made of cemented steel, inlaid with gold. Ivory and marble will be lavished on all sides; and, muslin, satin, and velvet, skilfully interwoven, will dazzle the eye with the most brilliant hues. I shall confer on this subject with my upholsterer."

QUARANTE-SEPTIÈME LEÇON.—*Forty-seventh Lesson.*

"De cette manière, je passerai des jours sereins, et je jouirai de la vie de garçon pendant quelques années, avant de songer au lien conjugal. D'ailleurs il est imprudent de se marier de bonne heure, depuis que le divorce est aboli.

"Lorsque enfin je serai las du célibat, je briguerai l'alliance de quelque noble famille, comme celle des Noircastels, par exemple, ces antiques soutiens du

"In this manner I shall pass some pleasant days, and I shall enjoy a bachelor's life for some years, before I think of the matrimonial bond. Besides, it is imprudent to marry early, since divorce has been abolished.

"When at last I am tired of the single state, I shall court an alliance in some noble family, such as that of the Noircastels for instance, those ancient sup-

which are synonymous and not connected by *et*, it agrees with the last only. Ex. *Un flot, une lame MONSTRUEUSE*, a billow, a monstrous surge; *la constance, la persévérance lui A suffi*, steadiness and perseverance have been sufficient for him.—*Palissandre* is mase. by exe.—*Ebène* is mase. by exe.—*Ivoire* is mase. by exe.—*Marbre* is mase. by exe.

Divorce is mase. by exe.

The fem. of *las* is *lasse* by exe.—*Comme celle des NOIRCASTELS*. 378. §1. Most grammarians are of opinion that proper names should always be invariable, unless employed as common substantives: they would accordingly write, *les Noircastel*; the judicious Lemare, however, shows by numerous examples that the best writers give the plural form to proper names belonging to several individuals. §2. A proper name is invariable when it designates a single person, and is nevertheless preceded by *les* or another definitive in the plural, in such idiomatic phrases as the following: "*LES Corneille et LES Racine ont illustré la scène française*, Corneille and Racine have illustrated

trône et de l'autel : c'est une famille dont la généalogie remonte à l'époque de la fondation du royaume.

"La jeune personne que je demanderai en mariage sera naturellement le type de la grâce et de la beauté. Elle et moi nous ferons un couple bien assorti. Voici comme je me la représente :

"Elle est de moyenne stature. Sa taille est svelte et cambrée. Elle a des yeux noirs, un nez grec, des lèvres vermeilles, des dents comme deux rangées de perles et une petite fossette au milieu du menton. Ses joues sont animées du plus doux incarnat, et les belles boucles de ses cheveux châtain clair flottent sur ses épaules. Elle a une petite main, des doigts effilés et des ongles roses. Son pied eût fait honte à Cendrillon.

"Les perfections de son âme ne le cèdent en rien à celles de sa personne. Ses connaissances

porters of the throne and altar : they are a family whose genealogy is traced up to the epoch of the foundation of the kingdom.

"The young lady whom I shall ask in marriage will, of course, be the type of grace and beauty. She and I shall be a well-matched couple. I fancy I see her.

"She is middle-sized. Her shape is slender and flexible. She has black eyes, a Grecian nose, ruddy lips, teeth like two rows of pearls, and a small dimple in the middle of her chin. Her cheeks glow with the softest blush, and the beautiful locks of her light nut-brown hair flow on her shoulders. She has a small hand, slender fingers, and rosy nails. Her foot would have shamed Cinderella.

"The perfections of her mind are nowise inferior to those of her person. Her knowledge makes

the French stage."—*Trône* is masc. by exc.—*C'est une famille*. **379**. The pron. *ce* is often employed for *he*, *she*, or *they*, as the subject of a proposition, the predicate of which is a subst. or a pron.—*Royaume* is masc. by exc.

Type is masc. by exc., as well as its derivatives, *prototype*, *daguerriotype*, etc.—*Elle et moi, nous FERONS*. **380**. § 1. When a verb refers to several subjects of different persons, the subjects are summed up by the pron. *nous* or *vous*, with which the verb agrees. § 2. *Nous* is employed if one of the subjects is of the first person; otherwise *vous* is the proper pronoun.—*Couple* is masc. by exc. when it signifies two animated beings acting in concert, or two persons or animals of different sexes; but when *couple* signifies only two things of the same kind, it is fem.

Ses cheveux CHATAIN CLAIR. **381**. § 1. When two adjectives form a compound in which the second qualifies the first, they are both invariable. § 2. But if the first is used adverbially and qualifies the second, the first adj. is invariable, and the second agrees with the subst. Ex. *Ses cheveux clair-semés*, his thinly-scattered hair.—*Honte*. *h* is aspirate. See *h* in Index.

la font admirer comme un prodige. Elle chante et danse à ravir. Elle sait dessiner, peindre et broder; elle parle anglais, italien, espagnol, et allemand. Elle est versée dans l'histoire et la géographie. Elle sait coudre et tricoter et se sert de la quenouille, du fuseau et du rouet aussi bien qu'une fermière. Loin d'avoir l'orgueil de certaines personnes de sa caste, elle rend de fréquentes visites aux pauvres, dont elle allège les souffrances et dont elle est adorée. Son panégyrique est dans toutes les bouches. Enfin c'est le modèle des vertus."

her admired as a prodigy. She sings and dances delightfully. She can draw, paint, and embroider; she speaks English, Italian, Spanish, and German. She is versed in history and geography. She can sew and knit, and she employs the distaff, the spindle, and spinning-wheel as well as a farmer's wife. Far from having the haughtiness of certain persons of her caste, she pays frequent visits to the poor, whose sufferings she alleviates, and by whom she is adored. Everybody sings her praises. In a word, she is the model of virtues."

QUARANTE-HUITIÈME LEÇON.—*Forty-eighth Lesson.*

"Pour amadouer le duc son père, et pour qu'il ne croie pas déchoir en donnant sa fille à un parvenu, je lui écrirai que je ne demande pas de dot. Une offre aussi désintéressée est une chose trop rare pour n'être pas acceptée sur-le-champ. Aussi mon gentilhomme, tout fier qu'il est de ses titres et de son rang, ajournera toute autre affaire pour conclure ce pacte, et me donnera un rendez-vous. Il me

"In order to coax over the duke her father, and to prevent him from considering it a disparagement to give his daughter to an upstart, I shall write to him that I do not ask for a portion. Such a disinterested offer is too rare a thing not to be accepted directly. So my nobleman, proud as he is of his titles and rank, will postpone every other business to conclude this compact, and will make me an appointment. He will re-

Prodige is masc. by exc.—*Panégyrique* is masc. by exc.—*Vertu* is fem. by exception.

Amadouer, to coax, to wheedle, is familiar.—*Croie* is a form of the irr. v. *croire*.—*Gentilhomme*. The *h* is mute, and the *l* takes the sound of *y*, as if the latter part of the word were spelled *yom*. The plural is *gentilshommes*, in which the *l* is quiescent and the first *s* pronounced like *z*, as if the word were spelled (in French) *jantizomm*.—*Titre* is masc. by exc.—*Pacte* is masc. by exc.—*RENDEZ-VOUS*. This compound word is masc. and invariable in the

recevra de la manière la plus affable, avec tout le protocole des compliments d'usage. Ma harangue sera courte, car je ne suis pas fort disert; je n'ai pas la faconde d'un avocat, et je finis par bredouiller quand je pérore trop longtemps.

"Après avoir entamé l'affaire par un petit préambule, je lui proposerai de régler les clauses du contrat, qui seront tellement avantageuses pour sa fille, qu'il n'élèvera aucune objection et qu'il sera enchanté de son tête-à-tête avec son futur gendre.

"Il peut se faire que d'abord ma belle fiancée n'ait point d'amour pour moi, mais elle est si soumise à la volonté de son père que mon triomphe est assuré.

"A la nouvelle de ce brillant hyménée, mes amis viendront me féliciter.

"Dans l'intervalle qui précèdera le jour des noces, je m'occuperai de la corbeille de la mariée. Je ferai venir une couturière et une modiste et je commanderai une quantité de robes à falbalas, d'écharpes, de corsages, de guimpes, de pèlerines, de manchons de

ceive me with the greatest affability, and with the usual pack of compliments. My harangue will be short, for I am not very voluble; I have not the loquacity of a barrister, and I always finish by stuttering, when I speechify too much.

"After breaking the ice with a short preamble, I shall propose to him to settle the clauses of the contract, which will be so advantageous to his daughter that he will make no objection, and will be delighted with this tête-à-tête with his future son-in-law.

"It may happen that my fair betrothed will feel no love for me at first, but she is so submissive to the will of her father that my triumph is certain.

"On hearing the news of this brilliant marriage, my friends will come and congratulate me.

"In the interval that will precede the wedding-day, I shall be occupied with the wedding-present to my bride. I shall send for a dressmaker and a milliner, and bespeak a number of gowns with furbelows, scarfs, bodices, habit-shirts, tippets, sable muffs,

plural. **382.** Compound words are masculine when the first component part is a verb.—*Protocol* is masc. by exc.—*Harangue*. The *h* is aspirate.—*Bredouiller* is familiar.

Préambule is masc. by exception.

Tête-à-tête. This compound substantive is invariable.

Amour is masc. in the singular; but in the plural, when it signifies the passion of one sex for the other, it is often fem.—*Triomphe* is masc. by exc. in its usual acceptation; but, as the name of a game at cards, it is fem.

Hyménée is masc. by exc. The *h* is mute.

Intervalle is masc. by exc.—*Corsage* is masc. by exc.

martre et de mouchoirs, suffisante pour parer une armée de dames.

“J’achèterai aussi des bas de soie, des manchettes et des colerettes du plus beau tulle, plusieurs châles bien moelleux, des boucles d’oreilles et un magnifique voile de dentelle.”

and handkerchiefs, sufficient to deck an army of ladies.

“I shall also buy some silk stockings, some ruffles and collars of the finest lace, several shawls of the softest tissue, earrings, and a magnificent lace-veil.”

QUARANTE-NEUVIÈME LEÇON.—*Forty-ninth Lesson.*

“Après l’envoi de mes présents, j’irai faire une visite à ma future, en carrosse à quatre chevaux, et avec un cortège nombreux.

“Enfin, je vois arriver le jour qui doit mettre le comble à mon bonheur. Je vais rejoindre la famille assemblée chez le duc, et nous partons pour la municipalité. Le maire nous unit; puis nous allons à l’église où nous recevons la bénédiction nuptiale, et me voilà l’heureux époux de la charmante Anna.

“Comme il est de mauvais ton de manifester ses impressions, je m’efforcerai de cacher mes transports sous une froideur affectée.

“A notre retour, nous trouvons une collation toute splendide préparée par les ordres exprès de mon beau-père. Au des-

“After sending my presents, I shall pay a visit to my intended bride, in a carriage and four, and with a numerous retinue.

“At length I see the day arrive which is to crown my happiness. I meet the family assembled at the duke’s, and we start for the mayoralty-house. The mayor unites us; we then repair to the church, where we receive the nuptial blessing, and I am made the happy husband of the charming Anna.

“As it is ungenteel to manifest one’s impressions, I shall strive to hide my raptures under affected coolness.

“On our return home, we shall find quite a splendid collation prepared by the express orders of my father-in-law. At

DES BAS DE SOIE. 383. There are two ways of saying this in English: *Some silk stockings*, or, *some stockings of silk*. In French there is but one: *Some stockings of silk*; and all sentences of this kind have to be translated according to this model.—*Tulle* is masc. by exc.—*Châle* is masc. by exc.—*Voile*, veil, is masc. by exc.; but *voile*, sail, is fem.

Carrosse is masc. by exc.—*Cortège* is masc. by exc.

Rejoindre, irr. v., is conjugated like *joindre*.—*Epoux*, spouse, fem. *épouse*.

Ordre is masculine by exception.—*Exprès*. The irr. fem. is *expresse*.—

sert, je ferai apporter un grand coffre rempli de cadeaux pour tous mes nouveaux parents, comme gages de ma sincère amitié. Il y aura de riches tabatières pour le grand-papa, les oncles et les cousins, des parures pour les tantes et les cousines, des cerceaux, des cordes à sauter, des toupies, des sabots, des cerfs-volants et une multitude d'autres joujoux pour les neveux et les nièces. Les domestiques ne seront pas oubliés; ils auront leur ample part de mes largesses.

"Dans l'après-midi, il y aura une ascension en ballon; et le soir, on tirera un superbe feu d'artifice, avec pétards, fusées, boîtes et chandelles romaines. Pour qu'un incendie ne soit pas à redouter, des pompiers se tiendront tout prêts avec une pompe et des seaux.

"Quand j'aurai installé ma jeune épouse chez moi, je commencerai par lui inspirer une sorte de crainte respectueuse qui me donnera un grand empire sur elle, afin qu'elle ne m'en aime que mieux plus tard. A cette fin, je la conduirai cérémonieusement à son appartement, et là je lui ferai un salut profond et glacial en me retirant."

the dessert, I shall order a large box to be brought in, filled with gifts for all my new relations, as pledges of my sincere friendship. There will be rich snuff-boxes for the grandfather, the uncles, and male cousins; sets of ornaments for the aunts and female cousins; hoops, skipping-ropes, tops, whip-tops, kites, and a multitude of other playthings for the nephews and nieces. The servants will not be forgotten; they will have their ample share of my bounty.

"In the afternoon, there will be an ascent in a balloon; and at night, splendid fireworks will be let off, with crackers, rockets, fire-boxes, and Roman candles. In order that a conflagration may not be dreaded, some firemen will stand in readiness with a fire-engine and buckets.

"When I have installed my young bride in my house, I shall begin by inspiring her with a sort of awe, which will give me a great empire over her, that she may love me the better for it afterwards. To this end, I shall lead her ceremoniously to her apartments, and there make her a low, frigid bow as I retire."

Coffre is masc. by exc.—*Gage* is masc. by exc.—*Cerfs-volants* is the plural of *cerf-volant*. In this compound substantive, the *f* in the singular, and *fs* in the plural, are quiescent.—*Joujoux* is the plural of *joujou*. (371.)

Après-midi is feminine according to the *Académie*, though several writers make it masculine. This compound substantive is invariable.—*Incendie* is masc. by exception.

Empire is masc. by exc.—*Glacial*, from *glace*, ice. According to the

CINQUANTIÈME LEÇON.—*Fiftieth Lesson.*

“Cela occasionnera un grand scandale. Ses femmes viendront me représenter qu'elle a le cœur navré; qu'elle se tord les mains et qu'à la suite d'une crise nerveuse elle est tombée dans l'abattement. Elles me supplieront avec larmes de ne pas affliger ainsi leur maîtresse par ma froideur et ma dureté; mais je les ferai taire et je resterai inflexible.

“Le lendemain, la duchesse m'amènera sa fille, pendant que je serai nonchalamment couché sur un sofa. La pauvre enfant, pleurant, sanglotant et poussant de profonds soupirs, se jettera à mes pieds.

“‘O! monsieur,’ me dira-t-elle, ‘qu'ai-je donc fait pour que vous me traitiez ainsi? Dites-le-moi, je vous en conjure.’

“Alors, comme énergique et dernière épreuve, je la repondrai soudain sans aucune pitié.”

Alexis était si complètement

“This will occasion great scandal. Her women will come and represent to me that she is broken-hearted; that she wrings her hands, and that, after a nervous fit, she has fallen into a state of dejection. They will beseech me with tears not to grieve their mistress in that way, by my coolness and unkindness; but I shall silence them and remain inflexible.

“The next day, the duchess will bring her daughter to me, while I am carelessly lying on a sofa. The poor girl, weeping, sobbing, and heaving deep sighs, will fling herself at my feet.

“‘Oh, sir!’ will she say, ‘what have I done, that you should use me thus? Tell me, I entreat you.’

“Then will I, to put her to the last and strongest test, spurn her from me without any pity.”

Alexis was so completely swal-

Académie, this adjective has no plural masc. However, the astronomer Bailly has written, *Des vents glacials*.

Scandale is masc. by exc.—*Elle est tombée*. The v. *tomber* almost invariably takes *être* as an auxiliary, in its compound tenses.

Enfant, in the singular, is of either gender, according to the sex of the child referred to; but in the plural it is always masculine.

Dites-LE-MOI. 384. When a verb in the imperative mood is followed by two object pronouns, the one direct and the other indirect, the direct regimen is placed before the indirect. For the sake of euphony, however, the pron. *moi, toi, le, la*, when direct regimens, are placed after *y*. Ex. *Envoyez-y-moi*, send me thither. But this construction is forced, and it is better to avoid it.

Soudain, sudden, for *soudainement*, suddenly. 385. Adjectives are sometimes employed as adverbs; in this case they are invariable.—*Pitié* is fem. by exception.

absorbé dans ce songe qu'il faisait tout éveillé, que, saisi d'un vertige irrésistible, il ne put s'empêcher d'exécuter avec son pied l'acte brutal qu'il avait dans la pensée; de sorte qu'il repoussa brusquement son panier de fragile marchandise, base de toutes ses grandeurs imaginaires, et que ses verres allèrent tomber dans la rue, où ils se brisèrent en mille morceaux.

"Holà!" s'écria le coiffeur, qui accourut en riant à gorge déployée. "Il paraît qu'il y a du grabuge et de la brouille dans le ménage. Voilà bien du tintamarre. A qui cette vaisselle cassée?—Au marquis Delatour! Oh! l'arrogant imbécile! qui ne connaît pas de meilleur moyen de sa faire aimer de sa femme que de la recevoir à coups de pied! Une petite femme jolie comme un ange et douce comme un mouton! Fi donc! Ah! vous n'aimez pas les pourquoi, et les comment, vous haïssez les bavards, dites-vous? Eh bien, moi, je hais les sots bouffis de vanité. Vous n'avez que ce que vous méritez, mon cher, et vous apprenez à vos dépens à quoi mène la manie de faire des châteaux en Espagne."

lowed up in this waking dream, that, seized with an irresistible vertigo, he could not forbear performing with his foot the brutal act which he had in his thoughts; so that he abruptly kicked his basket of brittle ware, the basis of all his imaginary grandeur, and his glasses fell down into the street, where they were broken into a thousand pieces.

"Halloa!" cried the hair-dresser, running in and laughing immoderately. "It seems that there is a jarring and wrangling between the husband and wife. Here is much noise! Whose broken crockery is this?—Marquis Delatour's. Oh! the supercilious blockhead! who knows no better way of gaining the love of his wife than receiving her with kicks! Such a little wife, as pretty as an angel and as mild as a lamb! Fie upon you! Ah! you do not like the whys and hows; and you hate gossips, you say? Well, *I* hate fools puffed up with vanity. You are rightly served, my fine fellow, and you now see to your cost the folly of building castles in the air."

Songe is masc. by exc.—*Vertige* is masc. by exc.—*Acte* is masc. by exc.

Grabuge is masc. by exc. It is familiar.—*Tintamarre* is masc. by exc.—*Ange* is masc., even when applied as an epithet to a woman.—*Les pourquoi, et les comment.* **386.** Uninflected parts of speech, when accidentally used as substantives, remain invariable.—*Vous n'avez que ce que vous méritez, mon cher.* **387.** When the pron. *nous* stands for *je* or *moi*, the adjective, substantive, or participle corresponding to it, must be employed in the singular number. This observation applies also to *vous* used for *tu* or *toi*.

GENERAL INDEX

AND

ALPHABETICAL GRAMMAR,

COMPRISING ALL THE RULES, OBSERVATIONS, AND EXCEPTIONS
CONTAINED IN THIS WORK, AND GIVING A COMPLETE
LIST OF THE RADICAL IRREGULAR VERBS.

The abbreviations are the same which have been explained page 335. The figures refer, not to the pages, but to the observations or rules, when no indication is prefixed to them ; and to the lessons, when preceded by the letter L.

À, prep.—Corresponds generally to the English prep. *to* and *at* ; and, moreover, is often rendered by *in*, *on*, *by*, *with*, *for*, etc. As a prep., *à* is distinguished from *a*, the v. *has*, by a grave accent, but without any difference in the sound of the vowel. It must be repeated before each substantive, adjective, or verb which it governs.—List of verbs which govern the infinitive with the prep. *à*, 211.—List of verbs which govern the infin. with either *à* or *de*, 214.

A, **an**, is translated by *un* for the masc., and by *une* for the fem., 9.—This article is not expressed before a subst. which is used adjectively, that is, which qualifies either the subject or the regimen of a verb, 21.—It must not be rendered after *what* in exclamations, 29.

ABLE.—This termination denotes aptness, fitness. It is joined to verbs of which it makes adjectives. It signifies the liability to undergo the action expressed by the verb. About two hundred adj. in *able* are the same in both languages, 44.

Absoudre, to absolve.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Absolvant*.—Past part. *Absous* ; fem. *Absoute*.—Pres. tense, indic. mood : *J'absous, tu absous, il absout, nous absolvons, vous absolvez, ils absolvent*.—Imperfect tense : *J'absol-*

vais, tu absolvais, il absolvait, nous absolvions, vous absolviez, ils absolvaient.—No past tense definite.—Future tense and conditional mood, regular, 200.—Imperative mood, like the pres. tense, indic. mood, 220.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense : *Que j'absolve, que tu absolves, qu'il absolve, que nous absolvions, que vous absolviez, qu'ils absolvent*.—No subjunct. past.

Accent.—In the sense of the particular stress or force laid upon a syllable, there is scarcely any accent in French ; at least it is far from having the importance of the English accent. In general, the stress is laid on the last syllable, or the last but one if the word ends with *e* mute. As orthographic signs, there are three accents : the acute (´), the grave (`), and the circumflex (^). The acute accent is placed over *é*, to give it the sound of *a* in the English word *dute* ; and *e* with a grave accent, *è*, is pronounced like *a* in *dare*. The circumflex may be placed over any one of the vowels, and only prolongs its sound. In the following four cases, the grave accent simply determines the meaning of words of similar orthography :

<i>a</i> , has.	<i>à</i> , to.
<i>des</i> , some.	<i>dès</i> , as soon.
<i>la</i> , the.	<i>là</i> , there.
<i>ou</i> , or.	<i>où</i> , where.

Acquérir, to acquire.—Irr. v.—Present part. *Acquérant*.—Past part. *Acquis*.—Pres. tense, indic. mood: *J'acquiers, tu acquiers, il acquiert, nous acquérons, vous acquérez, ils acquièrent*.—Imperfect tense: *J'acquerrais, tu acquerrais, il acquerrait, nous acquerrions, vous acquériez, ils acquerraient*.—Past tense definite: *J'acquis, tu acquis, il acquit, nous acquîmes, vous acquîtes, ils acquirent*.—Future tense: *J'acquerrai, tu acquerras, il acquerra, nous acquerrons, vous acquerrez, ils acquerront*.—The *r* is pronounced as double.—Conditional mood: *J'acquerrais, tu acquerrais, il acquerrait, nous acquerrions, vous acquériez, ils acquerraient*. The *r* is pronounced as double.—Imperative mood, like the present tense, indicative mood, 220.—Subjunctive mood, present tense: *Que j'acquière, que tu acquières, qu'il acquière, que nous acquérions, que vous acquériez, qu'ils acquièrent*.—Subjunctive past: *Que j'aquiesse, que tu acquisses, qu'il acquît, que nous acquissions, que vous acquissiez, qu'ils acquissent*.

ADE, termination.—Found in about 150 substantives, a third of which have become English, some without any alteration, and some presenting a slight difference, 166.

Adjectives.—The adjective always agrees in gender and number with the subst. to which it relates, 40.

Adjectives generally form their fem. by the addition of *e* mute, 41.—Adj. ending in *e* mute are of both genders, 40.—Adj. ending in *x* form their fem. by changing *x* into *se*, 63.—Adj. ending in *el, eil, et, ien, and on*, form their fem. by doubling the final consonant and adding *e* mute, 85.—Adj. ending in *f* form their fem. by changing this termination into *ve*, 42.—Adj. ending in *eur* have their fem. in *euse*, when they can be derived from a pres. part. by changing the termination *ant* into *eur*, 186.—The principal exceptions are:

<i>Complet, complète.</i>	<i>Jumeau, jumelle.</i>
<i>Discret, discrète.</i>	<i>Beau, belle.</i>
<i>Inquiet, inquiète.</i>	<i>Nouveau, nouvelle.</i>
<i>Nul, nulle.</i>	<i>Fou, folle.</i>
<i>Gentil, gentille.</i>	<i>Mou, molle.</i>
<i>Sot, sotté.</i>	<i>Blanc, blanche.</i>
<i>Bas, basse.</i>	<i>Franc, franche.</i>

Gras, grasse.
Las, lasse.
Epais, épaisse.
Gros, grosse.
Tiers, tierce.
Doux, douce.
Faux, fausse.
Roux, rousse.
Vieux, vieille.

Sec, sèche.
Frais, fraîche.
Public, publique.
Caduc, caduque.
Turc, turque.
Grec, grecque.
Long, longue.
Malin, maligne.
Favori, favorite.

The plural of adjectives, like that of substantives, is regularly formed by adding *s* to the sing., 43.—Adj. ending in *s* or *x* do not change their termination in the pl., 8.—Adj. ending in *au* form their pl. with *x* instead of *s*, 124.—Adj. ending in *al* generally form their pl. by changing *al* into *aux*, but there are some exceptions, 15.

The degrees of comparison are not usually formed in French by means of a termination; but by placing before the adj. one of the following adverbs: *aussi*, as; *plus*, more, most; *moins*, less, least; *très, fort, bien*, very, etc., 51, 52, 53.

When an adj. refers to two or more subst. or pron., either sing. or pl., and of different genders, it takes the pl. form and the masc. gender, 376, § 1.—When two or more subst. of different genders are qualified by the same adj., for the sake of euphony, the subst. of the masc. gender should be placed last, if possible, 376, § 2.—An adjective which follows two or more subst. not connected by *et*, agrees with the last only, when the subst. are synonymous, 377.—An adjective which follows two or more subst. connected by *ou*, agrees with the last only.—The subst. gives the law to the adj., but never receives it from it, 361.—When two adj. form a compound, in which the first is used adverbially and qualifies the second, the first adj. is invariable, and the second agrees with the subst., 381.—When two adj. form a compound, in which the second qualifies the first, they are both invariable.

The place of the adj. in French can hardly be subjected to rules. It sometimes precedes and sometimes follows the subst. without any precise reason, and often according to the taste or caprice of the speaker, 39.—Some adj. vary in their meaning, according as they are put before or after the subst.

French adj. are often used as subst. in the sing. as well as in the pl., 73.

When the first person plural of the imperative mood is used in the sense of *let me*, the adj., or the subst. used adjectively, which follows it, must of course be put in the sing., 290.

Adjectives are sometimes employed as adverbs; in this case they are invariable, 385.

Adjectives are often followed by certain prepositions, the use of which cannot always be determined by rules, 262.—In impersonal phrases, such as *Il est difficile*, *Il est nécessaire*, *Il semble utile*, *Il devient facile*, etc., the adj. takes *de* before the infinitive that follows, 269.

The POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES are: *Mon*, *ma*, *mes*, my; *ton*, *ta*, *tes*, thy; *son*, *sa*, *ses*, his, her, its, one's; *notre*, *nos*, our; *votre*, *vos*, your; *leur*, *leurs*, their, 71.—The possessive adj. agrees in gender and number with the subst. that follows it, 50.—Must be repeated before each subst.—The article *le*, *la*, *les*, is used instead of a possessive adj. before a regimen, when the sense clearly shows who the possessor is, 25.—This substitution is particularly proper before the name of a part of the body, or of a mental faculty; but care must be taken to make use of a pronoun showing who the possessor is, 303.

The DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES are: *Ce*, *cet*, *cette*, this, that; and *ces*, these, those, 69.

The INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES are: *Aucun*, any; *chaque*, each; *nul*, no, none, etc.; *plusieurs*, several; *quelques*, a few; *tout*, all, every, etc., 298.

Adverbs.—A considerable number of adverbs of quality are formed from adjectives, by the addition of the termination *ment*, which corresponds to the English termination *ly*, 13.—This termination is added to the feminine form, unless the adj. ends with a vowel, in which case *ment* is added to the masc. termination, 111.—When the adj. ends in *ent*, the adv. is formed by changing this termination into *emment*; and when the adj. ends in *ant*, the adv. is formed by changing this termination into *amment*. In *emment*, the first *e* has the sound of *a*, so that both these terminations, *emment* and

amment, are pronounced exactly alike, 111.—The exceptions to the foregoing rule are: *Lentement*, slowly; *présentement*, at present; and *véhémentement*, vehemently, 111.

Adverbs of quantity require the prep. *de*, when placed before a substantive, 155.

In French, the adv. may generally be placed after the verb, and before every other kind of words, 83.

When a v. is in a compound tense, the adv. is generally placed between the auxiliary and the participle; but this rule is not absolute, 313.—The adverbial form, *C'est pourquoi*, therefore, must be placed at the beginning of a sentence, or of a clause of a sentence.—*y*, there, precedes the verb in all the moods, except the imperative, 117.

Model of construction for adverbial phrases marking augmentation or diminution, by the repetition of the comparative, 215.

The following adverbs offer also some peculiarities: *Assez*, *aussi*, *bien*, *comme*, *devant*, *jamais*, *peu*, *quand*, *tant*, *y*, *ne*. See each, in its alphabetical place.

Affirmation.—There is no such word in French as *do* or *did*, joined to a verb in order to give greater strength to an affirmation, 31.

AGE.—This termination enters into the formation of numerous substantives, many of which are the same, or nearly the same, in both languages.

Aïeul, ancestor—Has two forms in the plural, *aïeuls* and *aïeux*. The first is used only for grandfathers. *Aïeux* signifies ancestors, or forefathers. L. 27.

AIN.—Termination belonging to a small class of adjectives differing slightly from the English, 314.

Ainsi que, as well as.—One of the connectives after which the v. agrees with the first of its subjects only.

AIRE.—Termination common to substantives and adjectives, many of which end in English in *ary* or in *ar*. See 41st Lesson, 359.

AL.—Termination. There are 250 adjectives ending in *al*, which are the same, or very nearly the same, in both languages, 14. There are, besides, about 90 adjectives ending in *el* in

French, and in *al* in English, with scarcely any other difference than the change of *a* into *e*. 97.

Adjectives ending in *al* generally form their pl. by changing *al* into *aux*, but there are some exceptions, 15.

Besides the adjectives in *al*, there are about 60 substantives having this termination, 40 of which are nearly the same in both languages, 14.

Substantives ending in *al* form their pl. by changing this termination into *aux*, 97.—The principal exceptions are: *Bals, carnivals, régals*.

Aller, to go.—Irr. v.—See p. 132.—This v. is always conjugated with *être* in its compound tenses—Governs the infinitive without a prep., 187.

Aller (s'en), to go away—Is conjugated like *aller*, the particle *en* being placed immediately before the v. in its simple tenses, and before the auxiliary in its compound tenses, thus: *Je m'en vais, je m'en suis allé*. Except the imperative mood: *Va-t'en, allons-nous-en, allez-vous-en*.

Any—Is often rendered by the partitive art. *de, du, de la, des*, 38.—When the direct regimen of a v., it is rendered by *en*, placed before the v., except in the imperative mood, 113.

A peine, scarcely.—One of the adv. after which the subject pronoun may follow the verb, 98.

Apercevoir, to perceive.—Irr. v. Conjugated like *devoir*. See p. 232.

Article.—The French art. varies in gender and number.—*Le* is masc. and sing. *La* is fem. and sing. *Les* is plural, and of both genders.—The article agrees in gender and number with the substantive, 1.

The substantive, whether used in a definite or an indefinite sense, is generally preceded by the art., unless there be some other determinative word annexed to it, such as *un, ce*, etc., 159.—The art., which is often omitted in English before an adj. or a title preceding a proper name, must not be suppressed in French, 310.—When an adj. in the superlative degree precedes the subst., one art. serves for both; but when the adj. follows, the art. must be repeated before it, 248.—When there are several adj., the art. is repeated each time before the words *plus, moins, mieux*, 249.—Before *plus, moins, mieux*, used in the

superlative of comparison, the article *le, la, les*, agrees in gender and number with the substantive which is the object of comparison; but in the superlative absolute, that is, when no comparison is expressed, the article *le* remains invariable, 360.

The art. is not used when substantives are combined with certain verbs; as, *avoir, faire, rendre, entendre*, and a few more, with which they express a single idea, 297.

The art. *le, la, les*, is used instead of a possessive adj. before a regimen, when the sense clearly shows who the possessor is. 25.—This substitution is particularly proper before the name of a part of the body, or of a mental faculty; but, in order to avoid ambiguity, care must be taken to make use of a pronoun showing who the possessor is, 303.

The prep. *à* and *de* combine with *le* and *les*, with which they form the compounds *au, aux, du, and des*, 19.

De is often a definitive, either alone or combined with the art. *le, la, les*, and is then called a partitive article, corresponding to the English words *some* and *any*. The two words *de le* are contracted into one word, *du*; and *de les* are contracted into *des*; but the words *de la* remain separate, 38.—The use of this partitive article is more frequent in French than is the use of *some* and *any* in English, and occurs when these words are understood or altogether suppressed, 159.—The art. is suppressed, and *de* alone is employed, when the substantive is preceded by an adjective. 38.

Assaillir, to assail—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Assaillant*.—Past part. *Assailli*.—Indicative mood, present tense: *J'assaille, tu assailles, il assaille, nous assaillons, vous assailliez, ils assaillent*.—Imperfect tense: *J'assaillais, tu assaillais, il assaillait, nous assaillions, vous assailliez, ils assaillaient*.—Past tense definite, regular.—Fut. tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Assaille, assaillons, assailliez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que j'assaille, que tu assailles, qu'il assaille, que nous assaillions, que vous assailliez, qu'ils assaillent*.—Past tense, regular.

Asseoir, to seat.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Asseyant*.—Past part. *Assis*.—

Indicative mood, pres. tense: *J'assieds, tu assieds, il assied, nous asseyons, vous asseyez, ils assient*.—Imperfect tense: *J'asseyais, tu asseyais, il asseyait, nous asseyions, vous asseyiez, ils asseyaient*.—Past tense definite: *J'assis, tu assis, il assit, nous assimes, vous assites, ils assirent*.—Future tense: *J'assiérai, tu assiéras, il assiéra, nous assiérons, vous assiériez, ils assiéraient*—or, *J'asseyerai, etc.*—Conditional mood: *J'assiérais, tu assiérais, il assièrait, nous assiérions, vous assiériez, ils assiéraient*—or, *J'asseyerais, etc.*—Imperative mood: *Assieds, asseyons, asseyez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que j'asseie, que tu asseies, qu'il asseie, que nous asseyions, que vous asseyiez, qu'ils asseient*.—Subjunct. past: *Que j'assisse, que tu assisses, qu'il assît, que nous assissions, que vous assissiez, qu'ils assissent*.—This verb may also be conjugated as follows: *Assoyant*.—*J'assois, etc., nous assoyons, etc.*—*J'assoiais, etc.*—*J'assoirai, etc.*—*J'assoirais, etc.*—*Assois, assoyons, assoyez*.—*Que j'assoie*.—It is most often used reflectively, in the sense of, to sit down, thus: *S'asseoir, etc.*

Assez, enough.—Adverb, which precedes the adjective, the adverb, or the subst., which it modifies.

ATION.—Termination of numerous substantives, from which verbs may be obtained by changing *ation* into *er*, 112.

AU.—Termination. Nouns and adjectives ending in *au* form their plural with *x*, instead of *s*, 124.

Au, to the, at the.—Contraction of *a* and *le*, 19.

Aucun.—Indefinite pronominal adj., corresponding to *any*, and with a negation, to *no, none, not one*. It is seldom used in the plural. Its fem. is *aucune*, 105. *Pas de*, like *aucun*, corresponds to *no*, or *not any*; but it differs from *aucun*, inasmuch as it refers to the pl. as well as the sing., and has, besides, a more indefinite sense. The combination *un* remains nasal, even when the *n* coalesces with the initial vowel of another word.

Au moins, at least.—After this adverb, the subject pron. may follow the verb, 98.

Auprès, near.—Is an adverb and a prep. *Près* and *auprès* are both

translated by the word *near*. When used as prep. they are followed by *de*. The difference between these two words is slight. *Auprès* denotes well known and determined proximity; *près* has something more vague. Thus we say, *Plus près, moins près*, and not, *Plus auprès, moins auprès*, 321.

Aussi.—Adverb. Corresponds to *also, too, likewise, so, and as*; with the last meaning, before adj. and adv., it denotes equality, and requires *que* after the adjective or the adv.—After *aussi*, in the sense of *also*, the subject pron. may follow the verb, 98.—As an adv. of comparison, it must be repeated before each adj., v., or adv., which it modifies.—In English, after *so* and *as*, the indefinite art. *a, an*, is placed between the next adj. and subst. In French, the adverb *aussi* is preceded by *un, une*, 193.—In the comparative of equality, the word *as* is expressed by *aussi* before the adj., the part., or the adverb, and by *que* after it, 54.

Aussitôt, as soon.—See *Tôt*, 339.

Autant.—Adverb denoting quantity, and corresponding to *as much, as many; so much, so many*. The conjunction *as*, following these adverbs, is rendered by *que*.

Automne, autumn.—Is of both genders. Oftener masc. than fem.

Autrui.—Subst. or indefinite pronoun, signifying *another, or others*. Is invariable.

Aux.—Contraction of *à les*, to the, at the, 19.

Auxiliary Verbs.—See *Avoir* and *Etre*.

Avant, before.—Prep. Must not be confounded with *devant*, before, which simply denotes place or situation. *Avant* refers chiefly to priority of time.

Avec.—Prep., corresponding to *with*.—The ellipsis of this prep. is common in such phrases as the following: *Le sac sur le dos, Le fusil sur l'épaule*, 341.

Avoir, to have.—Irr. v.—For its conjugation, see p. 16.—Employed, like the verb *to have*, in English, in forming the compound tenses of the other verbs, except the pronominal and some neuter verbs, 129, 146.—There are various states, dispositions, and sensations, both of body and

mind, expressed in English by the verb *to be*, joined to an adj., which are generally rendered in French by means of the verb *avoir*, with a substantive.

Having, placed as an auxiliary between a prep. and a v., is sometimes suppressed in English, and the principal v. is governed directly by the prep. thus: *After making*, for *After having made*. This abbreviation would not be correct in French, 320.

Y AVOIR, there to be, is impersonal. Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Il y a*, there is, there are.—Imperfect: *Il y avait*, there was, there were.—Past tense definite: *Il y eut*, there was, there were.—Future tense: *Il y aura*, there will be.—Conditional mood: *Il y aurait*, there would be.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Qu'il y ait*, that there may be.—Subjunct. past: *Qu'il y eût*, that there might be.—In interrogations, *y* remains before the verb, and *il* is placed after it, thus: *Y a-t-il*, is there? *Y avait-il*, was there? etc., 100.

The verb *y avoir* is frequently used before words denoting the time elapsed since an event took place, or the time during which a state or an action has been continued. The *que* which follows signifies *since*, 350.—When *Il y a*, denoting time elapsed, precedes the principal v., the word *que*, signifying *since*, is required; but when the principal v. is placed first, *que* is of course unnecessary.

Battre, to beat.—Irr. v., only in the three persons sing. of the present tense, indic. mood: *Je bats*, *tu bats*, *il bat*. The second person sing. of the imperative is of course *bats*, 247. The rest of this verb is regular.—*Abattre*, *combattre*, *débattre*, *rabattre*, and *rebattre*, are conjugated like *battre*.

Beau, fine.—*Bel*, before a subst. beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute.—Fem., *belle*.

Béni, blessed, holy.—Feminine, *bénite*.—Irr. part. of the verb *bénir*, only used in the sense of, consecrated by the church. In all other cases, the past part. of *bénir* is regular.

Bien, well.—Before adj. and adv. corresponds to *very*, 51.—Becomes a synonym of *beaucoup* when it is com-

bined with the compound article *du*, *de la*, *des*, and corresponds to *much* and *many*, 101.—The letters *ien* form a nasal diphthong, even when the final *n* of *bien* coalesces with the initial vowel of another word.

Bientôt, soon.—See *Tôt*, 339.

Boire, to drink.—Irr. v.—See p. 154.

Bouillir, to boil.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Bouillant*.—Past part. *Bouilli*.—Indic. mood, pres. tense: *Je bous*, *tu bous*, *il bout*, *nous bouillons*, *vous bouillez*, *ils bouillent*.—Imperf. tense: *Je bouillais*, *tu bouillais*, *il bouillait*, *nous bouillions*, *vous bouilliez*, *ils bouillaient*.—Past tense definite, regular.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Bous*, *bouillons*, *bouillez*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que je bouille*, *que tu bouilles*, *qu'il bouille*, *que nous bouillions*, *que vous bouilliez*, *qu'ils bouillent*.—Subjunct. past, regular.

Braire, to bray.—Irr. v., conjugated like *traire*, but scarcely ever used otherwise than in the third person, singular and plural, and in the infinitive.

Bruire, to make a noise.—Irr. v., and defective, employed only in the infinitive mood; in the third person sing. of the pres. tense, indic. mood, *Il bruit*; and in the third person singular and plural of the imperfect, *Il bruissait*, *ils bruissaient*.

By.—This prep., when used in English before the present part., to denote the means or the manner of doing any thing, is rendered in French by *en*, 263.

Ça.—Familiar abbreviation of *cela*, which see.

Ce—Is sometimes a demonstrative pronoun, and sometimes a demonstrative adjective. As an adjective, it signifies *this* and *that*. It is masc. and sing. It always precedes a substantive. It is placed before words beginning with a consonant. Before a vowel, it becomes *cet*. The fem. is *cette*. The plural of both genders is *ces*, these and those, 69, 70.

Ce, as a pronoun, generally corresponds to *it*. It is followed by the verb *être*, or by a relative pronoun. Though the neuter gender is not acknowledged by French grammarians.

and indeed does not exist in substantives, this pron. presents the characteristics of neutrality, 7. When it precedes a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, the vowel *e* is suppressed, and an apostrophe substituted for it, 4.—*Ce*, before the verb *être*, requires this verb to be in the singular, unless it be followed by a third person of the pl. number, when the major part of writers employ the verb *être* in the plural.

Ceci, this.—Demonstrative pron., formed of *ce* and *ci*, here. Refers to things only. Has no fem. and no pl. See p. 146.

Cedilla.—A small mark placed under the letter *c* (thus, *ç*), in order to give it the sound of *s* before *a*, *o*, and *u*. See Introductory Lesson.—Verbs ending in the infinitive mood in *cer* take a cedilla under the *c* before the vowels *a* and *o*, 302.

Ceindre, to circle.—Irr. v., conjugated like *craindre*, 300.

Cela, that.—Demonstrative pron., formed of *ce* and *là*, there. Corresponds to *that*, and sometimes to *this* and to *it*. Refers to things only. Has no fem. and no pl. In familiar language, chiefly in conversation, it is contracted into *ça*. See p. 146.

Celui, this, that.—Demonstrative pron. The fem. is *celle*. The plural is *ceux* for the masculine, and *celles* for the feminine, both corresponding to *these* and *those*, 177.

Cent, hundred.—Takes the mark of the pl. when preceded by another number which multiplies it, thus: *deux cents*, *trois cents*, 275.—But when followed by another number, it is invariable, thus: *deux cent trente*, 276.

CER. Termination.—Verbs ending in the infinitive mood in *cer* take a cedilla under the *c*, before the vowels *a* and *o*, in order that the *c* may preserve the sound of *s*, 302.

C'est pourquoi, therefore.—This adverb must be placed at the beginning of a sentence, or of a clause of a sentence.

Cet—Stands for *ce*, before a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, 69.

Chacun.—Indefinite pron. formed of *chaque*, every, and *un*, one. Corresponds to *each*, *every one*, *everybody*. Its fem. is *chacune*. It has no plural.

When used in a general sense, it refers only to persons, and is always masculine. When it relates to some determined object, it takes either of the genders, and is used in speaking of things as well as of persons. Before a substantive or a pronoun, it is followed by *de*, 311.

Chez.—Prep., signifying, *at* or *in the house of*. It corresponds also to *home*; and is used in the sense of *among*, *with*, or *in*, 80.

Choir, to fall.—V. irr. and defective, used only in the infinitive, and sometimes in the past part. *chu*, with the auxiliary *être*.

Chose, thing.—Is a fem. substantive. But *peu de chose*, little, and *quelque chose*, something, any thing, are adverbial forms which are masc.

Ci.—Abbreviation of the adv. *ici*, here. Is sometimes added to substantives which come after the demonstrative adjectives *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, and *ces*, as an expletive denoting nearness, in opposition to *là*, which marks remoteness. *Ci* is joined to the preceding word by a hyphen, 70.—*Ci* is likewise added to the demonstrative pron. *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, and *celles*, 177.

Ciel, heaven.—Has two forms in the plural, *ciels* and *cieux*. *Ciels* is used only in the following instances: *Ciels de tableaux*, skies in painting; *ciels de lit*, testers of a bed; *ciels de carrière*, the first layers or strata in a quarry; *ciels*, climates. In any other case, *cieux* is employed. See p. 70.

Circoncire, to circumcise.—Irr. v.—Pres. part *Circoncisant*.—Past part. *Circoncis*.—Indic. mood, pres. tense: *Je circoncis*, *tu circoncis*, *il circoncit*, *nous circoncisons*, *vous circoncisez*, *ils circoncisent*.—Imperfect: *Je circoncissais*, *tu circoncissais*, *il circoncissait*, *nous circoncissions*, *vous circoncissiez*, *ils circoncissaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je circoncis*, *tu circoncis*, *il circoncit*, *nous circoncîmes*, *vous circoncîtes*, *ils circoncirent*.—Fut. tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Circoncis*, *circoncisons*, *circoncisez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je circoncise*, *que tu circoncises*, *qu'il circoncise*, *que nous circoncissions*, *que vous circoncissiez*, *qu'ils circoncissent*.—Subjunctive past: *Que je circoncisse*, *que tu circoncisses*, *qu'il circoncît*, *que nous circon-*

cissions, que vous circonciissiez, qu'ils circonciissent.

Clore, to close.—V. irr. and defective; used only in the three persons singular of the pres. tense, indicative mood, *Je clos, tu clos, il clot*; in the future tense, which is regular; in the conditional mood, which is regular; and in the compound tenses. The past part. is *clos*.

Collectives.—There are two sorts of collective words: the general and the partitive. The general collective words are those which denote the whole of the persons or things spoken of; as, *the army, the multitude, the people, the crowd*. The partitive collective words designate but a part of an undetermined number of the persons or things mentioned; as, *the major part, a number, a species, a sort*. Among the latter are included the adverbs of quantity; as, *peu*, few; *beaucoup*, many, etc.—A noun of multitude in the singular number requires that the verb or pronoun should agree with it in the sing. number, unless it be employed as a partitive collective noun, 332.

Combien.—Adv., corresponding to *how, how much, and how many*.

Comme.—Adv. and conj., corresponding to *as, like, and how*.

Comparative.—There are two ways of forming the comparative degree in English, when it denotes superiority; as, *brisker, or more brisk*: there is but one in French; the adv. *plus* is placed before the adjective or the adverb, 51.—When, in English, the conjunction *than* follows, it is rendered by *que*, 53.—The same conjunction follows *moins*, less, when the comparative denotes inferiority. In the comparative of equality, the word *as* is expressed by *aussi* before the adjective, the participle, or the adverb, and by *que* after it, 54.

Compound tenses.—See TENSES.

Concevoir, to conceive.—Irr. v., conjugated like *devoir*. See p. 232.

Conclure, to conclude.—Irr. v.—Present part. *Concluant*.—Past part. *Conclu*.—Indic. mood, present tense: *Je conclus, tu conclus, il conclut, nous concluons, vous concluez, ils concluent*.—Imperf. tense, regular.—Past tense definite: *Je conclus, tu conclus, il conclut, nous conclûmes, vous conclûtes,*

ils conclurent.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Conclus, concluons, concluez*.—Subjunctive mood, present tense, regular.—Subjunctive past: *Que je conclusse, que tu conclusses, qu'il conclût, que nous conclusions, que vous conclussiez, qu'ils conclussent*.

Conditional mood.—This mood is formed by adding the following terminations to that of the infinitive, the final *e* being suppressed in the verbs in *re*: *ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient*, 199.—It is to be observed that these terminations are the same which serve to form the imperfect tense of the indicative, by being substituted for that of the infinitive mood.—When *quand* signifies *though, although*, it is always followed by a verb in the conditional mood, 180.—When the conj. *si* corresponds to the English word *if*, and signifies *supposing that*, the verb that follows the conjunction is used in the pres. tense of the indicative with the correlative verb of the phrase in the future; or the conjunction is followed by the imperfect tense, with the second verb in the conditional mood. But when *si* corresponds to the English conj. *whether*, and expresses doubt, it may be followed by the conditional mood or the future tense, according to the sense of the sentence, 188.

Conduire, to conduct.—Irr. v.—See p. 162.

Confire, to preserve.—Irr. v.—Present part. *Confisant*.—Past part. *Confit*.—Indic. mood, present tense: *Je confis, tu confis, il confit, nous confisons, vous confisez, ils confisent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je confisais, tu confisais, il confisait, nous confisions, vous confisiez, ils confisaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je confis, tu confis, il confit, nous confimes, vous confites, ils confirent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Confis, confisons, confisez*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que je confise, que tu confises, qu'il confise, que nous confisions, que vous confisiez, qu'ils confisent*.—Subjunct. past, not in use.

Conjugations.—See 86, 87, and pp. 55, 62, 70. See, also, VERBS and TENSES.

Conjunctions.—The principal

conjunctions are : *Ainsi que, à moins que, car, comme, donc, et, lorsque, mais, ni, or, ou, pourvu que, parce que, pendant que, quand, que, quoique, si, sinon, soit que, tandis que.* Those which present any peculiarity will be found explained in their respective alphabetical place.

Connaitre, to know.—Irr. v.—See p. 291.

Construire, to construct.—Irr. v., conjugated like *conduire*, 189.

Contraindre, to constrain.—Irr. v., conjugated like *craindre*, 300.

Coudre, to sew.—Irr. v.—Present part. *Cousant*.—Past part. *Cousu*.—Indicative mood, present tense : *Je couds, tu couds, il coud, nous cousons, vous cousez, ils cousent*.—Imperfect tense : *Je cousais, tu cousais, il cousait, nous cousions, vous cousiez, ils cousaient*.—Past tense definite : *Je cousis, tu cousis, il cousit, nous cousîmes, vous cousîtes, ils cousirent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood : *Couds, cousons, cousez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense : *Que je couse, que tu couses, qu'il couse, que nous cousions, que vous cousiez, qu'ils cousent*.—Subjunctive past : *Que je cousisse, que tu cousisses, qu'il cousît, que nous cousissions, que vous cousissiez, qu'ils cousissent*.

Couple, couple.—Masc. by exception, when it signifies two animated beings acting in concert, or two persons or animals of different sexes : but when *couple* signifies only two things of the same kind, it is feminine, 158.

Courir, to run.—Irr. v.—See page 143.

Courre, to run, to hunt.—Irr. v., conjugated like *courir*. Seldom used, except in the language of hunters.

Couvrir, to cover.—Irr. v., conjugated like *ouvrir*, 250.

Craindre, to fear.—Irr. v.—See p. 274.—All verbs ending in *indre* are conjugated like *craindre*.

Croire, to believe.—Irr. v.—See p. 169.

Croître, to grow.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Croissant*.—Past part. *Crû*.—Indicative mood, present tense : *Je crois, tu crois, il croît, nous croissons, vous croissez, ils croissent*.—Imperfect : *Je croissais, tu croissais, il croissait,*

nous croissions, vous croissiez, ils croissaient.—Past tense definite : *Je crûs, tu crûs, il crût, nous crûmes, vous crûtes, ils crurent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood : *Crois, croissons, croissez*.—Subjunctive mood, present tense : *Que je croisse, que tu croisses, qu'il croisse, que nous croissions, que vous croissiez, qu'ils croissent*.—Subjunctive past : *Que je crusse, que tu crusses, qu'il crût, que nous crussions, que vous crussiez, qu'ils crussent*.

Cueillir, to gather.—Irr. v.—Pronounced as if spelled (in French), *keuillir*.—Pres. part. *Cueillant*.—Past part. *Cueilli*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense : *Je cueille, tu cueilles, il cueille, nous cueillons, vous cueillez, ils cueillent*.—Imperfect : *Je cueillais, tu cueillais, il cueillait, nous cueillions, vous cueilliez, ils cueillaient*.—Past tense definite : *Je cueillis, tu cueillis, il cueillit, nous cueillîmes, vous cueillîtes, ils cueillirent*.—Fut. tense : *Je cueillerai, tu cueilleras, il cueillera, nous cueillerons, vous cueillerez, ils cueilleront*.—Conditional mood : *Je cueillerais, tu cueillerais, il cueillerait, nous cueillerions, vous cueilleriez, ils cueilleraient*.—Imperative mood : *Cueille, cueillons, cueillez*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense : *Que je cueille, que tu cueilles, qu'il cueille, que nous cueillions, que vous cueilliez, qu'ils cueillent*.—Subjunct. past : *Que je cueillisse, que tu cueillisses, qu'il cueillît, que nous cueillissions, que vous cueillissiez, qu'ils cueillissent*.—*Accueillir* and *recueillir* are conjugated like *cueillir*.

Cuire, to cook.—Irr. v., conjugated like *conduire*, 189.

Dame, lady.—See **MADAME**, or 327, 328.

Dans.—Preposition corresponding to *in, into, and within*, 84.

De.—Prep. One of the most important among the French prepositions. Generally corresponds to *of* and *from* in English ; but, besides, is often rendered by *to, with, by, on, in*, or by the sign of the possessive case ('s), 20.—When it precedes a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, the *e* is suppressed, and an apostrophe substituted for it, 18.

This prep. is required between an adv. of quantity and a subst., 155.—

Is also used as a determinative, either alone or combined with the article *le, la, les*.—The article is suppressed, and *de* alone is employed, when the substantive is preceded by an adj., 38.

The prep. *de* must be repeated before each substantive, adjective, pronoun, or verb which it governs.

List of verbs which govern the infinitive with *de*, 212; with either *à* or *de*, 214.

Between a verb and a substantive denoting the cause of the state or action which this verb expresses, or the thing made use of to attain to it, the prep. *with* is very often rendered in French by *de*, 110.

De must be prefixed to an adjective which follows *rien*, nothing, or an indefinite expression, such as *quelque chose*, something, any thing; *que*, what, 182.

The choice between *de* and *par*, after a passive verb, is sometimes a cause of doubt, even for the French. In general, *de* is preferable between a passive verb and the name of the agent, when the verb expresses a feeling, as *chéri, estimé*; and *par* is more properly employed when the verb expresses an action, as *battre, punir*, 356.

Decevoir, to deceive.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *devoir*. See p. 232.

Déchoir, to decline.—Irr. v.—No pres. part.—Past part. *déchu*.—Indic. mood, pres. tense: *Je déchois, tu déchois, il déchoit, nous déchoyons, vous déchoyez, ils déchoient*.—Imperf. tense not in use.—Past tense definite: *Je déchus, tu déchus, il déchut, nous déchûmes, vous déchûtes, ils déchurent*.—Future tense: *Je décherrai, tu décherras, il décherra, nous décherrons, vous décherez, ils décherront*.—Pronounce *rr* as double.—Conditional mood: *Je décherrais, tu décherrais, il décherrait, nous décherrions, vous décheriez, ils décherraient*.—Pronounce *rr* as double.—Imperative mood: *Déchois, déchoyons, déchoyez*.—Subjunctive mood, present tense: *Que je déchoie, que tu déchoies, qu'il déchoie, que nous déchoyions, que vous déchoyiez, qu'ils déchoient*.—Subjunctive past: *Que je déchusse, que tu déchusses, qu'il déchût, que nous déchussions, que vous déchussiez, qu'ils déchussent*.—It is conjugated with *avoir*, when it expresses

an action; and with *être*, when it expresses a state.

De crainte que, lest.—Conj., followed by the subjunctive mood.

Déduire, to deduct.—Irr. v., conjugated like *conduire*. See p. 162.

Défaillir, to faint.—Irr. v., used only in the following forms: Present part. *Défaillant*.—Past part. *Défailli*.—Indic. mood, present tense: *Nous défail lions, vous défaillez, ils défont*.—Imperfect: *Je défail lais, tu défail lais, il défail lait, nous défail lions, vous défail liez, ils défail laient*.—Past tense definite: *Je défail lis, tu défail lis, il défail lit, nous défail limes, vous défail lites, ils défail lèrent*.—In the past tense indefinite: *J'ai défail li, etc.*, and in the infinitive.

Degrees of comparison.—Are not usually formed in French by means of a termination, but by placing before the adjective or adverb one of the following adverbs: *Aussi*, as; *plus*, more, most; *moins*, less, least; *très, fort, bien*, very, 51.

Demeurer, to dwell.—Conjugated with *avoir*, when the subject has ceased to be in a place; with *être*, when the subject is still in the same place or condition.

Demoiselle, lady.—See MADEMOISELLE, 330, 331.

Demonstrative.—See ADJECTIVES and PRONOUNS.

De peur que, lest.—Conjunction followed by the subjunctive mood.

Des.—Art. pl.—Contraction of *de les*, 19.

Dessous.—Is either an adv. signifying *under* or *below*, or a substantive signifying *under part*. It is seldom used as a preposition. *Au-dessous*, under, beneath, below, is always an adverb, unless it be followed by *de*, in which case it becomes a prep., and requires a regimen. The same observations are applicable to *dessus*, 340.

Dessus, on.—See DESSOUS.

Détruire, to destroy.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *conduire*. See p. 162.

Devant, before.—Prep. denoting place, and corresponding to *before, in front of, opposite to, ahead of*. It is also used as an adverb. Must not be confounded with *avant*, which see.

Devoir, to owe, ought.—Irr. v.—See p. 232.

The English verb *ought*, being de-

fective, has no form corresponding to the past. part *dû*. This deficiency gives rise to different constructions, which may all be reduced to a single one in French: *dû* forming a compound tense with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, and being followed by an infinitive, 353.

Diæresis.—The diæresis (¨), placed over one of two vowels, denotes that they are to be separated, 274.

Dimension.—In English, the usual manner of expressing dimensions is to employ the verb *to be*, with the noun of measure followed by an adjective; as, *An eel which was three feet long*. In French, the verb *être* may also be employed, with the adj. and the preposition *de* preceding the measure, thus: *Une anguille qui était longue de trois pieds*; but the construction with the verb *avoir* is more commonly used, thus: *Une anguille qui avait trois pieds de longueur*. The measure immediately follows *avoir*, and precedes *de* and a substantive of dimension. When neither *être* nor *avoir* is used, an adjective of dimension, with *de*, may precede the measure, thus: *Une anguille longue de trois pieds*; or the measure, with *de* before and after it, may precede a substantive of dimension, thus: *Une anguille de trois pieds de longueur*, 154.

Dire, to say.—Irr. v.—See p. 188.

Redire, to say again, is conjugated exactly like *dire*.

Contredire, to contradict; *dédire*, to gainsay; *interdire*, to interdict; *médire*, to slander; and *prédire*, to foretell, are conjugated like *dire*, except that the second person plural of the pres. tense, indicative mood, and the same person of the imperative, is *contredisez*, *dédisez*, *interdisez*, *médisez*, and *prédisez*, 216.

Maudire, to curse, is conjugated like the regular verbs in *ir*; but its past part. is *maudit*.

Dont.—Relative pronoun of both genders and numbers. It is used in speaking of persons or of things. It has the different significations of *de qui*, *de quoi*, *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, and *desquelles*; and therefore corresponds to the English expressions, *whose*, *of whom*, *from whom*, *of which*, *from which*. Although these

pronouns have the same meaning as *dont*, they cannot be used indiscriminately for it. *Dont* is generally used after *ce*, rather than *de quoi*, 203.

When *dont* signifies *whose*, and accordingly determines the sense of a substantive, that substantive must always be preceded by the article; and if it is the regimen of a verb, it must be placed after the verb, instead of following the pronoun, as it does in English, 233.

If the substantive determined by *dont* is the subject of the verb, it occupies the same place as in English, but it is still preceded by the art., 234.

Dont is never preceded by a prep. Accordingly, when *whose* follows a prep., it must be rendered by *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, or *desquelles*, placed after the substantive in connection with *whose*, 253.

When *of which* is used in the sense of *whose*, and rendered by *dont*, the construction is the same as that pointed out by rules 233 and 234, and this pronoun must never follow the substantive which it determines, 279.

Dormir, to sleep.—Irr. v.—See p. 310.

Du, of the, from the.—Contraction of *de le*, 19.

E, final.—When a termination beginning with a vowel is added to a word ending in *e* mute, the *e* mute is suppressed, as in *quatrième*, from *quatre*.

Échoir, to fall, to become due.—Irr. v.—Present part. *Echéant*.—Past part. *Echu*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *J'échois*, *tu échois*, *il échoit*, *nous échoyons*, *vous échoyez*, *ils échoient*.—Imperfect, not in use.—Past tense definite: *J'échus*, *tu échus*, *il échut*, *nous échûmes*, *vous échûtes*, *ils échurent*.—Future tense: *J'écherrai*, *tu écherras*, *il écherra*, *nous écherrons*, *vous écherez*, *ils écherront*. Pronounce *rr* as double.—Conditional mood: *J'écherrais*, *tu écherrais*, *il écherrait*, *nous écherrions*, *vous écheriez*, *ils écherraient*. Pronounce *rr* as double.—No imperative mood.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense, not in use.—Subjunctive past: *Que j'échusse*, *que tu échusses*, *qu'il échût*, *que nous échussions*, *que vous échussiez*, *qu'ils échussent*.—Scarcely ever used but in the

third persons, singular and plural, in the infinitive, and in the participles.

Éclorre, to hatch.—IRR. v.—Used only in the infinitive mood; the past part. *éclos*; and in the third persons, singular and plural, of the following tenses: Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Il éclôt, ils éclosent*.—Future tense: *Il éclora, ils écloront*.—Conditional mood: *Il éclorait, ils écloreraient*.—Subjunctive mood, present tense: *Qu'il éclose, qu'ils éclosent*;—and in the compound tenses with *être*.

Écrire, to write.—IRR. v.—See p. 177.

ÉE.—This termination, in substantives, commonly denotes the whole, the sum total of that which is expressed by the radical, as in *jour-née*, a whole day, from *jour*, day. This termination also corresponds in many substantives to the English termination *ful*, or *full*, as in *bouchée*, monthful, from *bouche*, mouth, 148.

ÉER.—Termination. Verbs ending in *éer* retain the acute accent, in all their forms. Their past part. ends in *éé* in the masculine, and in *éée* in the feminine, 283.

ÉGER.—Termination. Verbs ending in *éger* retain the acute accent in all their forms, 283.—In their conjugation, the *g* is always followed by *e* mute before the vowels *a*, *o*, 120.

ÉIL.—Termination. Adjectives ending in *éil* form their feminine by doubling the final consonant, and adding *e* mute, 85.

ÉL.—Termination. There are about ninety adjectives ending in *él* in French, and in *al* in English, with scarcely any other difference than the change of *a* into *e*, 97.—Adjectives ending in *él* form their feminine by doubling the final consonant, and adding *e* mute, 85.

ÉLER.—Termination. Verbs ending in *éler*, as *appeler*, to call, double the consonant *l* before *e* mute, thus: *J'appelle, nous appellerons*, 224. Are excepted: *Geler*, to freeze; *peler*, to peel. In these the *l* is not doubled, but a grave accent modifies the sound of the first *e*, just as a double consonant would do, 225.—The termination *éler* must not be confounded with *éler*, 226.

ÉLER.—Termination. Verbs ending in *éler*, as *réveler* to reveal,

change the acute accent (') into a grave accent (`), without doubling the *l* before *e* mute, thus: *Je révèle*, 226.

Elision.—When the monosyllables, *je, me, te, se, ne, que, ce* (pron.), *le*, and *de*, precede a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, the vowel *e* is suppressed and an apostrophe is substituted for it. *La* loses its vowel in the same case, 4.—The elision of the *i* in *si* takes place only before the pron. *il* and its plural *ils*, 58.

Elle.—Personal pron. corresponding to *she, her*, and *it*. It is fem. and sing. *Elles* is fem. and plural, and corresponds to *they* and *them*, 68.—Both are used as subjects referring to persons and to things. They are also used as regimens, and then refer to persons more frequently than to things. See pp. 208 and 209.

EMMENT.—Termination. Adverbs of quality are derived from adjectives ending in *ent*, by changing this termination into *emment*, in which the first *e* has the short acute sound of the *a* in *fat*. The exceptions to the foregoing rule are: *Lentement*, from *lent*, slow; *présentement*, from *présent*, present; and *véhémentement*, from *véhément*, vehement, 111.

En.—Relative pron., which sometimes refers to persons, but is more frequently applied to things. It is invariable, and of both genders and numbers. It is generally equivalent to *de la, de celui, de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles*, and in consequence is rendered in English by *thence, of that, of him, of her, of it, of them*, or *from that, by that, with that*, etc. In speaking of things, it is often substituted for the possessive adjectives *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs*, and then it corresponds to *its* and *their*. It is sometimes partitive, and signifies *some, or any*, 113.—When *its* and *their* refer to a thing which is not the subject of the proposition, they are rendered by *en*.—*En*, when it is a pronoun, is always placed before the verb, except in the imperative mood, 115.—When *some, or any*, is the direct regimen of a verb, it is rendered by *en*, 114.

The pron. *en*, signifying *of it, of that, of them*, is employed in French with adjectives of number or adverbs of quantity, when there is an ante-

cedent in the phrase, 293.—The pronoun *en* is sometimes employed without reference to any thing clearly defined, and is, in fact, a mere expletive. The English expressions, *To make a night of it*, *To have the worst of it*, may serve to explain this redundancy, 308.

En.—Prep. Its sense is the same with that of *dans*, in; but these two prepositions cannot be used indiscriminately, 84.—*En* has a vague and indefinite sense, being very seldom followed by a definitive.—*En* is the only prep. that immediately precedes the pres. participle, 57.—It must be repeated before each substantive, adjective, pronoun, or verb which it governs.—The prep. *by*, used in English before the pres. part. to denote the means or the manner of doing any thing, is rendered in French by *en*, 263.—*En* remains nasal, even when its *n* coalesces with the initial vowel of another word.

ENCE.—Termination. Belongs to substantives which are the same in both languages, 78.

Encore, yet, still.—The subject pronoun may follow the verb, 337.

Enfant, child.—In the singular it is of either gender, according to the sex of the child referred to; but in the plural it is always masculine, 185.

ENT.—Termination. Common to adjectives and substantives, about 130 of which are the same in both languages, 22.

Termination of the third person pl. in every tense, except the future. The three letters *ent* are silent.

Envoyer, to send.—V. irregular only in the future tense and the conditional mood.—Future: *J'enverrai*, *tu enverras*, *il enverra*, *nous enverrons*, *vous enverrez*, *ils enverront*.—Conditional: *J'enverrais*, *tu enverrais*, *il enverrait*, *nous enverrions*, *vous enverriez*, *ils enverraient*.—See, also, *verbs in YER*, 292.

ER.—Termination of about five thousand French verbs in the infinitive mood, 88.

ÉRIEUR.—Termination. Adjectives ending in *érieur* form their fem. according to the general rule.

ESSE.—Termination added to about forty adjectives, to form them into substantives. It denotes the

abstract of that which is expressed by the radical, 204.

Est (II).—Is sometimes used with the impersonal signification of *Il y a* (there is, there are), but denotes a more general statement, and, besides, is less familiar.

Est-ce que.—Interrogations, in French, are often formed by placing *est-ce que* before the subject, followed by the verb, as: *Est-ce que vous savez?* Do you know? *Est-ce que nous pensons?* Do we think?—This form is familiar, 35, 36, 37.

Et, and.—The *t* is invariably mute, except in *et cætera*. After *vingt*, *trente*, *quarante*, *cinquante*, *soixante*, and *mille*, the numeral adj. *un* requires the conj. *et* before it. *Onze* requires it only after *soixante*. In any other combination of numbers, the conj. *et* is not employed, 157.

ET.—Termination. Adj. ending in *et* form their fem. by doubling the final consonant, and adding *e* mute. The exceptions are: *Complet*, *concret*, *discret*, *inquiet*, *replet*, *secret*.

Été, been.—This participle is invariable, 260.

ETER.—Termination. Verbs ending in *eter*, as *jeter*, to throw, double the consonant *t* before *e* mute, thus: *Je jette*, *nous jetterons*, 224.—A few verbs are excepted, 225. In these the *t* is not doubled, but a grave accent modifies the sound of the first *e*, just as a double consonant would do. The termination *eter* must not be confounded with *éter*.

ETER.—Termination. Verbs ending in *éter*, as *répéter*, to repeat, change the acute accent (') into a grave accent (`), without doubling the *t* before *e* mute, thus: *Je répète*, 226.

Etre, to be.—One of the two auxiliaries. It serves to form the passive voice, 150. It is also used in the compound tenses of certain verbs, particularly the pronominal ones, 129, 146.

EU.—Termination. Substantives ending in *eu* form their plural with *x* instead of *s*, 124.

EUR.—Termination. In abstract substantives, denotes a state or a quality.—Most of such substantives are derived from adjectives, as *grandeur*, from *grand*.—Abstract substantives ending in *eur* are fem. The ex-

ceptions are: *Bonheur, déshonneur, honneur, tabeur, malheur*, 48, 49.

Adjectives ending in *eur* have their feminine in *euse* when they can be derived from a present participle by changing the termination *ant* into *eur*; as, *flattant, flatteur*, from the verb *flatter*, 186.

EUX.—Termination. Found in a great number of adjectives, about 200 of which end in *ous* in English, without any or with scarcely any other difference, 63.—The fem. of these adjectives ends in *euse*, 64.

Eux.—Personal pron., generally corresponding to *them*, and sometimes to *they*. It is masculine and plural, 93.

Excepté, except.—Past part. of the v. *excepter*, employed as a prep., and as such precedes the subst. which it governs, and is invariable.

F.—Termination. Adjectives ending in *f* form their fem. by changing this termination into *ve*, 42.

Faillir, to fail.—Irr. v.—Present part. *Faillant*.—Past part. *Failli*.—Indic. mood, present tense: *Je faux, tu faux, il faut, nous faillons, vous faillez, ils faillent*. Scarcely ever used.—Imperfect tense: *Je faillais, tu faillais, il faillait, nous faillions, vous failliez, ils faillaient*. Scarcely ever used.—Past tense definite: *Je faillis, tu faillis, il faillit, nous faillîmes, vous faillîtes, ils faillirent*.—The other simple tenses are not in use.

Faire, to do, to make.—Irr. v.—See p. 79.—Many persons pronounce the vowels *ai* like the *e* in *father*, in *faisant, faisons*, and in the whole of the imperfect tense.

Faire is commonly employed in phrases which denote that distance or space is gone over; as, *Faire un pas*, to take a step, etc., 169.

Faire corresponds to the verb *to be*, when employed impersonally in speaking of the weather; as, *Il fait froid*, it is cold, 366.

Faire, followed by an infinitive, often signifies, To cause something to be done, To order it to be done, To have, or to get it done, 325.

When *faire* is followed by an infinitive, it requires an indirect regimen if the infinitive has a direct one.

The regimen of *faire* would be direct, if the following infinitive had no such regimen. The reason of this is, that the verb *faire* so identifies itself with the next verb, that both together are considered as one verb, which is always active. Now, an active verb cannot have more than one direct regimen; so that if there are two regimens, one of them must of course be indirect. This explains the sentence, *Comment donc lui faire entendre raison?* How shall I make him hear reason?—See Third Lesson.

Falloir, must.—V. irr., used only in the third person sing.—No pres. part.—Past part. *Fallu*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Il faut*.—Imperfect tense: *Il fallait*.—Past tense definite: *Il fallut*.—Future tense: *Il faudra*.—Conditional mood: *Il faudrait*.—No imperative mood.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Qu'il faille*.—Subjunct. past: *Qu'il fallût*.

This verb, being impersonal, is generally followed by the subjunct. mood. However, in phrases in which the subject is undefined, and may be anybody, the verb that follows *falloir* may be employed in the infinitive mood, or in the subjunctive, with the indefinite pron. *on* as a subject.

Feindre, to feign.—Irr. v., conjugated like *craindre*, 300.

Feminine.—See GENDERS.

Feu, late.—The adjective *feu*, deceased, defunct, late, varies in gender only, not in number, when preceded by the article or a possessive adjective. Otherwise it is invariable. It never follows the substantive, and is seldom used in colloquial language.

FIER.—Termination. Corresponds to the English termination *fy*, as in *justifier*, to justify, 277.

Fleurir, to bloom.—This verb is regular in the sense of *to bloom*; but in the sense of *to be flourishing*, the third person singular of the imperfect is *florissait*, and the pres. part., *florissant*.

Fort.—As an adjective, signifies *strong*. As an adverb, is often used in the sense of *very*, as a synonym of *très* and *bien*, 51.

Fou, mad.—Formerly *fol*, which is still used before a substantive beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute. The fem. of *fou* and *fol* is *folle*.

Frîre, to fry.—V. irr. and defective.—No present part.—Past part. *Frit*.—Indic. mood, present tense, in the singular only: *Je fris, tu fris, il frit*.—No imperfect tense.—No past tense definite.—Fut. tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood, in the second person singular only: *Fris*.—No subjunctive mood.—The forms which are wanting are supplied by means of *faire* before *frîre*, thus: *Nous faisons frîre*, we fry, etc.

Fuir, to flee.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Fuyant*.—Past part. *Fui*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je fuis, tu fuis, il fuit, nous fuyons, vous fuyez, ils fuient*.—Imperfect tense: *Je fuyais, tu fuyais, il fuyait, nous fuyions, vous fuyiez, ils fuyaient*.—Past tense definite, regular.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Fuis, fuyons, fuyez*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que je fuie, que tu fuies, qu'il fuie, que nous fuyions, que vous fuyiez, qu'ils fuient*.—Subjunct. past, regular.

Future tense.—This tense is formed by adding the following terminations to that of the infinitive mood, the final *e* being suppressed in the verbs in *re*: *ai, as, a, ons, ez, ont*, 199, 200.

Genders.—There are two genders: the masculine and the feminine. All the substantives in the French language are either masc. or fem. There is no neuter gender, 2.—The gender of substantives is determined either by the sex or by the termination.—All the names of males are masculine, whatever may be their termination, and all the names of females are feminine.

Substantives ending in any other termination than *e* mute are generally masculine. Substantives ending in *e* muté are generally fem., 3.

Those parts of speech which, without being substantives, are accidentally used as such, are masculine, 183.

All the names of simple bodies or chemical elements, and salts, are masculine, 315, 316.—Those which end in *e* mute, and which accordingly form exceptions to the general rule, are: *Oxygène, hydrogène, azote* or *nitrogène, soufre, tellure, chlore*,

brôme, iode, phosphore, carbone, bore, lantane, didyme, manganèse, chrome, tungstène, molybdène, cuivre, mercure, titane, tantale, antimoine, platine.—To these must be added the generic words, *métalloïde* and *oxyde*.

Abstract substantives ending in *eur* are feminine, 48.—The following are masc. by exception: *Bonheur, malheur, honneur, deshonneur, labour*.

Substantives ending in *ion* are feminine, 26. *Bastion* is the only exception.

Substantives ending in *té* are feminine, 106.—The following are masc. by exception: *Aparté, arrêté, bénédicté, comité, comté, côté, député, été, jeté, pâté, précipité, traité*.

Substantives denoting titles, qualities, or professions which may belong to either sex, often produce feminine derivatives, by means of the same terminations that adjectives take to form their feminine, 329.

For the genders of adjectives, See ADJECTIVES.

Gens, people.—This substantive is masculine, but, by an arbitrary exception, the adj. which precedes it takes the feminine form, when its termination is not *e* mute. And if this adjective is itself preceded by a definitive, as *un, tout, or certain*, the definitive also takes the feminine form.—The adjective takes the feminine gender only when it precedes *gens*, and never when it follows it.—When the adjective placed immediately before *gens* ends in *e* mute, and therefore presents no difference between the masculine and the feminine gender, the definitive which precedes it remains masculine, 266.

GER.—Termination. In the conjugation of verbs ending in *ger*, the *g* is always followed by *e* mute before the vowels *a, o*, 120.

Gésir, to lie.—V. irr. and defective. The infinitive is obsolete.—Pres. part. *Gisant*.—No past part.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Il git, nous gisons, vous gisez, ils gisent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je gisais, tu gisais, il gisait, nous gisions, vous gisiez, ils gisaient*. The other tenses and moods are out of use.

H.—The principal words in which the initial *h* is aspirate, are •

<i>Hache,</i>	<i>Hareng,</i>	<i>Hêtre,</i>
<i>Haie,</i>	<i>Haricot,</i>	<i>Heurter,</i>
<i>Haine,</i>	<i>Harnais,</i>	<i>Hibou,</i>
<i>Hair,</i>	<i>Harpe,</i>	<i>Hideux,</i>
<i>Halle,</i>	<i>Harpie,</i>	<i>Hollande,</i>
<i>Halle,</i>	<i>Hasard,</i>	<i>Honte,</i>
<i>Hameau,</i>	<i>Hâter,</i>	<i>Horde,</i>
<i>Hanche,</i>	<i>Haut,</i>	<i>Hotte,</i>
<i>Hanter,</i>	<i>Hauteur,</i>	<i>Houlette,</i>
<i>Harangue,</i>	<i>Havre,</i>	<i>Huquenot,</i>
<i>Harasser,</i>	<i>Hérait,</i>	<i>Huit,</i>
<i>Hardi,</i>	<i>Héros,</i>	<i>Hussard.</i>

Hair, to hate.—Irr. v.—The irregularity of this verb consists:—in suppressing the diæresis in the three persons singular of the pres. tense, indicative mood, and pronouncing the verb in one syllable: *Je hais, tu hais, il hait*;—in suppressing it also in the second person singular of the imperative mood, *Hais*;—in substituting the diæresis for the circumflex accent in the first and second persons plural of the past tense definite, *Nous haïmes, vous haïtes*; and in the third person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood, *Qu'il haït*.

Heure, hour.—The distinction made in English between *six hours* and *six o'clock* has no equivalent in French; the word *heure* being used indifferently to express an interval of sixty minutes, or that moment of time which the clock indicates. In consequence, we render, "*What o'clock is it?*" by "*Quelle heure est-il?*" and "*It is six o'clock,*" by "*Il est six heures,*" 147.—In speaking of time, as measured by the clock, the number of hours is mentioned first, and followed by the fraction denoting the portion of time which preceeds or follows the full number, thus: *Quatre heures cinq minutes*, five minutes past four; *quatre heures un quart*, a quarter past four; *cinq heures moins un quart*, a quarter to five; *cinq heures moins dix minutes*, ten minutes to five. The last examples show that the portion of time wanting to make up the full number is preceeded by *moins*, less.

Hyphen.—Serves to connect the verb and the subject pronoun in interrogative phrases, 37;—the radicals forming a compound word;—the adverb *très* and the word that follows it, 51;—two numbers, when the lat-

ter does not exceed nineteen.—It is also used in *quatre-vingts*, 149; and in words combined to form an idiomatic locution, as, *c'est-à-dire*.—The adv. *ci* and *là* are also joined to the preceding word by a hyphen, 162.

IBLE.—This termination, like *able*, denotes aptness or fitness. It serves to form adjectives, about half of which are the same in both languages, 278.

ICE.—A number of words ending with this termination are alike in both languages.

IDE.—Termination common to adjectives, about fifty of which end in *id* in English.

IE.—The termination *ie* is common to substantives, about four hundred of which end in English in *y*, with scarcely any other difference of spelling, 91.

IÈME.—Termination added to the cardinal numbers, to form the ordinal numbers, 345.

IEN.—Adjectives ending in *ien* form their fem. by doubling the final consonant, and adding *e* mute, 85.

IF.—Termination of adjectives ending for the most part in *ive* in English, without any other difference, 23.—The feminine of these adjectives ends in *ive*, 42.

IL, ILE.—Termination. In adjectives, denotes what is endowed with the quality, the property, or the faculty expressed by the radical. Some of these adjectives are the same in both languages, as *civil, docile*.—The final *l* is quiescent in the following substantives in *il*: *Baril, chenil, couil, fournil, fusil, gril, nombril, outil, persil, souil, sourceil*; and in the adjective *gentil*.

IL, he.—Personal pronoun, corresponding to *he* and *it*. It is masculine and singular, and is always a subject, 45.—Its plural is *ils*, corresponding to *they*, and, like the singular, always masculine, and used as a subject. See pp. 208, 209.

Il y a, there is, there are.—See *y AVOIR*.

Imperative mood.—This mood in French verbs has no first person singular, and no third person, either sing. or plural. The English forms, *Let me answer, Let him wait, Let them*

follow, are rendered in French by the subjunctive, thus: *Que je réponde, qu'il attende, qu'ils suivent*.—The imperative mood is generally like the indicative present, leaving out the pronouns, 220, 221.—This mood, in French, having no special form for the first person sing., the deficiency is sometimes supplied by means of the first person plural, 289.—In this mood, the personal pronoun, which is the regimen of the verb, is placed after it, when the phrase is not negative. But when the phrase is negative, the pron. precedes the verb, 241.

Imperfect tense.—The terminations of this tense are: *ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient*, substituted for those of the infinitive in verbs in *er* and in *re*, 196, 197.—In verbs in *ir*, the above terminations are added to the invariable syllable *iss*, substituted for *ir*, thus: *issais, issais, issait, issions, issiez, issaient*, 94.—The first and second persons singular of this tense present no difference between them. The first and second persons plural of this tense are similar to the same persons of the present tense, subjunctive mood. A consequence of this rule is, that in the verbs ending in *ier*, the letter *i* must be doubled in the first and second persons plural; and that, in the verbs ending in *yer*, the *y* must be followed by *i* in the same persons.

The imperfect tense represents an action or a state as already begun or existing, and going on or continuing, without expressing when it ceased, or whether it did cease. It must be used to render the English verb in the present part. with the auxiliary verb *to be*, 31.—It must also be used to express an habitual action; as, *She used to answer, she would answer, Elle répondait*, 257.—When the conj. *si* corresponds to the English word *if*, and signifies *supposing that*, the verb that follows the conjunction is used in the present tense of the indicative with the correlative verb of the phrase in the future; or the conjunction is followed by the imperfect tense, with the second verb in the conditional mood. But when *si* corresponds to the English conj. *whether*, and expresses doubt, it may be followed by the conditional mood

or the future tense, according to the sense, 188.

Indicative mood.—The simple tenses of this mood are: the present, the imperfect, the past tense definite, and the future. The compound tenses, usually corresponding to the same tenses in English, require no particular notice, except the past tense indefinite, which see.—When a subjoined phrase is connected with the principal one by a relative pronoun, as *qui, que, dont, où*, and denotes something doubtful or uncertain, the subjunctive mood is properly employed; but if the subjoined phrase admits of no doubt, the indicative mood must be employed, 294.

INDRE.—Termination. All the verbs ending in *indre* undergo a change of the letters *nd* into *gn*:—in the three persons plural of the pres. tense, indicative mood;—throughout the imperfect tense;—throughout the past tense definite;—in the first and second persons plural of the imperative mood;—throughout the subjunctive mood, present and past;—and in the pres. participle.—They form their past part. by changing *dre* into *t*.—The three persons sing. of the pres. tense, indicative mood, end in *ins, ins, int*.—See the verb *CRaindre*, given in this Index as a model, and 300, 301.

Infinitive mood.—The infinitive mood of all the French verbs ends in *er, ir, or re*, 86.—The verbs in *er* are by far the most numerous, 88.—The verbs in *ir* differ from those in *er* in their forms of conjugation, 94. Those in *re* have some of their tenses formed in conformity with the first, and some with the second class; so that there are, indeed, but two forms of conjugation, 102.

After *comment, que, où, pourquoi*, and a few more words used like these in interrogations, the infinitive mood is often substituted for the indicative, when it can be done without rendering the sense obscure.—Ex. *Comment donc lui faire entendre raison*—literally, *How make him hear reason*.—See Third Lesson.

The French prepositions govern the infinitive mood. *En, in*, is the only one that governs the present participle, 57.

List of verbs which govern the infinitive without a prep., 213.—List of verbs which govern the infinitive with the prep. *à*, 211.—List of verbs which govern the infinitive with the prep. *de*, 212.—List of verbs which govern the infinitive with either *à* or *de*, 214.

The infinitive, preceded by the prep. *à*, sometimes corresponds to the English pres. part., denoting an action as taking place, or continuing. Ex. *Il était à regarder*, he was looking.—See Ninth Lesson.

The passive form used in English, to express that something is to be done or undergone, is rendered in French by the infinitive preceded by the prep. *à*, thus: He is to be pitied, *Il est à plaindre*, 181.

The infinitive mood of verbs is sometimes used substantively. In this case it is determined by the article, or by some other determinative word, 192.

Two verbs in the infinitive mood are often placed in succession, the second being the regimen of the first.

Instruire, to instruct.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *conduire*, 189.

Interrogation.—The interrogative construction, when the subject is a pronoun, is formed by placing the subject after the verb, and connecting them by a hyphen. A euphonic *t* is introduced between the verb and pronoun when the verb in the third person singular ends with a vowel. When the construction is at once interrogative and negative, and the subject a pronoun, the words are placed in the following order: the negative *ne*, the verb, the pronoun, the second part of the negative (*pas, jamais*, etc.), 36.—When the subject is a substantive, in interrogative phrases, it is generally placed before the verb, and repeated after it in the form of a pron., 37.—Interrogations are often formed by placing *est-ce que* before the subject, followed by the verb. This form is more familiar than the preceding, 35.—The interrogative form annexed to a proposition, in order to know whether it is assented to, varies in English according to the tense and person of the verb, and may be expressed in as many ways as there are different

signs or auxiliary verbs. In French, this form is invariably *N'est-ce pas?* 170.

Introduire, to introduce.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *conduire*, 189.

ION.—Termination of numerous substantives, about eleven hundred of which are the same in both languages. Substantives ending in *ion* are feminine, 26.

IQUE.—Termination common to a great number of words, some of which are substantives, but the greater part adjectives. Most of these words are nearly the same in both languages, and differ only by the termination, which, in English, is *ic* for the substantives, and *ic* or *ical* for the adjectives, 92.—The names of sciences which have in English the plural termination *ies*, end in French in *ique*, and are employed in the singular. There is one exception, viz., *les mathématiques*.

IR.—One of the three terminations of the infinitive mood of French verbs, 86.—A great portion of the verbs in *ir* come from adjectives; as, *appauvrir*, from *pauvre*. Others, of a different formation, end in English in *ish*, as *périr*, to perish.

ISER.—Termination common to verbs, about eighty of which terminate in English in *ize* or *ise*, without any other difference in their spelling.

ISS.—This syllable, incorporated into the terminations of several tenses and persons, characterizes the conjugation of the verbs in *ir*, and forms the principal difference between these verbs and those in *er*, 94.

ISTE.—Termination common to many words which are the same in both languages, except that the *s* mute, used in French, is suppressed in English. This termination generally denotes a member of a sect or of a corporation, whether literary, religious, or political: or one given to some intellectual or mechanical occupation, expressed by the radical. Most of the words of this termination are given in the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie* as masculine, being used especially to designate men; but they may be applied to women.

Jamais, never.—It is generally negative, and consequently most often

preceded or followed by *ne*. But sometimes, when used without *ne*, it becomes affirmative, and corresponds to *ever*.

Je, I.—Personal pronoun of the first person sing., and of both genders. It is always a subject, and generally placed before the verb.—When the verb begins with a vowel, the elision of the *e* takes place, 4.—It is often improper, in interrogative phrases, to place the pronoun *je* after the verb, particularly when this verb has but one syllable, or when its termination combined with *je* would offend a delicate ear. For instance, a correct speaker would not say, *Dors-je, mords-je, agis-je*. This is avoided by changing the construction, thus: *Est-ce que je dors, Est-ce que je mords*, etc. The following combinations, however, are authorized: *Suis-je, ai-je, fais-je, dis-je, dois-je, sais-je, vais-je*.—In interrogative phrases, and others in which the pronoun *je* follows a verb ending in *e* mute, this *e* takes the acute accent before *je*.—Ex. *Parlé-je?* do I speak? 309.

Joindre, to join.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *craindre*, 300, 301.

Jusque, till.—Does not refer merely to time, as *till* or *until* in English, but denotes distance, and often corresponds to *as far as, to, unto, up to, down to*, and *even*. The final *e* of *jusque* is cut off before the words *à, au, aux*, and *ici*.

K.—This letter very seldom occurs in French words.

La, the, her, it.—Fem. of the art. *le*; fem. of the pron. *le*.—The elision of the vowel *a* takes place before a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, 4. See also p. 10, line 12.

Là, there.—Adverb of place, distinguished from the article *la*, the, and from the pronoun *la*, her, by the grave accent over the *a*, but without making any difference in the pronunciation.—*Là* is sometimes added to substantives which come after the demonstrative adjectives *ce, cet, cette*, and *ces*, as an expletive denoting remoteness, in opposition to *ci*, which marks nearness. It is joined to the preceding word by a hyphen, 162.—

It is likewise added to the demonstrative pron. *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, thus: *Celui-là*, that one, etc., 163.

Le, the.—Article.—Varies in gender and number. *Le* is masc. and sing. *La* is fem. and sing. *Les* is plural, and of both genders, 1.—The final vowel of *le* and *la* is suppressed, and an apostrophe substituted for it, before words beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, 4. See also page 10, line 12.

Le, him, it.—Personal pron. Its fem. is *la*, her or it; the plural of both genders is *les*, them.—*Le* is always a direct regimen, and, except in the imperative mood, always placed before the verb, 240, 241, 244, 245.

The pron. *le* may represent either a substantive, an adjective, a verb, or a preposition. In the first case only it is variable, and takes the gender and number of the substantive which it represents: it then becomes *la* in the fem. and *les* in the plural of both genders. In the other cases, and particularly when it represents an adjective, or even a substantive used adjectively, it is invariable, 95.

In inversive phrases, in which the regimen precedes the verb, this regimen must be repeated in the form of a pronoun, which is generally *le, la*, or *les*, according to the sense, 195.

When several objective pronouns precede a verb, *le, la, les* are placed before *lui* and *leur*, and after *me, te, se, nous*, and *vous*, 235.

In comparative phrases constructed with *aussi, autant, plus, moins*, and other similar adverbs, the verb which follows *que* must be preceded by the pronoun *le*, 108, 272.

Le leur, theirs. *Leur*, their, a possessive adjective, becomes a possessive pronoun when preceded by the article. *Le leur* is masc. and sing. *La leur*, fem. and sing. *Les leurs*, pl. of both genders. These three forms correspond to *theirs*, 228, 267, 268.

Le mien, mine.—Is the possessive pronoun of the first person sing., corresponding to the possessive adj. *mon*. The sing. fem. is *la mienne*; the plural masc. *les miens*; and the pl. fem. *les miennes*. All these forms correspond to *mine*, 228, 230, 268.

Le nôtre, ours.—Possessive pronoun of the first person plural. The

sing. fem. is *la nôtre*; the plural of both genders, *les nôtres*. These three forms correspond to *ours*, 127, 268.

Lequel.—Relative pronoun, corresponding to *which*. It is masc. and sing. Sing. fem. *laquelle*; pl. masc. *lesquels*; pl. fem. *lesquelles*, 75, 76.—*Lequel*, *laquelle*, etc., are seldom used as subjects or as direct regimens, unless they become necessary to avoid ambiguity. The subject is generally represented by *qui*, and the direct regimen by *que*.

Les, the, them.—Pl. of the article *le*, *la*. Pl. of the pron. *le*, *la*, 11.

Le sien, his, hers.—Possessive pron. of the third person sing. The sing. fem. is *la sienne*; pl. masc. *les siens*; pl. fem. *les siennes*. Each of these forms corresponds to the English words *his*, *hers*, *its*, and *one's*, 60, 228, 268.

Les uns les autres, each other.—The idea of a reciprocal or mutual action is rendered in French by means of two pronouns of the same person: *nous nous*, *vous vous*, *ils se*, or *elles se*, placed before the verb. This form being likewise employed with reflexive verbs, ambiguity is avoided by the addition of the pronouns *l'un l'autre*, *les uns les autres*, when the action is reciprocal, 178. The pron. *les uns les autres* is used when the action is reciprocal between more than two individuals. When there are only two subjects and objects, *l'un l'autre* is employed.

Le tien, thine.—Possessive pron. of the second person sing. The sing. fem. is *la tienne*; the plural masc. *les tiens*; and the plural fem. *les tiennes*. All these forms correspond to thine, 227, 228, 268.

Leur, their.—Possessive adj. that varies in number, but not in gender. Pl. *leurs*. Both *leur* and *leurs* correspond to *their*, 67. With the article before it, this word becomes a possessive pronoun. See **LE LEUR**.

Leur, to them.—*Leur*, when a personal pronoun, is of both genders, and signifies *à eux*, *à elles*, to them. It is chiefly used in speaking of persons, and always accompanies a verb, whereas the possessive adjective *leur*, *leurs*, precedes a substantive. It never takes an *s*, 136, 137, 138, 139.

Le vôtre, yours.—Possess. pron.

of the second person pl. The sing. fem. is *la vôtre*; and the pl. of both genders, *les vôtres*. These three forms correspond to *yours*, 134, 135, 268.

Lire, to read.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Lisant*.—Past part. *Lu*.—Indicative mood, present tense: *Je lis, tu lis, il lit, nous lisons, vous lisez, ils lisent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je lisais, tu lisais, il lisait, nous lisions, vous lisiez, ils lisaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je lus, tu lus, il lut, nous lîmes, vous lîtes, ils lurent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Lis, lisons, lisez*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que je lise, que tu lises, qu'il lise, que nous lisions, que vous lisiez, qu'ils lisent*.—Subjunctive past: *Que je lusse, que tu lusses, qu'il lût, que nous lussions, que vous lussiez, qu'ils lussent*.

LL.—These letters, preceded by *i* (not initial), produce the sound of *li* in *billiards*, or *y* in *ye*, and the preceding *i* is generally silent when it follows another vowel. Thus, the word *meilleur* is pronounced as if written *mél-yur* or *meh-yur*.—The first of these two manners of pronouncing *ll* is emphatic, and may even seem pedantic, if too frequently repeated. The second is colloquial, and more generally heard.

Lorsque, when.—Has the same meaning as *quand*, when (*not though*), but cannot be used in interrogations. The elision of its final vowel takes place before *il*, *elle*, *on*, *un*, *une*.

Lui.—Personal pron. corresponding to *he*, *him*, sometimes to *it*. It is particularly used as an indirect regimen, and signifies either *to him* or *to her*. In this case it refers to persons only, 130.—*Lui*, when a subject, is employed when the verb is understood, 79.—*Lui* never refers to a feign. subst. but when it is an indirect regimen, 237.—When several objective pronouns precede a verb, *le*, *la*, *les* are placed before *lui*, 236.

Luire, to shine.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Luisant*.—Past part. *Lui*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je luis, tu luis, il luit, nous luisons, vous luez, ils luisent*.—Imperf. tense: *Je luisais, tu luisais, il luisait, nous luisions, vous luisiez, ils luisaient*.—No past tense definite.—Fut. tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—No impera-

tive mood.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que je luise, que tu luises, qu'il luise, que nous luisions, que vous luisiez, qu'ils luisent.*—No subjunctive past.

L'un l'autre.—See **LES UNS LES AUTRES.**

L'un et l'autre.—Must not be confounded with *l'un l'autre*. The subst. which follows *l'un et l'autre* is used in the singular.

Ma, my.—Fem. of *mon*, 66.—Before a fem. substantive or adjective beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, *mon* is substituted for *ma*, in order to avoid the hiatus, 229.

Madame.—Formed of *ma*, my, and *dame*, lady. Corresponds to *Mrs.* and to *Lady*, before a proper name; and to *Madam* or *My lady*, in addressing a woman. The pl. is *mesdames*, 327.—Though the possessive adjective is inseparable in *monsieur* and *messieurs*, it is not so in *madame* and *mesdames*; accordingly, *A lady, some ladies*, should be rendered by *Une dame, des dames*, 328.—Titles are preceded by *Madame*, with the article, in emphatic or ceremonious language: as, *Madame la baronne*. The possessive adjective before names of kindred is preceded by the same epithet: as, *Madame votre mère*, 323.

Mademoiselle.—Formed of *ma*, my, and *demoiselle*, young lady. Corresponds to *Miss*, before a proper name; and to *Miss* or *Madam*, in addressing a girl or an unmarried woman. The pl. is *mesdemoiselles*, 330. Without the possessive adjective, *demoiselle* signifies *girl, young lady* (unmarried), *single woman, spinster*, 331. Titles are preceded by *Mademoiselle*, with the article, in emphatic or ceremonious language. The possessive adjective before names of kindred is preceded by the same epithet, 323.

Masculine.—See **GENDERS.**

Maudire, to curse.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Maudissant*.—Past part. *Maudit*.—Indicative mood, present tense: *Je maudis, tu maudis, il maudit, nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils maudissent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je maudissais, tu maudissais, il maudissait, nous maudissions, vous maudissiez, ils maudissaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je maudis, tu maudis, il maudit, nous*

maudimes, vous maudites, ils maudirent.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Maudis, maudissons, maudissez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je maudisse, que tu maudisses, qu'il maudisse, que nous maudissions, que vous maudissiez, qu'ils maudissent.*—Subjunctive past: *Que je maudisse, que tu maudisses, qu'il maudit, que nous maudissions, que vous maudissiez, qu'ils maudissent.*

Me, me.—Personal pron. of the first person sing., and of both genders. Is never used as a subject. Is sometimes a direct and sometimes an indirect regimen, corresponding to *me, to me, myself, to myself*. It always precedes the verb, and cannot, like *moi*, be governed by a preposition, 179.—The elision of *e* takes place before a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, 4.—In the imperative mood, *moi* is used instead of *me* after the verb, when the phrase is not negative, 241.—There is an exception to this rule, when the word *en* follows, in which case there is a contraction, thus: *Donne-m'en*. Give me some. But when the phrase is negative, *me*, instead of *moi*, is placed before the verb.

Meilleur, better, best.—This adj. expresses comparison by itself, 51.

Même.—Adjective corresponding to *same, self, very, or self-same, very same*. Combined with the personal pronouns, as a sign of identity, it corresponds to *self*; but it does not follow the possessive adjectives as *self* does in English. *Même* is also an adverb, meaning *even*. In this sense it is invariable. The English word *very*, when it precedes a substantive, is generally rendered by *même*, placed after the subst., 333.

MENT.—Termination. A considerable number of adverbs of quality are formed from adjectives, by the addition of the termination *ment*, which corresponds to the English termination *ly*, 13.—This termination *ment* is added to the feminine form, unless the adj. ends with a vowel.—When the adjective ends in *ent*, the adverb is formed by changing this termination into *emment*; and when the adjective ends in *ant*, the adverb is formed by changing this termina-

tion into *amment*. In *emment*, the first *e* has the sound of *a* (French *a*); so that both these terminations, *emment* and *amment*, are pronounced exactly alike, 111.

Mentir, to lie.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *sentir*.—See p. 240.

Mettre, to put.—Irr. v.—See p. 205.

Mi, half.—Inseparable partiele, denoting the division of a thing into two equal parts. It is joined to the principal word by a hyphen, except in *midi*, mid-day, and *minuit*, midnight. It is invariable, 342.

Mien, mine.—See **LE MIEN**.

Mieux, better, best.—Should not be confounded with the adj. *meilleur*.

Mil, thousand.—Stands for *mille*, but is used only in dates. The *l* has its regular sound.

Moi.—Personal pron. of the first person sing., of both genders. It is commonly used as a regimen, either direct or indirect, and corresponds to the English pron. *me* or *to me*. Sometimes it is a subject, and signifies *I*, 179, 241.—Of the three pronouns of the first person singular, *moi* is the only one that can be governed by a prep.—*Moi* is joined to *je*, by apposition and reduplication, for the sake of emphasis, which in English is represented by underlining the pronoun, or printing it in *italic*. In French, the reduplication either precedes the verb or follows it, 142.—In the imperative mood, *moi* is used instead of *me* after the verb, when the phrase is not negative. But when the phrase is negative, *me*, instead of *moi*, is placed before the verb, 241.

Moins, less, least.—Adv. Before adjectives and adverbs, it denotes inferiority in the comparative and superlative degrees.—Must be repeated before each word which it qualifies.

Mon, my.—Possessive adjective. Fem. *ma*; pl. of both genders, *mes*. These three forms correspond to *my*, 66.—The possessive adjective agrees in gender and number with the substantive that follows it. Must be repeated before each substantive.—Before a fem. substantive or adjective beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, *mon* is substituted for *ma*, in order to avoid the hiatus, 72.

Monsieur.—Formed of the possessive adj. *mon*, my, and the subst. *sieur*, sir. Corresponds to three English words:—to *Mr.* before a proper name; to *Sir*, in addressing a man; to *gentleman*, in speaking of a man. Its plural is *messieurs*, 65.—Titles are preceded by *Monsieur*, with the art., in emphatic or ceremonious language, thus: *Monsieur le comte*. The possessive adjective before names of kindred is preceded by the same epithet, thus: *Monsieur votre père*, 323.

Moods.—See INFINITIVE, INDICATIVE, CONDITIONAL, IMPERATIVE, and SUBJUNCTIVE.

Mou, soft.—Fem. *molle* by exe.—*Mol* is used instead of *mou* in poetical language before a substantive beginning with a vowel.

Moudre, to grind.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Moulant*.—Past part. *Moulu*.—Indicative mood, present tense: *Je mouds, tu mouds, il moud, nous moulons, vous moulez, ils moulent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je moulais, tu moulais, il moulait, nous moulions, vous mouliez, ils moulaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je moulus, tu moulus, il moulut, nous moulûmes, vous moulûtes, ils moulurent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Mouds, moulons, moulez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je moule, que tu moules, qu'il moule, que nous moulions, que vous mouliez, qu'ils moulent*.—Subjunctive past: *Que je moulusse, que tu moulusses, qu'il moulût, que nous moulussions, que vous moulussiez, qu'ils moulussent*.

Mourir, to die.—Irr. v.—See p. 301. This verb is always conjugated with *être* in its compound tenses.

Mouvoir, to move.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Mouvant*.—Past part. *Mû*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je meus, tu meus, il meut, nous mouvons, vous mouvez, ils meuvent*.—Imperf. tense: *Je mouvais, tu mouvais, il mouvait, nous mouvions, vous mouviez, ils mouvaiient*.—Past tense definite: *Je mus, tu mus, il mut, nous mûmes, vous mûtes, ils murent*.—Future tense: *Je mouvrai, tu mouvras, il mouvra, nous mouvrons, vous mouvez, ils mouvront*.—Conditional mood: *Je mouvrais, tu mouvrais, il mouvrait, nous mouvriions, vous mouvriez, ils mouvraient*.—Imperative mood: *Meus, mouvons, mouvez*.

—Subjunctive mood. present tense: *Que je meuve, que tu meuves, qu'il meuve, que nous mouvions, que vous mouviez, qu'ils meuvent.*—Subjunctive past: *Que je musse, que tu musses, qu'il mut, que nous mussions, que vous mussiez, qu'ils mussent.*—Several of these tenses are used only in didactical language.

Naître, to be born.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Naissant.*—Past part. *Né.*—Indic. mood, present tense: *Je nais, tu nais, il naît, nous naissons, vous naissez, ils naissent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je naissais, tu naissais, il naissait, nous naissions, vous naissiez, ils naissaient.*—Past tense definite: *J'enquais, tu naquais, il naquait, nous naquimes, vous naquîtes, ils naquirent.*—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Nais, naissons, naissez.*—Subjunctive mood, present tense: *Que je naisse, que tu naisses, qu'il naisse, que nous naissions, que vous naissiez, qu'ils naissent.*—Subjunctive past: *Que je naquisse, que tu naquisses, qu'il naquît, que nous naquissions, que vous naquissiez, qu'ils naquissent.*—This verb is conjugated with *être* in its compound tenses.

Ne.—Particle used in almost all negative phrases, either alone, or joined to some word which in English would be negative by itself; as, *Ne pas, ne point*, not; *ne...rien*, nothing; *ne...jamais*, never; *ne...que*, but, only, 5.—When *ne* precedes a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, the vowel *e* is suppressed, and an apostrophe substituted for it, 4.—In restrictive or negative sentences, the word *ne* usually precedes the verb, and the second part of the negation follows it, 61.—In negative sentences, *ne* may be employed alone, and the word *pas* may be suppressed after the verbs *cesser, oser, pouvoir*, and *savoir*, especially when these verbs govern an infinitive, 28.

After *plus, moins, mieux, meilleur, autre*, and *autrement*, in comparative phrases, the word *que* must be followed by the negative *ne*, particularly when the principal proposition is affirmative, 271, § 1.—When the principal proposition is negative, the word *ne* is usually omitted after *que*, if the compared quality is not denied or

doubtful. But when the quality is not taken for granted, the negative *ne* is required in the secondary clause of the proposition, 271, § 2.

In negative phrases, *ne* invariably precedes the verb; it likewise precedes the object pronoun, if there be one joined to the verb, 236.

Negative.—See **NE**.

N'est-ce pas, is it not?—The interrogative form annexed to a proposition, in order to know whether it is assented to, varies in English, according to the tense and person of the verb, and may be expressed in as many ways as there are different signs or auxiliary verbs. In French, this form is invariably *n'est-ce pas?* thus: *Vous viendrez, n'est-ce pas?* you will come, will you not? *Vous ne viendrez pas, n'est-ce pas?* you will not come, will you? *Vous venez, n'est-ce pas?* you are coming, are you not? etc., 170.

Ni, conj., which corresponds to the two words *neither* and *nor*, or to *either* and *or*, with *not*. The negative words *pas* and *point* must not be employed when the conj. *ni* is repeated in a phrase, 190.

When two or more subjects in the singular number are joined by the conj. *ni*, the verb may be made to agree with the last subject only, or may be put in the plural, 368.

N'importe.—Is the negative form of *Il importe*, It is important, the third person sing. of the pres. tense of *importer*, to be important, a verb which, in this sense, is only used in the infinitive or in the third person sing. with the impersonal pron. *il*. *N'importe* signifies, No matter, never mind, it does not signify, 174.

Non.—Adv. of negation. It signifies, *no, not*. The negative *ne*, and the conj. *ni*, are only different forms of *non*.—*Non* is often used for *not*, instead of *ne pas*, particularly in elliptical phrases where the verb is not repeated.

Non plus, neither.—Is opposed to *aussi*, also, likewise. It is used in the negative, when *aussi* is employed in the corresponding affirmative sentences, 336.

Notre, our.—Possessive adjective of both genders, and of the singular number. Its plural is *nos*, likewise

corresponding to *our*, 71.—It agrees with the substantive that follows it.

Nôtre, ours.—See **LE NÔTRE**.

Noun.—See **SUBSTANTIVE**.

Nous.—Invariable personal pronoun, which is sometimes the subject, sometimes the direct, and sometimes the indirect regimen of the verb. It corresponds to *we*, *us*, to *us*, *ourselves*, to *ourselves*, 121.—When *nous* stands for *je* or *moi*, the adjective, substantive, or participle corresponding to it must be employed in the sing., 290.

Nouveau, new.—Fem. *nouvelle* by exe.—*Nouvel* is employed instead of *nouveau*, before a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute.

Nuire, to injure.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Nuisant*.—Past part. *Nui*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je nuis, tu nuis, il nuit, nous nuisons, vous nuisez, ils nuisent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je nuisais, tu nuisais, il nuisait, nous nuisions, vous nuisiez, ils nuisaient*.—Past tense def.: *Je nuisis, tu nuisis, il nuisit, nous nuisîmes, vous nuisîtes, ils nuisirent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Nuis, nuisons, nuisez*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que je nuise, que tu nuises, qu'il nuise, que nous nuisions, que vous nuisiez, qu'ils nuisent*.—Subjunct. past: *Que je nuisisse, que tu nuisisses, qu'il nuisît, que nous nuisissions, que vous nuisissiez, qu'ils nuisissent*.

Numbers.—See **PLURAL**.—The cardinal numbers stand for the ordinal ones, for the sake of brevity:—after the names of sovereigns;—before the names of the months, without the prep. *de*; as, *le deux septembre*.—*Premier*, however, cannot be replaced by *un*, 346.

Œil, eye.—Is pronounced as if spelled (in French) *euil*.—The plural is *yeux*.—The word *œil* is sometimes used to denote other objects than the organ of sight, in which case its pl. is often formed regularly; as, *Des œils-de-bœuf*, circular windows, or bull's-eyes.

Offrir, to offer.—Irr. v.—Present part. *Offrant*.—Past part. *Offert*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *J'offre, tu offres, il offre, nous offrons, vous offrez, ils offrent*.—Imperfect tense: *J'offrais, tu offrais, il offrait, nous*

offrions, vous offriez, ils offraient.—Past tense definite, regular.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Offre, offrons, offrez*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que j'offre, que tu offres, qu'il offre, que nous offrions, que vous offriez, qu'ils offrent*.—Subj. past, regular.

Oindre, to anoint.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *craindre*.—See also *verbs in INDRE*, 300.

OIR.—Termination of verbs which are irregular.—Many grammars give a model of conjugation in *oir*; but this model is applicable only to *devoir, redevoir, apercevoir, concevoir, décevoir, percevoir, and recevoir*, 87.

OIRE.—Termination common to substantives and adjectives, about 100 of which end in English in *ory*, 144.

ON.—Termination. Adj. ending in *on* form their fem. by doubling the *n*, and adding *e* mute, 85.

On.—Pron. Indefinite pronoun, which generally corresponds to the Eng. word *one*: sometimes to *people* or *they*; and, moreover, is often rendered in English by a different construction. This pron. is much more frequently used in French than the word *one* is in English. It often corresponds to the passive form; as, *On le voyait*, he was seen, 24.—A enphonic *l'* precedes *on*, after *et, si, ou, que*, and *qui*, to avoid the hiatus, 251.

The pron. *on* is generally masc. and sing. However, when the sense clearly shows that it refers to a woman, or to certain persons, it is followed by adjectives, participles, or substantives, either feminine or plural, according to the sense, 374.

On retains its nasal sound, even when the *n* coalesces with the initial vowel of another word.

Ordinal numbers.—Formed from the cardinal numbers by adding the termination *ième*, 345.

Oser, to dare.—In negative sentences, the word *pas* may be suppressed after *oser*, especially when this verb governs an infinitive, 28.

Où, where.—Adv. of place, distinguished from the conj. *ou*, or, by the grave accent over the *u*.

Ouir, to hear.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Oyant*.—Past part. *Oûi*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *J'ois, tu ois, il oit, nous oyons, vous oyez, ils oient*.—Im-

perf. tense: *J'oyais, tu oyais, il oyait, nous oyions, vous oyiez, ils oyaient.*—Past tense definite: *J'ouïs, tu ouïs, il ouït, nous ouîmes, vous ouîtes, ils ouïrent.*—Future tense: *J'oirai, tu oiras, il oira, nous oirons, vous oirez, ils oiront.*—Conditional mood: *J'oi-rais, tu oirais, il oirait, nous oirions, vous oiriez, ils oiraient.*—Imperative mood: *Ois, oyons, oyez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que j'oie, que tu oies, qu'il oie, que nous oyions, que vous oyiez, qu'ils oient.*—Subjunctive past: *Que j'ouïsse, que tu ouïsses, qu'il ouît, que nous ouïssions, que vous ouïssiez, qu'ils ouïssent.*—All these forms are obsolete.—This verb is only used in the infinitive and in the compound tenses, with *avoir*.

Ouvrir, to open.—Irr. v.—See p. 215.

Paître, to graze.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Paissant.*—Past part. *Pu* (only used by falconers).—Indic. mood, pres. tense: *Je puis, tu pûis, il puit, nous paissions, vous paisez, ils paissent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je paissais, tu paissais, il paissait, nous paissions, vous paissiez, ils paissaient.*—No past tense definite.—Fut. tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Pais, paissions, paisez.*—Subjunctive mood: *Que je paisse, que tu paisses, qu'il puisse, que nous paissions, que vous paissiez, qu'ils paissent.*—No subjunctive past.

Par, by.—One of the most important French prepositions. It generally corresponds to *by*; but sometimes to *through, from, out of, with*. The choice between *de* and *par*, after a passive verb, is sometimes a cause of doubt, even for the French. In general, *par* is more properly employed when the verb expresses an action, 356.

Paraître, to appear.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Paraissant.*—Past part. *Paru.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je parais, tu parais, il paraît, nous paraissions, vous paraissez, ils paraissent.*—Imperf. tense: *Je paraissais, tu paraissais, il paraissait, nous paraissions, vous paraissiez, ils paraissaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je parus, tu parus, il parut, nous parumes, vous parûtes, ils parurent.*—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Impera-

tive mood: *Parais, paraissions, paraissez.*—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que je paraisse, que tu paraisses, qu'il paraisse, que nous paraissions, que vous paraissiez, qu'ils paraissent.*—Subj. past: *Que je parusse, que tu parusses, qu'il parût, que nous parussions, que vous parussiez, qu'ils parussent.*

Parce que, because.—Conjunction formed of three words: *par*, by; *ce*, that; *que*, which, or that. When combined as above, it signifies *because*; but when the three words remain separate, they retain their original meaning.

Participles.—All verbs end in the present participle with *ant*.

The use of the present participle, to signify that the action is instantaneous, is very uncommon in French, 31.—The English participle is sometimes rendered by the infinitive, with the prep. *à*, thus: He is studying, *Il est à étudier*.

The present participle is often used as an adjective, in French as well as in English.—When used as an adjective, it follows the rule of the adj., and agrees in gender and number with the substantive.

The past participle ends with *é* in the first conjugation; with *i* in the second; and with *u* in the third.

Participles form their fem. and pl. in the same manner as adjectives.—The past participle agrees in gender and number with the noun that undergoes the action expressed, provided that noun is expressed or represented by a pronoun before the participle, 129.—The past part. *été* is invariable, 260.

The past participles *attendu, excepté, passé, supposé*, and *vu*, are sometimes employed as prepositions, and, as such, they precede the subst. which they govern, and are invariable.

Partir, to depart.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Partant.*—Past part. regular.—Indicative mood, present tense: *Je pars, tu pars, il part, nous partons, vous partez, ils partent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je partais, tu partais, il partait, nous partions, vous partiez, ils partaient.*—Past tense definite, regular.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imper. mood: *Pars, partons, partez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je parte, que*

tu partes, qu'il parte, que nous partions, que vous partiez, qu'ils partent.—Subj. past, regular.—Conjugated with *être*, when it denotes a state; with *avoir*, when it denotes an action.

Pas. not.—The primary sense of *pas* is step. It acquires a negative meaning only when preceded by *ne*, in which case the two words together signify *not*, 5.—In negative sentences, the word *pas* may be suppressed after the verbs *cesser*, *oser*, *pouvoir*, and *savoir*, especially when these verbs govern an infinitive, 28.

Passive verbs.—Are conjugated in French, as in English, with the auxiliary verb *être*, 150.—The passive form, used in English to express that something is to be done or undergone, is rendered in French by the prep. *à*, followed by the infinitive, thus: He is to be pitied, *Il est à plaindre*, 181.—The passive form is less frequently used in French than in English; and verbs, which should be passive according to the sense, often take the reflective or pronominal form, 334.

Past tense definite.—Is formed by changing the termination of the infinitive as follows:—*er* into *ai*, *as*, *a*, *âmes*, *âtes*, *èrent*, 256;—and *ir* and *re* into *is*, *is*, *it*, *imes*, *ites*, *irent*, 255.—This tense represents the action or the state from its very beginning; it expresses that it has ceased, and that the duration of time it occupied has elapsed. It is generally proper when the English past tense cannot be rendered by means of the words *was*, *would*, or *used to*, joined to the verb, 257.—It is particularly used in narratives. In familiar conversation it is often avoided, as stiff and pedantic, and the past tense indefinite is substituted for it.

Past tense indefinite.—Is the only compound tense that requires particular notice. It is formed by combining the present tense of *avoir* with the past part. of the principal verb.—This tense is used, not only in speaking indefinitely of any thing past, or of an action done at a period of time which is not completed, as the English perfect tense is used, when we say, "*I have finished my letter, He has travelled much this year;*" but the use of this tense is authorized also in

reference to that time which is entirely elapsed. It is not, therefore, incorrect, as it would be in English, to say, "*Il a vu son ami hier*, He has seen his friend yesterday."

Past tense of the Subjunctive mood.—See SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Peindre, to paint.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *craindre*.—See also *verbs in INDRE*, 300.

Personne, person.—As a subst., *personne* is always fem., even when it is used to denote persons of the male sex.

Personne.—As an indefinite pronoun, is always masc. sing., and used without an article or any determinative word. With the negative *ne*, it signifies *no one*, *none*, *nobody*. Without the negative, it corresponds to *any one*, or *anybody*.

Peu.—Adv. corresponding to *little* and *few*. When followed by a subst. it requires the prep. *de* before the substantive.—*Peu* is also used substantively, 155.

Peu de chose, little.—Adverbial form, which is masculine.

Plaindre, to pity.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *craindre*.—See also *verbs in INDRE*, 300.—When pronominal, *se plaindre* signifies *to complain*.

Plaire, to please.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Plaisant*.—Past part. *Plu*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je plais, tu plais, il plaît, nous plaisons, vous plaisez, ils plaisent*.—Imperf. tense: *Je plaisais, tu plaisais, il plaisait, nous plaisions, vous plaisiez, ils plaisaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je plus, tu plus, il plut, nous plûmes, vous plûtes, ils plurent*.—Fut. tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Plais, plaisons, plaisez*.—Subjunctive mood, present tense: *Que je plaise, que tu plaises, qu'il plaise, que nous pluisions, que vous plussiez, qu'ils plaisent*.—Subjunctive past: *Que je plusse, que tu plusses, qu'il plut, que nous plussions, que vous plussiez, qu'ils plussent*.

Pleuvoir, to rain.—V. irr. and impersonal.—Pres. part. *Pleurant*.—Past part. *Plu*.—Indic. mood, pres. tense: *Il pleut*.—Imperfect tense: *Il pleuvait*.—Past tense definite: *Il plut*.—Future tense: *Il pleuvra*.—Conditional mood: *Il pleuvrait*.—No imperative mood.—Subjunctive mood,

pres. tense: *Qu'il pleuve*.—Subjunctive past: *Qu'il plut*.

Plural.—The pl. of substantives is regularly formed by adding *s* to the singular, 8.—Subst. ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, do not change their termination in the plural, 8.—Substantives ending in *eu* and *au* form their plural with *x* instead of *s*, 124.—Substantives ending in *al* form their plural by changing this termination into *aux*, 15. The exceptions are: *Bals*, *carnavals*, *réguls*.

The following substantives, ending in *ou*, form their pl. with *x* instead of *s*: *Bijou*, *caillou*, *chou*, *genou*, *hibou*, *joujou*, *pou*. The other substantives in *ou* form their plural regularly, 8.

The plural of adjectives, like that of substantives, is regularly formed by adding *s* to the sing., 43.—Adjectives ending in *s* or *x* do not change their termination in the pl., 8.—Adjectives ending in *au* form their pl. in *x* instead of *s*, 124.—Adjectives ending in *al* generally form their pl. by changing *al* into *aux*, 15. There are some exceptions; as, *fatals*, *finals*, *nasals*.—Participles form their pl. in the same manner as adjectives.

Plus, more, most.—Serves to form the comparative of superiority, and the superlative, 51.—When in English the conj. *than* follows, it is rendered by *que*, 53.—*Plus* must be repeated before each adjective, verb, or adverb, which it modifies.

Plusieurs, several.—Indefinite adj.—Invariable, plural, and of both genders. It corresponds to *several*, *some*, and *many*. It is sometimes used as an indefinite pron., 107.

Plutôt, rather.—For the difference between *plutôt* and *plus tôt*, see *Tôt*.

Poindre, to dawn.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *craindre*, but scarcely ever used otherwise than in the infinitive mood and the future tense.

Point, point, not.—Has a negative meaning only when preceded by *ne*, in which case the two words together signify *not*, like *ne pas*. *Ne point* is more emphatically negative than *ne pas*.

Porter (Se).—One of the most important pronominal v. in French, corresponding to *to be*, speaking of the health.—Infinitive mood, present

tense: *Se porter*, to be—literally, to carry one's self.—Present participle: *Se portant*.—Indicative mood, present tense: *Je me porte*, *tu te portes*, *il se porte*, *nous nous portons*, *vous vous portez*, *ils se portent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je me portais*, *tu te portais*, *il se portait*, *nous nous portions*, *vous vous portiez*, *ils se portaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je me portai*, *tu te portas*, *il se porta*, *nous nous portâmes*, *vous vous portâtes*, *ils se portèrent*.—Future tense: *Je me porterai*, *tu te porteras*, *il se portera*, *nous nous porterons*, *vous vous porterez*, *ils se porteront*.—Conditional mood: *Je me porterais*, *tu te porterais*, *il se porterait*, *nous nous porterions*, *vous vous porteriez*, *ils se porteraient*.—Imperative mood: *Porte-toi*, *portons-nous*, *portez-vous*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que je me porte*, *que tu te portes*, *qu'il se porte*, *que nous nous portions*, *que vous vous portiez*, *qu'ils se portent*.—Subjunctive past: *Que je me portasse*, *que tu te portasses*, *qu'il se portât*, *que nous nous portassions*, *que vous vous portassiez*, *qu'ils se portassent*.

This verb, like all pronominal ones, takes *être* in the compound tenses; *Je me suis porté*, I have been, etc.

Possessive case.—There is no such case in French. When it occurs in English, it should be rendered by the article and the prep. *de*, thus: Peter's book, *Le livre de Pierre*, 20.

Possessive Adjectives.—See *ADJECTIVES*.

Possessive Pronouns.—See *PRONOUNS*.

Pour.—Prep., corresponding to *for*, *to*, *in order to*. When the English prep. *to*, before the infinitive mood, signifies *in order to*, it is rendered in French by *pour*, 164.

Pouvoir, to provide.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *voir* in the pres. and past part., the present and imperfect tenses of the indicative, the imperative mood, and the pres. tense of the subjunctive mood.—Past tense def.: *Je pouvais*, *tu pouvais*, *il pouvait*, *nous pouvions*, *vous pouviez*, *ils pouvaient*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Past tense, subjunct. mood: *Que je pûsse*, *que tu pûsses*, *qu'il pût*, *que nous pûssions*, *que vous pûssiez*, *qu'ils pussent*.

Pouvoir, to be able.—Irr. v.—See p. 248.—In negative sentences, the word *pas* may be suppressed after *pouvoir*, especially when this verb governs an infinitive, 28.

The absence of an English form equivalent to the past part. *pu*, gives rise to different constructions, which may all be reduced to a single one in French; *pu* forming a compound tense with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, and being followed by an infinitive, thus: *Il aurait pu mourir*, he might have died, 353.

Premier, first.—See **UNIÈME**.

Prendre, to take.—Irr. v.—See p. 104.

Prepositions.—The principal prepositions are: *à, après, attendu, avant, avec, chez, contre, dans, de, depuis, derrière, dès, devant, durant, en, entre, envers, hors, malgré, moyennant, nonobstant, outre, par, parmi, pendant, pour, sans, sauf, selon, sous, suivant, sur, touchant, vers, vis-à-vis*. Those which require particular notice will be found, each in its alphabetical place.

The prep. *à, de, en*, must be repeated before each subst., adj., pron., or verb which they govern. The others need not be repeated, unless the regimens have meanings totally different, or express contrary ideas.

Prepositions govern the infinitive mood. *En* is the only one that governs the present participle, 57.

List of adjectives, with the prepositions which they govern, 262.

Present tense.—The use of the pres. part., to signify that the action is instantaneous, is very uncommon in French; nor is there any such word as *io* or *did*, to give greater strength to an affirmation; so that these three modes of expression, *He gives, He is giving, and He does give*, have but one translation in French: *Il donne*, 31.

For the present tense of the subjunctive mood, see **SUBJUNCTIVE**.

Produire, to produce.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *conduire*, 189.

Pronominal verbs.—See **VERBS**.

Pronouns.—The **PERSONAL PRONOUNS** are: *Je, me, moi—Tu, te, toi—Il, le, lui, elle, la, soi, se—Nous—Vous—Ils, elles, les, eux, leur—En, y*.—See page 208.

The personal pronouns, *moi, toi,*

lui, elle, soi, nous, vous, eux, elles, combine with the adj. *même*, and acquire the following significations: *Moi-même*, myself; *toi-même*, thyself; *lui-même*, himself, itself; *elle-même*, herself, itself; *soi-même*, one's self; *nous-même*, ourself; *nous-mêmes*, ourselves; *vous-même*, yourself; *vous-mêmes*, yourselves; *eux mêmes, elles-mêmes*, themselves. These pronouns, sometimes necessary to avoid ambiguity, may also be used as mere expletives, for the sake of emphasis, 223.—A personal pronoun, used as a subject, generally precedes the verb in affirmative phrases. It may follow it, however, after the words *aussi, peut-être, encore, toujours, en vain, du moins, au moins, à peine*, 98.—The personal pronoun precedes the verb, not only when it is the subject, but also when it is the regimen, whether direct or indirect, 241.—The interrogative construction, when the subject is a pron., is formed by placing the subject after the verb. The verb and pronoun in this case are joined by a hyphen, 37.—The repetition of the subject pron. depends rather on the taste of the speaker than on any precise rule. Yet it may be stated in a general way, that the repetition of the pronoun is more frequent in French than in English, 172.

In the imperative mood, the personal pron., which is the regimen of the verb, is placed after it, when the phrase is not negative. But when the phrase is negative, the pronoun precedes the verb, 241.

The pronouns *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, they*, are rendered by *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles*, after a conj., when the verb which they govern is understood. But when the verb is expressed, the subject pronouns are: *Je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, 239.

When the art. *le, la, les* is substituted for a possessive adj. before a regimen, care must be taken, in order to avoid ambiguity, to make use of a pron. showing who the possessor is, 303.—This pron. is an indirect regimen, when the subst. is a direct one, as in the phrase, *Vous lui tenez le poulx*; and a direct regimen when the subst. is an indirect one, thus: *Vous le prenez par la main*, 304.—The necessity of employing a pron. denoting

who the possessor is, often gives the verb the form of a reflexive verb, thus: *Je me tâte le poulx*, 305.—The pron. showing who the possessor is, may sometimes be the subject, thus: *J'ai mal au bras*, 306.

The personal pron. which precedes *voilà* and *voici*, is the regimen of these words, which signify *behold*. Consequently we say, *LE voilà*, *LA voilà*, and not *IL voilà*, *ELLE voilà*, 123.

The POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS are: *Le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes*—*Le tien, la tienne, les tiens, les tiennes*—*Le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes*—*Le nôtre, la nôtre, les nôtres*—*Le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres*—*Le leur, la leur, les leurs*.

The possessive pronoun agrees in gender and number with the object possessed, and not with the possessor, as the English pron. does.—The possessive pronouns are sometimes used as substantives, to denote our relations, friends, or dependants, but only in the masculine gender and in the plural number, 354.

The DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS are: *Ce, ceci, cela*—*Celui, celle, ceux, celles*.

The RELATIVE PRONOUNS are: *Qui, que, quoi, dont, lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles, où, d'où, par où*.

The pronominal adj. *quel* combines with the art., simple or compound, and forms—*Lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*—*Duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles*—*Auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles*.

The INDEFINITE PRONOUNS are: *Autre, autrui, chacun, l'un, l'un et l'autre, l'un ou l'autre, on, personne, quelqu'un, quiconque*.

Each of the pronouns requiring a particular mention will be found in its alphabetical place.

Pronunciation.—See INTRODUCTORY LESSON, page vii.

Quand.—Is used as an adv. and as a conj.—As an adv. it means *when* or *whenever*; as a conj. it corresponds to *though, even, though even, if even, and what though*.—When *quand* signifies *though*, it is always followed by a v. in the conditional mood. *Quand* must not be confounded with *quoique*, which signifies *though*, but requires the subjunctive mood after it.

Quant.—Adverb, always followed

by *à*, and signifying *with regard to, with respect to, as to, as for*.

Quatre-vingts, eighty.—The final *s* is suppressed, when *quatre-vingts* is joined to a following number, 275, 276.

Que.—Pron. Is either absolute or relative. When absolute, it corresponds to *what*; when relative, it signifies, *whom, which, or that*. In both cases it is almost invariably a direct regimen.

Que.—Connective. Generally corresponds to *that*. Has a great variety of meanings besides. When preceded by the negative particle *ne*, it corresponds to the English word *but*, in its restrictive sense of *only, save, or except*.—The English conj. *than*, after the comparative, is rendered by *que*, 53.—*Que* is used for *combien*, in exclamative phrases, and corresponds to *how, how much, and how many*.

Quel.—Pronominal adj., generally corresponding to *what*; sometimes to *which*, 30.—Its fem. is *quelle*; its pl. masc. *quels*; and its pl. fem. *quelles*. Is not followed by *un, une*, in exclamations, when the English word *what* requires *a, an*, after it, 29.

Quelque chose, something.—*Chose* is a fem. subst.; but *quelque chose*, signifying *something or any thing*, is an adverbial form which is masc.—When *quelque chose*, in the sense of *something or any thing*, is followed by an adj., it requires the prep. *de* before the adj., which retains the masculine termination.

Quelqu'un.—Indefinite pronoun. When used in an absolute sense, that is, without any reference to a subst., it corresponds to *some one, somebody, any one, anybody*. In this sense it is used only in speaking of persons, and is always masc. It may take the pl. form *quelques-uns*, but only when it is a subject, 357.—When it is not absolute, and refers to a subst., it corresponds to *some* and *any*, and may relate to things as well as to persons. In this sense it takes the fem. and plural forms, *quelqu'une, quelques-uns, quelques-unes*, 358.

Querir, to fetch.—V. defective.—Is used only in the infinitive, with the verbs *aller, venir, and envoyer*. The French Academy writes *querir*. The other lexicographers are unani-

mons in writing *quérir*, with the acute accent, as the Academy itself writes the derivatives *acquérir*, *conquérir*, *requérir*.

Qui.—Relative pronoun, generally corresponding to the English words *who*, *whom*, *which*, *that*, and sometimes *what*. It is also used as an absolute pron., particularly in interrogations; in this case it refers only to persons, 82.—*Qui*, when it is relative, that is, when it has an antecedent, may be a subject or an indirect regimen. When it is a subject, it may refer to persons or to things. But when it is an indirect regimen, preceded by a preposition, it refers only to persons. The subject is much more frequently represented by *qui* than by *lequel*.

RE.—Termination. One of the three terminations of the infinitive mood of French verbs, 86.

There are also many French words ending in *re* which have become English, sometimes with the same orthography, and sometimes by transposing the final letters, 118.

Recevoir, to receive.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *devoir*, 264.

Réduire, to reduce.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *conduire*, 189.

Reflective Verbs.—See PRONOMINAL, under the head VERBS.

Regimen.—The subst. which is the regimen of a verb generally follows it.—The personal pron. which is the regimen of a verb precedes it (except in the imperative mood), 241.

When several objective pronouns precede a verb, *le*, *la*, *les* are placed before *lui* and *leur*, and after *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, and *vous*, 236.

In the imperative mood, the personal pron. which is the regimen of the verb is placed after it, when the phrase is not negative. But when the phrase is negative, the pronoun precedes the verb, 241.

In inversive phrases, in which the regimen precedes the verb, this regimen must be repeated in the form of a pronoun, which is generally *le*, *la*, or *les*, according to the sense, 195.

The personal pron. which precedes *voilà* and *voici*, is the regimen of these words; consequently we say, *le voilà*, and not *il voilà*.

Repentir (Se), to repent.—Irr. v.—See page 197.

Resoudre, to resolve.—Irr. v.—Present part. *Résolvant*.—Past part. *Résolu*, or *résous*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je résous, tu résous, il résout, nous résolvons, vous résolvez, ils résolvent*.—Imperf. tense: *Je résolvais, tu résolvais, il résolvait, nous résolvions, vous résolviez, ils résolvaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je résolus, tu résolus, il résolut, nous résolûmes, vous résolûtes, ils résolurent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Résous, résolvons, résolvez*.—Subjunctive mood, present tense: *Que je résolve, que tu résolves, qu'il résolve, que nous résolvions, que vous résolviez, qu'ils résolvent*.—Subj. past: *Que je résolusse, que tu résolusses, qu'il résolût, que nous résolussions, que vous résolussiez, qu'ils résolussent*.—The past part. *résous* is used only in the sense of *melted*, or separated into its component parts. It has no feminine.

Restreindre, to restrain.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *craindre*. See also *verbs in INDRE*, 300.

Review.—Of the Article, see page 10.—Of the Gender of Nouns, page 156.—Of the Formation of the Pl. of Nouns and Adjectives, p. 95.—Of the Formation of the Feminine of Adjectives, p. 51.—Of the Degrees of Comparison, p. 29.—Of the Pronouns, p. 208.—Of the principal Adverbs, p. 300.—Of the principal Prepositions, p. 308.—Of the principal Conjunctions, p. 321.—Of the principal Interjections, p. 329.

Rien, nothing, any thing.—The prep. *de* must be prefixed to an adj. which follows *rien*, 119, 182.—The letters *en* remain nasal, even when the *n* coalesces with the initial vowel of another word.

Rire, to laugh.—Irr. v.—Present part. *Riant*.—Past part. *Ri*.—Indic. mood, present tense: *Je ris, tu ris, il rit, nous rions, vous riez, ils rient*.—Imperfect tense: *Je riaais, tu riaais, il riait, nous riions, vous riiez, ils riaient*. It is regularly formed; but the reduplication of the *i* in the first and second persons pl. is to be remarked.—Past tense definite: *Je ris, tu ris, il rit, nous rîmes, vous rîtes, ils rirent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional

mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Ris, rions, riez*.—Subjunctive mood, present tense, regular.—Subjunctive past: *Que je risse, que tu risses, qu'il rit, que nous rissions, que vous rissiez, qu'ils rissent*.

Rompre, to break.—V. irr. only in the third person singular of the present tense, indicative mood: *Il rompt*, instead of *il romp*.

Sa, his, her, its.—Fem. of *Son*.

Saillir, to jut out.—V. irr. and defective.—Used in the infinitive and the third persons only.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Il saille, ils saillent*.—Imperfect tense: *Il saillait, ils saillaient*.—No past tense definite.—Fut. tense: *Il saillera, ils sailleront*.—Conditional mood: *Il sailleraient, ils sailleraient*.—No imperative mood.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Qu'il saille, qu'ils saillent*.—Subjunct. past, regular.—*Saillir* is regular in the sense of *To gush out*, or of *To leap*; but is used only in the infinitive and in the third persons.

Savoir, to know.—Irr. v.—See page 224.—In negative sentences, the word *pas* may be suppressed after *savoir*, especially when this verb governs an infinitive, 28.—“To know how to do a thing,” is generally expressed in French by *Savoir faire une chose*. The adverb *comment*, which should be the translation of *how*, is usually omitted. *Savoir*, followed by an infinitive, is often used also when *can* or *could* is employed in English; as, *Savez-vous lire ?* Can you read?

Se.—Personal pron. of both genders and numbers, corresponding to *himself, herself, itself, one's self, themselves*, as a direct regimen. It signifies also, *to himself, to herself*, etc., as an indirect regimen.—The elision of the *e* takes place before a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, 4.

Sentir, to feel.—Irr. v.—See page 240.

Seoir, to sit.—V. irr., defective, and obsolete.—The only forms still in use are the pres. part. *séant*, and the past part. *sis*, as a verbal adjective, meaning *situated*. See the next paragraph.

Seoir, to be becoming.—V. irr. and defective. The infinitive is obsolete.—Pres. part. *séyant*.—This v.

is used only in the third persons of the following tenses:—Indic. mood, pres. tense: *Il sied, ils sièent*.—Imperfect tense: *Il seyait, ils seyaient*.—Future tense: *Il siéra, ils sièront*.—Conditional mood: *Il sièrait, ils sièraient*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Qu'il siée, qu'ils sièent*.

Servir, to serve.—Irr. v.—See page 329.

Ses, his, her, its.—Pl. of *son*.

Si.—Conj. corresponding to *if* and *whether*.—The elision of the vowel *i* in this word takes place only before *il* and its pl. *ils*.—*Si* is also used as an adverb, signifying *so, so many, so much*, and sometimes *yes*, 58.—When the conj. *si* corresponds to the English word *if*, and signifies *supposing that*, the verb that follows the conj. is used in the pres. tense of the indicative, with the correlative verb of the phrase in the future; or the conj. is followed by the imperfect tense, with the second v. in the conditional mood. But when *si* corresponds to the English conj. *whether*, and expresses doubt, it may be followed by the conditional mood or the future tense, according to the sense of the sentence, 188.—*Si*, as an adverb of comparison, must be repeated before each adj. or adv. which it modifies. In English, after the adv. *so*, the word *a* is placed between the next adj. and subst. In French, *si* is preceded by *un, une*. As for the place of the adj., it is often optional, 193.—In negative phrases, the adv. *so*, before the adj., the part., or the adv., may be rendered either by *aussi* or by *si*.

Sien, his, hers.—See *LE SIEN*.

Sitôt, so soon.—See *TÔT*.

Some.—Is often rendered by the partitive article *du, de la, des*, 38.—When *some* is the direct regimen of a verb, it is rendered by *en*, placed before the verb, except in the imperative mood. See page 88.

Son.—Possessive adj. corresponding to *his, her, its*, and *one's*. It is masc. and sing. Its fem. is *sa*, and the plural of both genders *ses*, 50.—It agrees in gender and number with the substantive that follows it.

Before a fem. subst. or adj. beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, *son* is substituted for *sa*, in order to avoid the hiatus, 229.—In this case, the let-

ters *on*, in *son*, continue to be nasal, though the *n* coalesces with the next vowel.

Sortir, to go out.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Sortant*.—Past part. regular.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je sors, tu sors, il sort, nous sortons, vous sortez, ils sortent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je sortais, tu sortais, il sortait, nous sortions, vous sortiez, ils sortaient*.—Past tense definite, regular.—Fut. tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imper. mood: *Sors, sortons, sortez*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que je sorte, que tu sortes, qu'il sorte, que nous sortions, que vous sortiez, qu'ils sortent*.—Subjunctive past, regular.—This verb generally takes *être* as an auxiliary; *avoir* may, however, be used when *sortir* expresses an action.

Souffrir, to suffer.—Irr. v.—See page 282.

Subject.—The subject generally precedes the v. in affirmative phrases.—The subject, when a pronoun, is placed after the verb in interrogative phrases, 37.—When the subject is a subst., in interrogative phrases, it is generally placed before the verb, and repeated after it in the form of a pronoun, 36.—A personal pronoun, used as a subject, generally precedes the verb. It may follow it, however, after the words *aussi, peut-être, encore, toujours, en vain, du moins, au moins, à peine*, 98.—The repetition of the subject pron. depends rather on the taste of the speaker than on any precise rule. Yet it may be stated in a general way, that the repetition of the pron. is more frequent in French than in English, 172.—When a verb refers to several subjects of different persons, the subjects are summed up by the pron. *nous* or *vous*, with which the verb agrees.—*Nous* is employed, if one of the subjects is of the first person; otherwise *vous* is the proper pronoun.

Subjunctive mood.—The Pres. tense of the subjunct. mood is formed by changing the termination of the infinitive as follows:—*er* and *re* into *e, es, e, ions, iez, ent*;—and *ir* into *isse, isses, isse, issions, issiez, issent*.—The peculiarity of verbs in *ir* consists in the addition of the syllable *iss* to every person, but the letters following this syllable are the same

as in the other two forms of conjugation.—In verbs in *er*, the three persons of the sing. and the third person of the pl. number are similar to the same persons of the pres. tense, indicative mood; while in verbs in *ir* and *re*, the similarity exists but in the third person.—In verbs in *ir*, the first and second persons sing. and the three persons plural are similar to the same persons of the past tense, subjunctive mood.—In the three forms of conjugation, the first and second persons pl. are similar to the same persons of the imperfect tense, 205, 206.

The Past tense of the subjunctive mood is formed by changing the termination of the infinitive as follows: *er* into *asse, asses, ât, assions, assiez, assent*;—*ir* and *re* into *isse, isses, it, issions, issiez, issent*, 207, 208.

The tense of the subjunctive mood is determined by the tense of the preceding verb. The pres. tense of the subjunctive mood is employed after the pres. and future tenses of the indicative. The past tense of the subjunctive is employed after the past tenses of the indicative mood, and after the conditional.

The subjunctive mood generally expresses that the action of the subject is wished, wanted, or required by another person. It is used, also, after verbs which, in a principal proposition, express surprise, admiration, doubt, or fear;—after a v. used impersonally, in such phrases as the following: *It is fit, It is proper, It is necessary, It is time, It is convenient*, etc.;—when the verb is subjoined to a negative or an interrogative proposition, unless this subjoined verb expresses a positive incontestable fact, 96;—after the following conjunctions and connective phrases: *Afin que, à moins que, avant que, en cas que, bien que, quoique, de peur que, de crainte que, encore que, jusqu'à ce que, loin que, non que, nonobstant que, posé que, pour que, pour peu que, pourvu que, sans que, si peu que, si tant est que, soit que, supposé que, et que*, when this last expression is only an abbreviative form of one of the foregoing.

Substantives.—In English, a subst. which qualifies another subst. is generally placed first; as, *second-watch, steam-bout*, etc. In French, the

qualifying subst. follows the name of the qualified object, and the two nouns are connected by means of a prep., generally *à* or *de*, or of a compound article, thus: *Montre à secondes*, second-watch; *bateau à vapeur*, steam-boat; *pot au lait*, milk-pot; *chemin de fer*, railway, 307.—Substantives denoting titles, qualities, or professions, which may belong to either sex, often produce fem. derivatives, by means of the same terminations that adjectives take to form their feminine, 329.—In compound words, those component parts which are neither substantives nor adjectives are always invariable, 362.—Uninflected parts of speech, when accidentally used as substantives, remain invariable, 386.—The infinitive mood of verbs is sometimes used substantively. In this case, it is determined by the article, or by pronouns and adjectives, like any other subst., 192.—See GENDERS and PLURAL.

Suffire, to suffice.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Suffisant*.—Past part. *Suffi*.—Indic. mood, present tense: *Je suffis, tu suffis, il suffit, nous suffisons, vous suffisez, ils suffisent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je suffisais, tu suffisais, il suffisait, nous suffisions, vous suffisiez, ils suffisaient*.—Past tense def.: *Je suffis, tu suffis, il suffit, nous suffimes, vous suffîtes, ils suffirent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Suffis, suffisons, suffisez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je suffise, que tu suffises, qu'il suffise, que nous suffisions, que vous suffisiez, qu'ils suffisent*.—Subj. past not in use.

Suivre, to follow.—V. irr. only in the past part. *Suivi*; the three persons sing. of the pres. tense, indicative mood: *Je suis, tu suis, il suit*; and the second person singular of the imperative mood, *Suis*.—The rest is regular.

Superlative.—See DEGREES OF COMPARISON and ADJECTIVES.

Surseoir, to suspend.—Irr. v.—Present part. *Sursoyant*.—Past part. *Sursis*.—Indic. mood, present tense: *Je sursois, tu sursois, il sursoit, nous sursoyons, vous sursoyez, ils sursoient*.—Imperf. tense: *Je sursoyais, tu sursoyais, il sursoyait, nous sursoyions, vous sursoyiez, ils sursoyaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je sursis, tu sursis, il*

sursit, nous sursimes, vous sursîtes, ils sursirent.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood, not in use.—Subj. mood, pres. tense, not in use.—Subj. past: *Que je sursisse, que tu sursisses, qu'il sursît, que nous sursissions, que vous sursissiez, qu'ils sursissent*.

Ta, thy.—Fem. of *ton*.

Taire, not to say.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Taisant*.—Past part. *Tu*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je tais, tu tais, il tait, nous taisons, vous taisez, ils taisent*.—Imperf. tense: *Je taisais, tu taisais, il taisait, nous taisions, vous taisiez, ils taisaient*.—Past tense def.: *Je tus, tu tus, il tut, nous tûmes, vous tûtes, ils turent*.—Fut. tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Tais, taisons, taisez*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que je taise, que tu taises, qu'il taise, que nous taisions, que vous taisiez, qu'ils taisent*.—Subjunct. past: *Que je tusse, que tu tusses, qu'il tût, que nous tussions, que vous tussiez, qu'ils tussent*.—With the pronominal form, *se taire* signifies, to be silent.

Tant.—Adverb of quantity, corresponding to *so much, as much, so many, as many, so far, as far, so long, as long, to such a degree*. Before a subst. it takes the prep. *de*, 155.

Tantôt.—See *Tôt*.

Te.—Personal pron. of the second person sing., and of both genders.—It is never used as a subject. It is sometimes a direct and sometimes an indirect regimen, corresponding to *thee, to thee, thyself, to thyself*. It always precedes the verb. It is one of the words in which the elision of the *e* takes place before a vowel or an *h* mute, 4.—All the observations made on the pron. *me* are applicable to *te*, 217.

TÉ.—Termination. Substantives ending in *té* are very numerous in French; most of them have their correspondents in English in *ty*. They are fem., 106.—The following words ending in *té* are masc. by exception: *Aparté, arrêté, bénédicité, comité, comté, côté, député, été, jeté, pâté, précipité, traité, velouté*.

Teindre, to dye.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *craindre*, 300.

Tenir, to hold.—Irr. v.—Present

part. *Tenant*.—Past part. *Tenu*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je tiens, tu tiens, il tient, nous tenons, vous tenez, ils tiennent*.—Imperf. tense: *Je tenais, tu tenais, il tenait, nous tenions, vous teniez, ils tenaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je tins, tu tins, il tint, nous tîmes, vous tîmes, ils tinrent*.—Fut. tense: *Je tiendrai, tu tiendras, il tiendra, nous tiendrons, vous tiendrez, ils tiendront*.—Cond. mood: *Je tiendrais, tu tiendrais, il tiendrait, nous tiendrions, vous tiendriez, ils tiendraient*.—Imper. mood: *Tiens, tenons, tenez*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que je tienne, que tu tiennes, qu'il tienne, que nous tenions, que vous teniez, qu'ils tiennent*.—Subjunctive past: *Que je tinsses, que tu tinsses, qu'il tint, que nous tinssions, que vous tinssiez, qu'ils tinssent*.

Tenses.—See PRESENT TENSE, IMPERFECT, PAST TENSE DEFINITE, PAST TENSE INDEFINITE, FUTURE, and SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The compound tenses in French are generally formed in the same manner as in English, by means of the auxiliary v. *avoir*, 32.—The compound tenses of pronominal verbs are invariably formed with the help of the auxiliary v. *être*, 129.—The major part of neuter verbs form their compound tenses with *avoir*, 146.

The compound tense *To have been*, or *To have been doing*, when it denotes that a state or an action continues, must be rendered by the pres. tense in French.—As a consequence of the preceding observation, when the pluperfect tense denotes that a state or an action was continuing, it is rendered by the imperfect tense.

Tes, thy.—Plural of *ton*.

Their.—Their, *leur, leurs*, 67.—Theirs, *le leur, la leur, les leurs*, 267.

Tien, thine.—See LE TIEN.

To.—à, 17; to the, *au, aux*, 19.—List of verbs after which *to*, before an infinitive, is translated by *à*, 211; by *de*, 212; by *de* or *à*, 214.—It is left out, 213.—When *to* signifies *in order to*, it is rendered in French by *pour*, 164.—See also CHEZ, 80.

Toi.—Personal pron. of the second person sing., and of both genders. It is commonly used as a regimen, either direct or indirect, and corresponds to the English pron. *thee*, or

to thee. Sometimes it is a subject, and signifies *thou*.—All the observations made on the pronoun *moi* are applicable to *toi*, 217.

Ton.—Possessive adj., masc. and sing. Its fem. is *ta*; the pl. of both genders is *tes*. These three forms, *ton, ta, tes*, correspond to *thy*.—This adj. agrees in gender and number with the subst. that follows it, 71.—It must be repeated before each substantive.—Before a fem. substantive or adjective beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, *ton* is substituted for *ta*, in order to avoid the hiatus, 72.—In this case, the letters *on* in *ton* continue to be nasal, though the *n* coalesces with the next vowel.

Tôt, soon, early.—When this adverb is joined to the adverbs *aussi, bien, si*, it forms a single word with them, thus: *aussitôt*, as soon; *bientôt*, soon; *sitôt*, so soon, 339, § 2.—It forms a similar combination with *tant* and *plus*, in suppressing the final consonant of these adverbs, thus: *tantôt, plutôt*. But *plutôt* is only employed in the sense of *rather*, denoting preference, and must not be confounded with *plus tôt*, sooner, earlier, 339, § 3.

Toujours, always.—After this adverb, the subject pronoun may follow the verb, 98.

Tout, all.—Adj., subst., pronoun, and adverb.—When *tout* signifies *all, quite, or entirely*, it is an adverb, and accordingly remains invariable, except when it precedes an adj. of the fem. gender, beginning with a consonant or an aspirate *h*, in which position it takes the gender and number of this adj. for the sake of euphony, 266.—But it remains invariable before an adj. beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute.

Traduire, to translate.—Irr. v.—Conjugated like *conduire*. See p. 162.

Traire, to milk.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Trayant*.—Past part. *Trait*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je traite, tu traite, il traite, nous trayons, vous trayez, ils traitent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je trayais, tu trayais, il trayait, nous trayions, vous trayiez, ils trayaient*.—No past tense definite.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Traie, trayons, trayez*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que je traie, que tu traies, qu'il traie,*

que nous trayions, que vous trayiez, qu'ils traient.—No subjunct. past.

Tres, very.—One of the signs of the superlative of eminence, 51.—Is joined to the word that follows it by a hyphen.

Tressaillir, to start.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Tressaillant*.—Past part. regular.—Indic. mood, pres. tense: *Je tressaille, tu tressailles, il tressaille, nous tressaillons, vous tressaillez, ils tressaillent*.—Imperf. tense: *Je tressaillais, tu tressaillais, il tressaillait, nous tressaillions, vous tressailliez, ils tressaillaient*.—Past tense def., regular.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imper. mood: *Tressaille, tressaillons, tressaillez*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que je tressaille, que tu tressailles, qu'il tressaille, que nous tressaillions, que vous tressailliez, qu'ils tressaillent*.—Subjunctive past, regular.

Trop.—Adverb signifying *too, too much, too many*. The *p* is quiescent before a consonant, 155.

Tu, thou.—Personal pron. of the second person singular, and of both genders. It is always a subject, and generally placed before the verb.—The use of the second person sing. is much more frequent in French than in English. It generally denotes familiarity and intimacy. In addressing inferiors, it denotes authority. In dignified and poetical language, the use of this form is the same as in English.—The observations made on *je* are applicable to *tu*, 217.

Un.—Subst., adj., and pron., signifying *a, an, and one*, 9.—Is often omitted, 21.—After *vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante, soixante, and mille*, the numeral adj. *un* requires the conj. *et* before it, 157.—In English, after the adverbs *so, as, too, and how*, the word *a* is placed between the next adj. and subst. In French, the first three of these adverbs, rendered by *si, aussi, and trop*, are preceded by *un, une*. As for the place of the adjective, it is often optional, 193.—The adverb *how*, in French *comment* or *combien*, cannot be joined to *un*, and requires a different construction or a different expression, 194.—*Un* retains its nasal sound, even when the *n* coalesces with the initial vowel of the

next word.—See also *L'UN L'AUTRE, L'UN ET L'AUTRE*.

Unième, first.—The adject. *first*, when it is not preceded by another number, is translated by *premier, première*; but when preceded by *vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante, soixante, quatre-vingt, cent, and mille*, it is rendered by *unième*, 187.

URE.—Termination. Common to about 100 subst., which are nearly the same in both languages, 151.

Vaincre, to conquer.—Irr. v.—See page 258.

Valoir, to be worth.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Valant*.—Past part. *Valu*.—Indic. mood, pres. tense: *Je vau, tu vau, il vaut, nous valons, vous valez, ils valent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je valais, tu valais, il valait, nous valions, vous valiez, ils valaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je valus, tu valus, il valut, nous valûmes, vous valûtes, ils valurent*.—Future tense: *Je vaudrai, tu vaudras, il vaudra, nous vaudrons, vous vaudrez, ils vaudront*.—Conditional mood: *Je vaudrais, tu vaudrais. il vaudrait, nous vaudrions, vous vaudriez, ils vaudraient*.—Imper. mood: *Vau, valons, valez*.—Subjunct. mood, present tense: *Que je vaille, que tu vailles, qu'il vaille, que nous valions, que vous valiez, qu'ils valient*.—Subj. past: *Que je valusse, que tu valusses, qu'il valût, que nous valussions, que vous valussiez, qu'ils valussent*.

Venir, to come.—Irr. v.—See page 114.—In all the forms in which the letters *ien* are not followed by *n*, these letters are pronounced as in *bien, rien*.—*Venir* takes *être* in its compound tenses, 145, 146.

Verbs.—French verbs are elassed according to their terminations in the infinitive mood. These terminations are, *er, ir, and re*, 86.—The verbs in *er* are by far the most numerous, and all are conjugated like *parler* (see p. 55), except *envoyer*, to send (see Index), and *aller*, to go (see p. 132). Many of them are derived from substantives, as *scier*, from *scie*; *raboter*, from *rabot*, etc. Others may be formed from almost all the substantives ending in *ation*, by changing this termination into *er*, as *créer*, from *création*; *accuser*, from *accusation*, etc., 112.—Verbs ending in *cer* take a cedilla under the

e before the vowels *a*, *o*, in order that the *e* may preserve the sound of *s* throughout the conjugation, 302.—In the conjugation of verbs ending in *ger*, the *g* is always followed by *e* mute before the vowels *a*, *o*, 120.—Verbs ending in *eter* and *eler* double the consonant *t* or *l* before *e* mute, 224.—The following are excepted: *acheter*, *geler*, *peler*, 225.—The verbs ending in *eter* and *eler* must not be confounded with those in *éter* and *éler*; in the latter the acute accent is changed into a grave accent, without doubling the consonant before *e* mute, 226.—Verbs in *er*, in which the final syllable of the infinitive mood is preceded by *e* with an acute accent, change this accent into a grave one before a syllable containing an *e* mute, 282.—Verbs in *éger* and in *éer* are excepted, and retain the acute accent in all their forms, 283.—Verbs ending in *yer* change the vowel *y* into *i* before an *e* mute, 292.

A great portion of the verbs in *ir* come from adjectives, as *rajeunir*, from *jeune*; *enrichir*, from *riche*, etc. Others, of a different formation, end in English in *ish*, as *périr*, to perish; *punir*, to punish, etc.—The syllable *iss*, incorporated into the terminations of several tenses and persons, characterizes the conjugation of the verbs in *ir*, and forms the principal difference between these verbs and those in *er*, 94.—The radical irregular verbs in *ir* are: *acquérir*, *assaillir*, *bouillir*, *courir*, *couvrir*, *cueillir*, *dormir*, *faillir*, *férir*, *fleurir*, *fuir*, *gésir*, *haïr*, *mentir*, *mourir*, *offrir*, *ouïr*, *ouvrir*, *partir*, *se repentir*, *saillir*, *sentir*, *servir*, *sortir*, *souffrir*, *tenir*, *tressaillir*, *venir*, *vêtir*, and all the verbs in *oir*. Each of them will be found in its alphabetical place.—Many grammarians make a particular class of the verbs in *oir*, but their model of conjugation is applicable to seven verbs only, 87.—The verbs in *re* have some of their tenses formed in conformity with those in *er*, and some with those in *ir*; so that there are indeed but two forms of conjugation, 102.—The irregular verbs in *re* are: First, all those in *indre*; the conjugation of *craindre* is given in this Index as a model.—See also *indre*.—Secondly, the following and their derivatives: *absoudre*, *battre*, *boire*, *braire*, *bruire*,

circoncire, *clore*, *conclure*, *conduire*, *confire*, *connaître*, *construire*, *coudre*, *croire*, *croître*, *cuire*, *dire*, *dissoudre*, *éclore*, *écrire*, *être*, *exclure*, *faire*, *frire*, *lire*, *luire*, *maudire*, *mettre*, *moudre*, *naître*, *nuire*, *paître*, *paraître*, *plaire*, *prendre*, *résoudre*, *rire*, *rompre*, *soudre*, *suffire*, *suivre*, *taire*, *traire*, *vaincre*, *vivre*.—Each of them will be found in its alphabetical place.

The derivatives of irregular verbs are generally conjugated like their radicals, 104.—Active verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *avoir* in their compound tenses.—Passive verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *être*.

There are about 600 neuter verbs in French, of which above 550 are conjugated in their compound tenses by means of the auxiliary verb *avoir*. Among the remainder, some take either *être* or *avoir*, according as they express a state or an action, and the following invariably require *être*:—*Aller*, *arriver*, *choir*, *décéder*, *éclore*, *mourir*, *naître*, *tomber*, *venir*, *devenir*, *intervenir*, *parvenir*, *revenir*, 146.

Many verbs which become neuter or passive in English, remain active in French with the reflexive or pronominal form, 334.—A pronominal verb is conjugated with two pronouns of the same person, both placed before it except in the imperative mood, the first being the subject and the second the regimen. The corresponding pronouns for each person are: *Je me*, *tu te*, *il se*, *nous nous*, *vous vous*, *ils se*, *elles se*, 128.—Among the French pronominal verbs, some are accidentally so, and others are invariably conjugated with a double pronoun. The former are called *accidental*, and the latter *essential* pronominal verbs. The accidental pronominal verbs, by taking this form, express that the same person is at once the subject and the object of the action; or, that the action is reciprocal;—or, they correspond to the English neuter form. The number of these verbs is unlimited. As to the essential pronominal verbs, a list of them is given under No. 167.—Another list, under No. 168, is given of verbs which are not essentially pronominal, but which require a particular mention, on account of the differ-

ent meaning which they acquire by being used in the pronominal form.

The idea of a reciprocal or mutual action, expressed in English by adding the pronouns *each other* or *one another* to the verb, is rendered in French by the pronom. form, which is likewise employed with reflective verbs; the only difference being that reciprocal verbs of course are only used in the plural number. When the rest of the construction does not clearly show the sense, ambiguity is avoided by the addition of the pronouns *l'un l'autre*, *les uns les autres*, when the action is reciprocal; and *nous-mêmes*, *vous-mêmes*, *eux-mêmes*, *elles-mêmes*, when it is reflective, 178.

The compound tenses of pronominal verbs are invariably formed with the help of the auxiliary v. *être*, 129.

The passive form is less frequently used in French than in English; and verbs, which should be passive according to the sense, often take the reflective or pronominal form in French, 334.

List of verbs which govern other verbs in the infinitive mood, without a prep., 213.—List of verbs which govern the infinitive mood with the prep. *à*, 211.—List of verbs which govern the infinitive mood with the prep. *de*, 212.—List of verbs which govern the infinitive mood with either *à* or *de*, 214.—See also PARTICIPLE.

Very.—When this word precedes an adj. or an adv., it is rendered by *très*, *bien*, or *fort*; but when it precedes a subst. it is generally rendered by *même*, placed after the subst., 333.

Vêtir, to clothe.—Irr. v.—Pres. part. *Vêtant*.—Past part. *Vêtu*.—Indic. mood, present tense: *Je vêts, tu vêts, il vêt, nous vêtons, vous vêtez, ils vêtent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je vêtais, tu vêtais, il vêtait, nous vêtions, vous vétiez, ils vêtaient*.—Past tense def., regular.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Vêts, vêtons, vêtez*.—Subjunct. mood, pres. tense: *Que je vête, que tu vêtes, qu'il vête, que nous vêtions, que vous vétiez, qu'ils vêtent*.—Subjunct. past, regular.

Vingt, twenty.—*Vingt* takes the mark of the pl. only when preceded by another number which multiplies it, as in *quatre-vingts*, eighty, 275.—

But when it is followed by another number, it is invariable, thus: *quatre-vingt-trois, quatre-vingt-dix*, 276.

Vivre, to live.—Irr. v.—See page 318.

Voici.—See VOILA.

Voilà.—Is a contraction of two words: *vois*, the second person sing. of the imperative mood of *voir*, to see, to behold, and *là*, there; so that its literal meaning is, *behold there*. There is a corresponding word, *voici*, which is also in frequent use; it is a contraction of *vois ici*, behold here.—These expressions correspond to *there is, there are, here is, here are, this is, that is, these are, those are, or behold*.—The personal pron. which precedes *voilà* and *voici* is the regimen of these words; consequently we say, *le voilà, la voici, la voilà, la voici*, there he is, here he is; and not *il voilà, elle voilà*, 123.

Voir, to see.—Irr. v.—See p. 122.

Votre, your.—Possessive adj. of both genders, and of the sing. number. Its plural, likewise of both genders, is *vos*. These two forms correspond to *your*, 71.

Vôtre, yours.—See LE VÔTRE.

Vouloir, to will.—Irr. v.—See page 86.—This v. is much more frequently used than its English equivalent, *to will*. It often corresponds to the verbs *to want*, and *to wish*.—The absence of an English form equivalent to the past part. *voulu* gives rise to different constructions, which may all be reduced to a single one in French: *Voulu* forming a compound tense with the auxiliary v. *avoir*, and being followed by an infinitive, thus: *Il aurait voulu aller*, He would have gone, He would have liked to go, He wished to go, 353.

Vous.—Invariable personal pron., which is sometimes the subject, sometimes the direct, and sometimes the indirect regimen of the verb. It corresponds to *you, yourself, yourselves, to you, to yourself, to yourselves*, 121.

W.—This consonant occurs in a few words borrowed from foreign languages, and is pronounced as in English.—The letter *g* in French is sometimes substituted for *w* in words which have the same meaning and the same origin in both languages, 349.

X.—Termination. Adjectives ending in *x* form their fem. by changing *x* into *se*, 64.—Adjectives and substantives ending in *x* do not change their termination in the pl., 8, 43.

Y.—Is sometimes an adverb and sometimes a pronoun. As an adverb it corresponds to *there*, or *thither*, and denotes a place.—As a pronoun, it is of both genders and numbers. It signifies *to that*, *to him*, *to her*, *to it to them*, or *in that*, *on that*. It is more especially used in speaking of things, and very seldom refers to persons, 116.—Whether used as an

adverb or a pronoun, it precedes the verb in all the moods, except the imperative, 117.

YER.—Termination. Verbs ending in *yer*, change the vowel *y* into *i* before an *e* mute, 292.—In these verbs the *y* is followed by *i* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect tense, indicative mood, and in the same persons of the pres. tense, subjunctive mood.

Yeux.—Plural of *œil*, which see.

Z.—Termination. Substantives ending in *z* do not change their termination in the plural, 8.

THE END

Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: Sept. 2006

PreservationTechnologies
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111

BOOKS PUBLISHED BY GEORGE R. LOCKWOOD.

FRENCH—Continued.

CHOUQUET'S Easy Conversations in French. 16mo.....	\$0 60
—— First Readings in French. 16mo	60
VANNIER'S French Pronunciation and Spelling. 16mo.....	45
MRS. BARBAULD'S Lessons for Children, in French. 16mo..	45
BERQUIN'S Easy Conversational French Reader. 12mo.....	50
LE LIVRE des Petits Enfants. (A Reader for Little Children.) 16mo.....	60
VOLTAIRE'S La Henriade. 18mo.....	40
ARNOLD'S French Arithmetic. 12mo	75

Paris Editions.

THESE PRICES VARY WITH THE RATE OF EXCHANGE.

BOILEAU. Œuvres Poétiques. 12mo.....	1 35
BOSSUET. Histoire Universelle. 12mo.....	1 35
CHATEAUBRIAND. Les Martyrs. 12mo.....	1 35
—— Les Natchez. 12mo.....	1 35
CORNEILLE. Œuvres Complètes. 16mo.....	1 35
MME. DE SEVIGNE. Lettres. 12mo.....	1 35
MME. DE STAEL. Corinne. 12mo.....	1 35
—— L'Allemagne. (Germany.) 12mo.....	1 35
FENELON. Telemaque. Without Notes. 12mo.	1 35
LE SAGE. Gil Blas de Santillane. 12mo.....	1 35
MOLIERE. Œuvres Complètes. 2 vols. 12mo.....	2 70
MONTESQUIEU. Grandeur des Romains. 12mo.....	1 35
—— L'Esprit des Lois. 12mo.....	1 35
PASCAL. Lettres Provinciales. 12mo.....	1 35
—— Les Pensees. 12mo.....	1 35
RACINE. Œuvres Complètes. 12mo.....	1 35
SOUVESTRE. Au Coin au Feu. 12mo.	75
—— Philosophe sous les toits. 12mo.....	75
VOLTAIRE. Siecle de Louis XIV. 12mo.....	1 35

SPANISH.

DEL MAR'S Spanish and English Conversations. 12mo....	75
VINGUT'S Ollendorff's Method of Learning Spanish. <i>With a</i> <i>figured pronunciation of the Spanish words.</i> 12mo.	1 50
—— Key to do. 12mo.....	75
—— Spanish Reader and Translator. 12mo.	1 00
ROBERTSON'S New Spanish Course. 12mo.	1 25
HEREDIA. Poesias. 18mo.....	1 50

BOOKS PUBLISHED BY GEORGE R. LOCKWOOD.

SPANISH—Continued.

PLACIDO. Poesias. 2 vols. 16mo.....	\$2 00
GRAMATICA de la Academia Espanola. 12mo.....	1 00
SALES' Josse's Spanish Grammar. 12mo.....	1 25
LOPE DE VEGA Y CALDERON. Comedias. 12mo.....	1 25
CARTILLA O SILABARIO. (Spanish Primer.) 16mo.....	25
CUENTOS FAMILIARES. (Familiar Stories.) 16mo.....	75
HISTORIA DE LA REVOLUCION de los Estados Unidos de America. 12mo.....	1 00

For Spaniards Learning English and French, or French Learning Spanish.

OLLENDORFF. El Maestro de Ingles. [The English Teacher.] With a <i>figured pronunciation</i> of the English words. By F. J. VINETT. 12mo.	2 00
—— Clave del Maestro de Ingles. [Key to the English Teacher.].....	1 00
—— El Maestro de Frances. (French Grammar for Span- iards.) With a <i>figured pronunciation</i> of the French words. By F. J. VIN- ETT. 12mo.....	2 00
—— Clave. (Key to the French Teacher.) 12mo.....	1 00
—— Le Maitre d'Espanol. (Spanish Grammar for the use of the French.) By F. J. VINETT. 1 vol. 12mo.....	2 00
—— Corrige. (Key to the Spanish Teacher.) 12mo.....	1 00
DEL MAR. La Guia para la Conversacion en Espanol e In- gles. Por F. J. VINETT. 12mo.....	1 00
LECTOR Y TRADUCTOR INGLES. (English Reader for the use of Spaniards.) By F. J. VINETT. 12mo.....	1 25

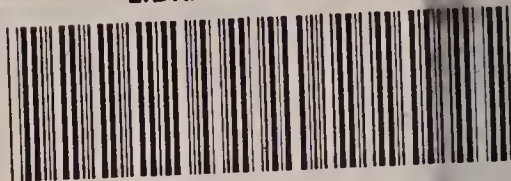
ITALIAN

TASSO. La Gerusalemme Liberata. 1 vol. 12mo.....	1 35
DANTE. La Divina Commedia. 1 vol. 12mo.....	1 35

ENGLISH.

MILLS' Blair's Rhetoric.....	1 00
GRISCOM'S First Lessons in Human Physiology.....	40
BALDWIN'S Table Book and Primary Arithmetic.....	10
AMERICAN Popular Lessons. By Eliza Robbins.....	30
INTRODUCTION to " " ".....	25
PRIMARY Dictionary, " " ".....	30
OLMSTED'S Chemistry. 12mo.....	1 00
CLARKE'S Elements of Astronomy ..	25

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 116 774 7